5149/B

2/6

SEC 24578

17/857

65 D 12
of Parker Coll
30218

Entd under Valentines

Not in the Bodleian Catalogue 1843.

Hebert's Copy

Payne
12/7/11

30218

Enchiridion Medicum:

CONTAINING

AN EPITOME OF THE WHOLE Course of Physicke:

With the Examination of a Chyrurgian, by way of Dialogue betweene the Doctor and the Student.

With a Treatise containing a Difinition of all those Diseases that do chiefly affect the body of Man: And an Antidotary of many excellent and approved Remedies for all Diseases.

Published for the benefite of yong Students in Physicke, Chyrurgians, and Apothecaries.

The second Impression, enlarged with a second part, containing a particular practise of Physicke, with the Flowers of *Celsus*, containing many Aphorismes, excellent Sentences, and witty Sayings for the *preseruation of health, and curing of diseases.*

With a Table of all the principall matters contained in this Booke.

Gathered by *Petrus Pomarius Valentinus* D. of Physicke.

HERO PHILVS.

Morborum remedia, si ab indoctis vsurpentur venena, si vero à doctis & exercitatis deorum, auxiliares manus.

LONDON,
Printed by *N. O.* for *Iohn Royston*, and *William Bladon*, and are to be sold at their Shop at the great North-doore of Pauls, at the signe of the Bible. 1612.

ORNATISSIMIS VIRIS

GVILIELMO GOODROVS Chyrurgo Regis primario, GEORGIO BAKERO, Armigero, *Thomæ Thorney, Iohanni Gerardo, Christophero Frederico, Richardo Maps, Iosepho Fentonio, Abr. Alano*, Cyrurg. peritiss. Londinens. cæterisque eiusdem Artis in *eadem Ciuitate professoribus dignissimis.*

CVm huic de re medica libello (qualiscunque tandem ipse siet) mei exercendi gratiâ colophonem addidissem (viri dignissimi) non deerant ex interioribus meis nonnulli qui à me haud ignauè contendebant hunc prelo committere: quorum petitiones cum à me minimè frustratas iri denique curassem, mihi mecũ consulenti, quem patronum huic libellulo deligerem, eccè, vos ipsi occurristis: quorum patrocinio eum statim dicare decretum habui. Illudq́ ipsum lubens ago, in vestramque tutelam hunc accipi eò magis postulo, quòd vnius eiusque (ni fallor) antiquissimæ medicinæ partis vos professores estis longè dignissimi. Nec me fugit vobis pernotũ esse, ad exercendã præclaram illam Chyrurgiæ artem neminẽ aptum fore, qui ad hanc medicinæ partem aliquãdiu non instructus fuerit. Quocirca vobis ipsis cæterisq́ condignis rei Chyrurgicæ alumnis, inclytæ ciuitatis huius incolis has meas exercitatiunculas deuouere operæ pretium existimaui. A vobis iterum contendens, eas à vestro patrocinio protectas iri: quas si bene consultas gratéque habitas intellexero, ad maius aggrediendum opus, vtilitatis vestræ gratiâ animum certè mihi dederitis. Quos interim cum pijs vestris conatibus omnipotentis Dei tutelæ commendare non desistam.

P. C. Chiratros to the Reader.

THE Idle Drone, that labours not at all,
Suckes vp the ſweet of hony from the Bee,
Who worketh moſt, to their ſhare leaſt doth fall,
With due deſert, reward will neuer be.
The ſwifteſt Hare, vnto the Maſtiffe ſlow
Oft-times doth fall, to him as for a prey,
The Grey-hound oft doth miſſe his game we know,
For which he made ſuch ſpeedy haſte away.
So he that takes the paine to pen a Booke,
Reapes not the guifts of goodly golden muſe,
But thoſe gaine that, who on the worke ſhall looke,
And from the ſowre, the ſweet by skill doth chuſe.
For he that beates the buſh, the Bird not gets,
But who ſits ſtill, and holdeth faſt the Nets.

AD ZOILVM.

Dente Theonino quid carpis Zoile? noſtra
Si tibi diſpliciant, fac meliora precor.

AN EPITOME OF THE WHOLE course of Physicke.

Pars. 1.

Doctor.

SEEING you are desirous to bee admitted to the practise of Physick; let me heare how you know your selfe fit and able to practise in so noble an Art; for euery man is not fit to be a Physition, according to the prouerbe, *Ex quolibet ligno non fit Mercurius*: therefore tell me first, what manner of man a Physition must be.

Student. A Physition must be learned, iudiciall, sober, of honest conuersation, not full of words, but secret, chast, truely Religious, not couetous, or giuen to wine; and finally, he must be a Philosopher, according to the saying, *Vbi desinit Philosophus, incipit Medicus.* *Medici Dotes.*

Doct. It is most true, and that is it which *Hippocrates* crieth out on, when he did perceiue how hard a matter it was to be a perfect Physition: *Vita brevis, ars longa, occasio præceps, experimentum periculosum, iudicium difficile.* As if hee should haue said, the whole life of man will not suffice to attaine

vnto a full knowledge of the Arte of Physicke; for it spreadeth it selfe so large, that if it bee compared with the course of mans life, the life is so short, that it is not sufficient to attaine to a full knowledge of the whole Arte. And *Galen* himselfe affirmeth, in *Libro de pulsibus*, that hee had spent many yeares in the practise thereof, and yet could not attaine to a perfect knowledge of the same. If then this happened vnto the Prince of Physitions (*Hyppocrates* excepted) what may wee thinke our selues able to attaine vnto? If, I say, hee spent so much time and labour in one part of Physicke, how much time and labour may bee required to attaine to a full knowledge of the whole Arte? And therefore it is a great errour in such men, that doe dreame that the Arte of Physicke may bee easily attained vnto: so that if they haue gotten two or three Chimicall medicines, without any other grounds; they professe themselues to bee great Doctors and cunning Physitions. But to let that passe; let mee heare your definition of Physicke: tell mee, what is Physicke?

Stud. Physicke is an Arte that doth preserue the body of man in health; and being sicke, cureth the diseases of the same.

Or Physicke, according to *Hyppocrates*, is adiection, and substraction: or according to *Galen* in his *Arte parua*; It is the knowledge of things healthfull, of things vnhealthfull, and of neither.

Doct. Shew me how that may be?

Stud. It may bee three waies, as the body, the cause, and the signe: as that is a healthfull body which enioyeth health; a healthful cause which worketh or conserueth health: that is an healthfull signe which doth demonstrate health to be present: and that is said to bee an vnhealthfull body which is sickly: an vnhealthfull cause, which worketh the disease: an vnhealthfull signe, which sheweth the kind and greatnesse of the disease, or doth premonstrate the euent thereof. Wee call that a neuter, that neither enioyeth health nor

nor sickneſſe, which is not perfectly ſound, nor yet ſicke.

Or Phyſicke is the ſtudy of things naturall, of things not naturall, and of things againſt nature.

Doct. Into how many parts is Phyſicke diuided?

Stud. There are in generall fiue parts of Phyſicke: the firſt is, *Phyſiologia*, & ſearcheth out the whole nature & conſtitution of man: the ſecond is *Hugiene*, and doth ſtudy in the preſeruation of the health of man: the third is *Pathologia*, & is exerciſed in ſearching out the ſickneſſe, & the cauſe: the fourth is *Semeotike*, & is exerciſed in ſhewing the ſignes either of life or death: the fift is *Therapeutica*, & that teacheth the order of curing affects beſides nature: and vnder this laſt part is comprehended three other parts, *Dieta*, *compoſitio medicamentorum*, and *Chirurgia*.

Doct. I ſee you are reaſonably well acquainted with the definition, and diuiſion of the Arte. But you told me but now that Phyſicke was the ſtudy of things naturall, of things not naturall, and of things againſt nature: tell me, what are thoſe things that you terme naturall?

Stud. Thoſe things that are termed naturall are ſeuen: E- *Res naturales.*
lements, Temperaments, Humors, Spirits, Parts, Faculties, & Functions: in the knowledge of which, *Phyſiologia*, or the knowledge of naturall things is exerciſed.

Doct. Tell me then, what is an Element?

Stud. Element is a body moſt pure and ſimple, and *Elementum quid.*
the leaſt part of the ſame wherein it is: which cannot be diuided into any other kind, and of it all things naturall haue their originall and beginning. This definition is taken out of *Galen* and *Ariſtotle*, and therefore cannot be denied.

Doct. How many Elements are there?

Stud. There are foure Elements: *viz.* the Fire, which is extreame hot, and moderately dry: the Aire, extreame moiſt and moderately hot: the Water, extreame cold and moderately moiſt: the Earth, extreame dry and moderately cold. In heate the fire with the aire, and in dryneſſe with the earth: in moiſture the aire, with the

water, and in heat with the fire; in coldneſſe the water with the earth, and in moiſture with the aire; the earth in drineſſe with the fire, and in coldneſſe with the water, doe all conſent and agree. And as the water to the fire is extreame contrary, ſo is the aire to the earth: of the mixture of theſe Elements all naturall bodies haue their compoſition. And yet it is nothing neceſſary that they bee equally mingled in the body, but according to that that hath dominion, the body is named chollericke, ſanguine, phlegmaticke, or melancholicke; and haue their denomination of the foure naturall humors: *viz.* choller, bloud, flegme, and melancholy, which take their qualities of the Elements: for choller is hot and dry according to the nature of the fire, and bloud is hot and moiſt according to the nature of the aire, flegme is cold and moiſt according to water, and melancholy in no point doth diſagree from the earth.

Doct. You haue well declared how naturall bodies are framed by the mixture of the Elements: let mee heare how briefly you can ſhew me the differences of temperatures.

Temperamentum.

Stud. Temperatures are in number nine, whereof there are eight do exceed; and therefore they may be better called diſtemperatures, then temperatures; the ninth is temperate, for it doth exceed in no quality. Of diſtemperatures there be foure ſimple, and foure compound: the ſimple are heat, cold, drineſſe, and moyſture, of which ioyned together diſtemperatures are made. The ninth is neither hote, cold, dry, nor moiſt, and it is framed of them all: and that is it which the Grecians do call *εὐκρασία*, that is, *Bene temperatum*, or according to the Arithmeticians, *Temperamentum adpondus*, a cõplexion meaſured by weight; becauſe there are as many degrees of heat as there are of cold, of drineſſe as there are of moiſture: the other which be diſtemperatures, be not meaſured by weight, but by dignity: as in the heart well tempered, heat doth exceed; in the braine well tempered, moiſture doth exceed; in the fat well tempered, cold; in the bones well tempered, dryneſſe and this is called *temperamen-*

εὐκρασία.

tum secundum institiam distributiuam: a temperature rightly measured or disposed with equality. *Temperamentum secund. institiam distributiuam.*

Doct. But is it possible to finde a body so complexioned that we may say, heere is a body framed of the foure Elements, *ad pondus*, that is, to a iust and equall proportion?

Stud. I am perswaded that it is altogether impossible for any man to find such a body, that the foure Elements may be said to bee equally proportioned in him: for either heat or moisture hath still the predomination, or coldnesse and drynesse. And yet I thinke it not to be vnpossible, but that there may be such a body, but hard to be found: as hard to come by as *Quintilians* Orator, or the wise man which the Stoickes defined: a man harder to come by then the rich Iewell, the Phylosophers stone, which although diuers brag that it may be framed, yet it can neuer be attained vnto: so we may imagine such a man to be, as by the consent of nature was neuer framed, nor is euer like to be. But if there bee any that can find a man that is neither too grosse nor too slender, nor very full of haire, not yet smooth and without haire, nor soft, nor yet hard, blacke, nor white, hote nor cold, dry nor moist: and to be briefe, such a one that keepeth a meane without all excesse; if, I say, we can finde such a one, then are wee sure we haue a body complexioned *ad pondus*, and to iust proportion. Definition of a temperate man.

Doct. Then you conclude there can be found no body so framed, that it may be termed, *Corpus temperatum ad pondus*. Read *Fernel. Leonar. Fuc.* & *Iohn Riolanus.*

Stud. It is very true.

Doct. Then shew me the iudgements and signes of Temperaments.

Stud. That was I minded to performe if you had not spoken thereof: for it is to no end to know the differences of temperatures, if we know not the signes of the same also. First, then we know by the touching, heate from cold, moysture from drithe: and those that are of a soft disposition of body, the flesh being laxe and thinne, them we iudge to bee moyst: those that haue a thicke and a hard skinne, them wee iudge to bee dry. Then wee proceed aswell to Physicall

actions, as to morall, neither doe we account Phyſicall onely naturall, but vitall, and the animall alſo. Morall actions are affects of a body concupiſcible, angry and rationall: for *Galen* in one book doth ſay that *Animi mores ſequuntur temperamentum corporis*: That the diſpoſition of the minde doth follow the temperature of the body. In men that by nature are hot, the heart, and the Artiers beate vehemently: but in men of a cold diſpoſition, the heart and pulſe beats remiſly and ſlowly: men of an hot diſpoſition, are very much inclined to luſt and venery; the cold diſpoſition is for the moſt part very ſlow or vnable: notwithſtanding it ſometimes doth happen, that the hot complexion proueth vnfit for *Venus*, becauſe the members of generation are ouercold.

The hot complexion is prone vnto anger, they are of a proud and haughty ſtomack, but the cold are fearefull, ſober, and of an abiect minde: the hote complexion is crafty, ſubtill, and ingenious, but the cold is dull, ſlow, and obtuſe in vnderſtanding: the hot complexion hath ſwift motions of the minde, but the cold is of a ſlow and dull ſpirit: In like maner in hot complexions, the teeth doth ſooner grow and encreaſe, then in the cold.

Wee muſt alſo conſider the forme and ſhape of the body, whether it be fat or leane, becauſe that leaneneſſe doth argue an hot body, and the fatneſſe a cold body: which is to be vnderſtood by nature, not by diſeaſe, or by cuſtome, as in extraordinary cares, immoderate vſe of *Venus*, too vehement and often exerciſe, and long faſting, all theſe cauſe a leane and a thin body: ſo in like manner idleneſſe, much banquetting, and delicious liuing, doth ſometimes cauſe, that a body naturally giuen to be leane, may grow fat: And ſo alſo a cold diſpoſition may grow leane, by greife, by cares, by hunger and ſuch like, for the body may be ſo macerated, that it may wax leane contrary to nature.

Beſides, the cold complexion is not ſo hairy as the hot, as may bee perceiued by *Eunuchs* and women which are of a glaber and ſmooth skinne. The ſigne that is taken from the

colour

colour of the haire is deceitfull, because that the colour of the haire is changed with the age by the dominion of a red, yellow, blacke or white humor: for in the first age the haires that are yellow, heat increasing through age, they waxe blacke at the length, the same heat vanishing, and much flegme increasing, they wax white. In like manner by things receiued into the body, the constitution is discerned: for the hot complexion is offended with hot things, as wine not delayed, vehement exercise, meates with hot spices, and they fall quickly into hot diseases, as into Feuers, and other cholericke diseases; but those hot things are beneficiall vnto cold complexions. Moreouer, the temperature of the principall parts, as of the heart, the liuer, the braine, and the testicles, and of those necessary parts of life, as the stomacke, and the lungs are knowne by their proper signes, as *Galen* teacheh in his *Arte Parua*, of which for the most part *Oribasius* and *Paulus*, haue written and set forth their *Synopses*.

Calidi sunt vlosi et hirsuti.

Doct. Well, I would haue you as briefly discourse of humours, to the intent we may not stand ouer-long about this first part, which is called *Physiologia*?

Def. hum. Humor est succus naturalis quo corpus totum nutritur, foueatur & conseruator.

Stud. I haue already said that there are foure principall humors, bloud, choller, flegme, and melancholy, and these are called *Primogeniti filij quatuor elementorum*: for choller is of the nature of the fire, flegme of the water, the melancholicke humor of the earth, bloud of the aire, for bloud is hot and moist, as is the aire.

Omne liquidum & fluxile corpus humidum.

Doct. Wee will not stand long to discourse of humors, because I am perswaded that you are sufficiently studied therein: but tell me your opinion, is bloud the onely nourishment of the body or no?

Stud. It is the opinion of *Aristotle*, that the bloud is the only nourishment of the body, and preseruer thereof. Although some are of opinion, that because some parts are spermatick, & other fleshy, that therefore the fleshy parts are nourished with the bloud, and the spermaticke parts with the seed, and the

Sanguinem solum nutrire.

the bones with the marrow, and the ſtomack with that which is called *Chylus*; that therefore bloud is not the onely nouriſher. To which I anſwere, that all thoſe parts are nouriſhed with the bloud, ſome immediatly, as the fleſhy parts, ſome mediatly, as the ſolid parts: for the ſeminall liquor is nothing but bloud, made white by the coction alteratiue of the ſolid parts. The marrow alſo is framed of the bloud, and therefore according to the Logicians, *Cauſa cauſæ ſit cauſa cauſati*: for the bloud is the materiall cauſe both of the marrow and the ſeed, and therefore it is not to bee doubted, but that all the parts are nouriſhed with the bloud; but the ſtomacke to be nouriſhed with *Chylus*, is affirmed by *Galen, Tertio de naturalibus facultatibus*: But there it is abuſed by the name of *Nutrition*: for it ſatisfieth the animall appetite by his quality, that is to ſay, by his ſweetneſſe: but not the naturall quality by his ſubſtance. And it may very well be perceiued by the infant in the mothers wombe, whoſe ſtomacke is nouriſhed and doth grow, not by *Chylus*, becauſe he receiueth no ſuch nouriſhment by the mouth, but *Materno ſanguine*, which the liuer draweth by the veines of the nauell: and therefore the ſtomack is nouriſhed with that bloud, which it doth containe in his veines, and not by *Chylus*.

Cauſa cauſæ ſit cauſa cauſati.

Doct. I am alſo of your opinion, but I pray you goe forwards, and declare vnto me the differences of humors.

Stud. I will in no wiſe omit the differences of humors, which be in number eight, foure naturall, and foure vnnaturall: I haue already ſhewed that the naturall is bloud, flegme, choller and melancholy; the vnnaturall is the ſame, turned by putrifaction, or elſe ſome otherwiſe from their naturall qualities; but as for the generation of them, it is by the vertue of the liuer, working vpon the matter and ſubſtance of food receiued into the ſtomacke for the nouriſhment of the body. And euen as there is perceiued in new wine, foure differences of hnmours, *viz.* the flower or boyling of the wine; ſecondly, the watry ſubſtance of the wine; thirdly, the feces or dregges thereof; and laſtly, the pure and ſincere wine: ſo of

Generatio humorum.

Chylus

Chylus in the liuer, part is made bloud, part watrish flegme, part yellow choler, and part grosse or blacke choler.

Doct. What is bloud?

Stud. Bloud is a temperate humor, hot and moist, sweet, the apt and conuenient nourishment of the body.

Doct. What is flegme?

Stud. Flegme is a cold humor, moist and without sauour, as it were bloud crude, somewhat white, which is carried about with the bloud, to the end to mitigate the heate of the same, and that it may be conuerted into bloud, by the last digesture it helpeth the distribution of the humors, and doth nourish those parts that are agreeable or like vnto it selfe. φλεγμα

Doct. What is choler?

Stud. Choler is an humor, hot, dry, and bitter, which is as it were the froth of the bloud, and is carried together with the same, that it may nourish the like members vnto the same: it openeth the Meatus, and penetrateth: it is profitable to the nourishment of those parts, that haue the like temperament.

Doct. What is melancholy, or blacke choler?

Stud. Melancholy, or blacke choler is a naturall humor, cold, and dry, thicke, grosse, blacke, and sharpe: part of which is carried with the bloud, to the end to make the same the thicker, and to nourish the bones and the spleene, and it is as it were the dregs and sediment of the bloud. All these foure humors, as I haue said, being made vnnaturall, they turne to the hurt of the body; as when melancholy is burned, it becommeth vitious, and causeth madnesse: when it is mingled with too much flegme, it causeth a doltish disposition, and worketh cold diseases. When bloud becommeth vnnaturall, it is made wheyish and watrish, and is very hurtfull, as in the hydropsie: when red choler is burned, it becommeth vitious and biting: when flegme is made vnnaturall through a weake digesture, it is made a watrish humor, and so hurtfull to the body. Melancholy

There is also another naturall humor, and is *Primogenius*, the

Humidum radicale.

first and chiefe humor, called *Humidum radicale*, which is ingendred in the similer parts or insited in nature: for from the first beginning the members of the whole body are filled with a certaine dewy humor, or oily moistnesse: truely the first thing that is ingendred, hauing its beginning from the bloud menstruall. This humor yeeldeth nourishment to the naturall heat; and therefore by the same it is consumed, and needeth restauration; which is performed by the accession of nourishment. *Galen* termeth this humor the solid substance of the similer parts.

Doct. Now it resteth, that you shew me the seat or place of euery one of these humours.

Stud. These foure humours which are ingendred in our bodies, being mixed, they are contained in *vna massa sanguinis*: that is, in the fountaine of bloud which is said to bee the better part of it selfe; and being exactly confused, they rest in the veines; which the Physitions do consider as it were the chiefe Elements of the body: but those humors which are by nature deriued without the veines, whether it bee yellow choller in the gaule, or melancholy which the spleene draweth, or flegme which is ingendred in the stomacke through crudities, or the matter which distilleth from the braine to the nostrils, and such like, they are in no wise to be accounted elements of our body, and therefore they be not humors but excrements, and so they are called: which nature, whiles it is in strength doth expell as vnprofitable vnto places conuenient; and the excrementall seat of yellow choller is the gaule, from whence it is purged by vrine and the stoole: the receptacle of the melancholicke humor is the spleene, by which being drawne, it is partly conuerted into the nature thereof, and partly it is deiected to the stomacke.

De spiritibus

Doct. Proceed now to the spirits, and let me know what a spirit is.

Spiritus definitio

Stud. A Spirit is a subtile flame, or rather an airy substance, giuing strength and power to exercise proper actions in euery member.

Spirits

Spirits be two-fold, the one vitall, the other animall; the vitall Spirit is a subtill flame engendred from the bloud, and is dispersed by vertue of the heart into all the body, to giue vnto the same liuely heat, and a power of motion and action. The efficient cause is a naturall power in the heart; the matter from whence it proceedeth is bloud, for it is ingendred of the bloud, which is in the left ventricle of the heart: the forme is the flame it selfe, flying through all the Artiers.

The finall causes are two: the first is that it might giue liuely heat vnto the body: the second is, that it may be the instrument of action and motion in the whole body.

The animall spirit is as it were a starre-beame, which is sent from the braine by the Nerues into all the body, to giue motion, and sense, and all other animall actions vnto the same.

Doct. From whence is the Animall Spirit ingendred?

Stud. It is ingendred of the vitall spirits, by the vertue of the braine elaborating and concocting the same. There are some that adioyne a third kind of Spirit: that is *Spiritus naturalis*, ingendred in the liuer, which is the thinner substance of the bloud, and is like vnto a vapour: this Spirit is carried by the hollow veine, together with the bloud into the heart; where it is wrought by the naturall strength of the heart, and so is made a vitall Spirit; and so the naturall Spirit is as it were the matter of the vitall Spirit, and the vitall Spirit is the matter of the animall Spirit.

De Partibus.

Doct. Go forward vnto the parts of mans body, and tell me first what a part is? *De partibus*

Stud. Euery member of the body is accounted for a part of the body: and they are of two sorts; some principall, and some official: the Braine, the Heart, and the Liuer are accounted principall members; some also account the Testicles amongst the principall members. *Membra principalia.*

The officiall members are the sinews, and they do serue to the braine: the Artiers which doe serue to the heart; the *Membra officialia.*

veines which do ſerue to the liuer; the ſpermaticke veſſels, which be inſeruient to the ſtones. There be alſo ſome parts that be called *partes ſimilares*, or *Homogenæ*; and ſome *Diſſimilares*, or *Heterogenæ*. The *Similar* parts are ſo called; for being diuided, they remaine in themſelues ſuch as they were before; and thoſe are the bones, *cartilagies*, *ligaments*, *tendons*, *fibres*, *membrans*, the skinne, and the fleſh, with the fat, and ſuch like. The members or parts *Diſſimilar*, are the contrary. Some members are called inſtrumentall, as the ſtomack, the reines, the bowels, with all the great ſinews.

De facultatibus & potentijs.

Doct. It followeth that we ſpeake of faculties, or powers. Tell me therefore how many ſorts of faculties or powers are there?

Stud. There are three ſorts of powers, that is to ſay, Animall, Spirituall, and Naturall: the Animall faculty (according to *Plato*, whom the Phyſitions do follow) is placed in the braine: the vitall or Spirituall is placed in the heart; the Naturall in the liuer. *Ariſtotle* in *ſecundo de Anima*, rehearſeth fiue faculties or powers of the ſoule: *viz. Potentiam vegetatiuam, ſentientem, Appetitiuam, loco motiuam, & Rationalem.*

Doct. What is that *vegetatiue* power?

Stud. The *vegetatiue* power is that which doth nouriſh, increaſe, and ſtrengthen the body; and therefore it doth containe theſe foure faculties; that is, *facultatem nutritiuam, auctricem generatricem*, and *formatricem.*

Doct. What is that *nutrition* or nouriſhment?

Stud. It is the conuerſion of meate and drinke into a ſpirituall ſubſtance, performed by the force of heate, that there may be a reſtoring of the ſame, which beganne to bee decayed.

The efficient cauſe of nouriſhment is naturall heat. *Materia ex qua*, or the matter from whence it ſpringeth, is the meat and drinke receiued into the body.

Materia in qua, or the ſubiect, is mans liuing body. The formall cauſe is the ſame *Aſſimilation* or conuerſion of meate and drinke into the ſimilitude of euery member to bee nouriſhed:

rished: for one part is turned into the substance of the bone, another into the substance of the flesh, &c. The end is the restoring of the same which beganne to bee consumed: for when the naturall heat doth consume any thing, that same must bee restored againe by *nutrition*: euen as in a Lampe, the oyle being consumed, the same must be againe increased. Therefore the finall cause is the conseruation of that thing, which cannot be diuided: that is, of a man, or of any other liuing creature. *Conservatio individui.*

Doct. What are the Organs of *Nutrition*?

Stud. It is the mouth which receiueth and cheweth the nourishment: the *Oesophage*, that conveieth it: the stomacke turning it into *Chylus*, by the worke of the liuer: to which are admixed the rest of the humors, the veines carrying and conueying the bloud to euery member, in which there is made *Assimilation*, and application of nourishment.

Doct. Let mee know the faculties and powers of euery member.

Stud. The common Faculties which resteth in euery member, are said to be foure: *viz.* the attractiue, the retentiue, the concoctiue, and the expulsiue; for euery member hath a faculty to draw, to retaine, to alter and expell. *4 Facultates in singulis membris, Attractrix, Retentrix, Concoctrix, Expultrix.*

As for example: the stomacke doth first draw the meat: secondly it retaineth it: thirdly, it doth alter it, that is, it turneth it into *Chylus*: and fourthly, it doth expell it.

Doct. What is hunger and thirst?

Stud. Hunger is a desire of meate, when as the veines *Mesariaces* being empty of nourishment, do draw from the stomacke by a kind of sucking, and haling: the stomacke is as it were *Culina communis totius corporis*, a common Kitchin of the whole body. *Fames.*

Doct. What is thirst?

Stud. Thirstinesse is an appetite of humectation, and cooling in drithe or heat. The Organ of hunger and thirst is the mouth of the stomacke, in which the same irritation or prouoking is felt. *Sitis.*

Doct. Now shew me how nouriſhment is made.

Stud. The ſtomacke doth concoct the meate, and turneth it into *Chylus*; the ſame *Chylus* is ſent *per συριγγα* into the *inteſtine*, *Duodenum*, and *Ieiunum*, from thence the veines *Meſaraices* plucketh it, and turning into a more pure and liquid maſſe, ſendeth it vnto the liuer, but the excrements ſlippe downe to the inferiour inteſtins: the liuer turneth the *Chylus* into the maſſe of bloud, which conſiſteth of the foure humours, bloud, choller, flegme and melancholy. And the bloud is ſent by the veines, from the liuer, part vpwards, and part into the right ventricle of the heart, to nouriſh the heart and the lungs, and to ingender vitall ſpirits; part deſcendeth downewards, to nouriſh the inferiour members: but the other humours which are ſeparated from the bloud, part floweth into the gall; as yellow choler; part into the ſpleene, as blacke choler: the watry or wheyiſh matter ſlippeth to the reines and bladder, and ſo becommeth vrine, or elſe it doth tranſpire by ſweate. Theſe be the excrements of the ſecond decoction or digeſtion, which are made in the liuer and the veines.

Aquoſa ſuperfluitas.

Laſt of all, the third Decoction is made in thoſe parts, to the which excrements do flow: which, as I ſay, doe paſſe by inſenſible tranſpiration of the skinne, and part with the vrine and excrements. The bloud doth nouriſh the members by appoſition, and aſſimilation, that is, when it ſticketh to the members, and is adglutinated and waxeth warme, and ſo at the length, after many changes, it is made like vnto the part, and is as it were turned into the ſame ſubſtance, and then it is called the ſecond humidity. The Arabians do call it *Cambium.*

From hence the digeſtions, or concoctions are numbred to be three: the firſt is performed in the ſtomacke and inteſtins, the ſecond in the liuer and veines, the third in all the members and ſolid parts; and the rule is, *Vitium prioris concoctionis non poteſt corrigi per ſequentes.*

Doct. I ſee you do briefly runne ouer this firſt part of Phyſicke

Physicke concerning things naturall: let me heare you deliuer the rest in as short a manner, and let me know how many things there be that are called not naturall?

The second part of things not naturall, called *Hugiene, and doth respect* the conseruation of mans health.

PARS. 2.

Student.

THere are six things necessary to the nourishment and preseruation of mans life, and are called not naturall.

1 The Aire.
2 Meate and Drinke.
3 Sleepe and watchfulnesse.
4 Exercise and rest.
5 Emptinesse and repletion.
6 The affects of the minde.

Doct. Why are they called things not naturall?

Stud. Because they are not naturall parts of a man, they are not within, but without the man, they are a necessary matter, and helpe for the preseruation and keeping of the body of man, they are called *non naturales, viz.* such things as are not borne with vs.

Doct. What doth the Aire concerne the health of our bodies?

Of the Aire.

Stud. THe Aire by it selfe is hot and moist, and the *Attraction* thereof is so necessary to all liuing creatures,

atures, that to whatsoeuer thing the way of respiration is wanting, it presently dyeth: and experience teacheth vs, that the temperature, or distemperature thereof, doth change the constitution of the body; the aire being sweet and wholesome, doth refresh and nourish the Spirits.

A grosse Aire maketh the body fat and strong, but the wit dull, and slow, such as *Cicero* writeth the Thebans to bee: but a pure cleare aire, such as was at Athens, maketh men liuely, and sharpe witted.

That is the best Aire, that is pure, cleare, and thin, not grosse, troublesome or cloudy.

Hyp. in lib. de flatibus affirmeth, that the aire is not onely the author of life vnto mortall men, but also the author of diseases and death.

Galen in Arte medicinale saith, *Ab aëre afficitur, mutatur corpus, quia aut calefit, aut frigefit, aut exiccatur, aut humectatur.*

Doct. What say you to meate and drinke?

Of Meat and Drinke.

Stud. OVr bodies are nourished and refreshed with meate and drinke, euen as the lampe with oile, or wax. But in the vse thereof there are two things to be obserued: the first, that meate and drinke bee receiued at accustomed and conuenient times. For where it is too long deferred, the stomacke being empty is filled with euill humors: for the stomacke doth not suspend, or intermit his naturall action. Wherefore, where it wanteth meat, there it falleth backe againe vpon excrements.

The second obseruation is, that wee take so much meate and drinke as may refresh the naturall strength of the body, and not oppresse it. For as *Cicero in Catone Maiore* saith, *Nam cibi & potionis nimia copiamenti & corpori obest.* And how can a man haue a good disposition of minde, whose body is ouermuch filled with meate and drinke? For which cause Temperance doth very much auaile for the garnishing both

of

of the mind and of the body; for it is a mother and a sweete nurse both of health, wisedome, and many other vertues.

Hyppocrates saith, that abstinence is *Mater sanitatis*, the mother of health; and that labour and exercise doth cause a strong body.

Syracke saith in *Cap.* 17. that aboundance of meate begetteth diseases, and that gluttony doth fill the body with vitious humors.

Plato in his second booke *de Legibus* doth forbid the vse of wine, and especially vnto children, vntill they bee eighteene yeares of age, and giueth a reason, that, *Non decet ignem, igni adijcere.* And these verses are worthy the consideration.

Immodici sensus perturbat copia bacci:
Inde quis enumeret quot mala proueniant?
Corporis exhaurit succos, animiq; vigorem
Opprimit, ingenium strangulat, atque necat.

Doct. That is very true: for wee see what drowsy sots those common tospots, and tauerne-haunters are; and how vnfit to euery good action, subiect to euery kind of disease, as Palsies, Apoplexies, Hydropsies, Epelipsies, Gouts, and such like: besides they are turned for the most part from men to monsters, and their minds are as full of filthy desires, as their bodies of foule diseases. But I pray you proceed vnto the next, which is sleepe and watchfulnesse: let mee know how you do define the same.

Of Sleepe, and Watchfulnesse.

Stud. SLeepe is a rest and quietnesse of the vertue animall, which hapeneth when the profitable vapours of the nourishment doe ascend vp into the braine, where they do sweetly moysten, and euery where flowing in the braine, doe obstruct the *Meatus* and passages of the senses and moouing Nerues, thorough which the vertue of the senses, do by litttle and little faile. *De somno.*

The Efficent cauſe is heat, which as *Hyp.* ſaith, in ſleepe it flyeth more inwards, to the end to helpe concoction, from whence it hapneth that the outward members doe eaſily wax cold in ſleepe, and doe require to bee more warmer couered.

The Materiall cauſe is a ſweet vapour aſcending from the nouriſhment into the braine, and ſtopping the *Meatus* of the ſenſes and ſpirits, that the members forſake their motion.

The Formall cauſe is the reſt of the outward ſenſes, that is hearing, and ſeeing, in like manner locall mouing, as neither the hands, nor the feet do moue any more, or performe their office.

The Finall cauſes are firſt a moiſtning and a recreation of the braine, and of the heart. According to *Virgil*: *Feſſos ſoper irrigat artus.* *Virgilius.*

Secondly, that the action of the ſtomacke, and of the liuer in concoction may be the ſtronger: drawing inwards the heat and the ſpirits, for to that end doth the animall faculties reſt in ſleepe, to the end the naturall may more ſtronger performe their office.

Thirdly, that it may be the image of death, according to *Ouid.*

Stulte quid eſt ſomnus, gelidæ niſi mortis imago?

Galen calleth it *frater mortis*, the brother of death: for as in ſleepe the body taketh its reſt, and the ſoule watcheth; ſo alſo in death the body reſteth, but the ſoule and ſpirit liueth.

As concerning the order and length of ſleepe: wee muſt conſider how much and how long is connenient to euery body: for long ſleepe is more conuenient for them, that as yet haue not attained to a perfect digeſtion: whether it hapneth through the eating of euill meates, or through the weakeneſſe of the vertue digeſtiue.

And foraſmuch as ſleepe doth ſlacken, and make laxe the animall powers, it is not ſo neceſſary for thoſe that be faſting, or to ſuch as do ſuffer much hunger; for thereby the head is filled with fumes and euaporations eleuated from the *feces*, and

and superfluities retained in the stomacke. But on the contrary, too much watching is hurtfull to the braine: it doth debilitate and weaken the senses: it doth burne the humors, and is the cause of sharpe diseases: sometimes of frenzies, of madnesse, melancholy, and deliriums. In this therefore wee must be carefull to consider how much is sufficient: for as *Hyppocrates* saith, both sleepe and watchfulnesse, whichsoeuer it be, if they be immoderate are hurtfull. For the length of sleep, the most part of Physitions do agree, that to strong bodies seuen houres in the night is sufficient (for in the day time it is generally disallowed) and to those that are weaker eight houres at the most. *Length of sleepe.*

Plato in *Timeo* saith, when the world shutteth vp her eye, we also should shut vp our eies: the eye of the world is the Sunne: therefore sleepe is not long to bee deferred after the setting of the Sun, neither presently after supper can sleepe be wholesome: for, as *Galen* saith, *Lib.4. Aphorismorum, Commentario 67. à cibis ad somnum conuersis, caput impletur.* A certaine great man was wont to say, that he found nothing better for the preseruation of his health then to read nothing after supper, to write nothing, nor to be long out of his bed: so, said he, I am very well able to arise in the morning, and with cheerefulnesse to follow my businesse. *Plato.*

Hee that hath a strong stomacke, let him lie first vpon his right side; but he that hath a weake digestiue faculty, should first lie vpon the left side, and afterwards vpon the right; for to lie vpon the left side, doth better helpe digestion, and vpon the right side it helpeth better for the distribution of the meate.

Doct. The next thing not naturall, is exercise & rest: how may that auaile for the benefit and health of the body? *Motus & quies.*

Of Exercise and rest.

Stud. A Great part of the preseruation of the health of mans body doth consist in due exercise and

reſt; for both theſe are neceſſary both to the body and the mind: of which *Ouid* ſaith:

Cernis vt ignavum corrumpant ocia corpus.
Vt capient vitium ni moueantur aqua.

In theſe verſes the ſimilitude is of the body and the water. For as water that doth not moue doth eaſily putrifie: ſo the body alſo groweth to corruption without exerciſe.

In like manner of the minde and vnderſtanding, *Ouid. V. Triſt. Elegia* 12. ſaith:

Adde quòd ingenium longa rubigine læſum,
Torpet, & eſt multo, quàm fuit antè minus.

Where hee calleth it *Longam rubiginem*, and *otium ignavum*, he meaneth that, whereby the whole force of the wit and vnderſtanding is ouerthrowne; or at the leaſt doth languiſh and is diminiſhed: euen as by the contrary it is refreſhed and made ſharpe.

There are three profits and commodities that ariſe by motion and exerciſe: the firſt is, it maketh the body ſtrong.

Secondly, it doth excite and increaſe naturall heate.

Thirdly, the ſpirits aud the ſenſes are thereby made more ſtronger and ſharper.

As concerning the times of exerciſe, the *Aphoriſme* of *Hyppocrates* doth teach vs πόνοι πρὸ σίτων ἡγεῖσθωσαν labours before meate, he calleth motion or exerciſe of the body labours. Therefore before meate, and not after, the body muſt be exerciſed; for quietneſſe after feeding, or very little exerciſe is to be vſed: leaſt that the naturall heat which ſhould be exerciſed about concoction and digeſture, ſhould bee diſpearſed and ſo made weaker. Of Reſt the ſame *Ouid* ſaith:

Lib. 6. Epi. dem. 4. Aphoriſ. vlt.

Quod caret alterna requie, durabile non eſt,
Hæc reparat vires, feſſaq; membra leuat,

And in his firſt booke *De Ponto.*

Ocia corpus alunt, animus quoq; paſcitur illis:
Immodicus contra carpit vtrúmq; labor.

Here is to be vnderſtood Reſt, that is fit and conuenient, both to the body and minde; whether it bee by relaxion and

recreation

recreation, liberall or meane: for there is no man of so great strength, that hee is able to endure continuall stirrings, watchings, cares, and labours: but at the last both body and mind is dried and wearied, vnlesse there be remission vsed. Of the manner of vsing exercise and rest, *Cicero* speaketh in his first book of his offices: *Ludo, & loco, vti quidem licet, sed sicut somno & quietibus cæteris tum, cùm grauibus seriisq; rebus satisfecerimus.*

It is a true saying, that *confecto labore, dulce est quiescere.* And *Auicen* saith, that whosoeuer he be that is of an hot and dry complexion and by exercise is fallen into any notable disease, he is forthwith recouered with rest.

Doct. The next in order is Emptinesse and Repletion. *Inanitio & Replatio.*

Stud. It is true: and looke how much we may offend to defraud an hungry stomacke; so much shall wee offend to offer meat vnto a full stomack; as *Auicen* saith, in *primo Can. fen. 3. Cap. De regimine cibi & potus.* *Auicen.* For as the want of meate doth fill the stomacke with euill humors; so that the same *plethoria* and continuall fulnesse causeth opilations, putrifactions, apostumes, leprosies, and feuers.

But this is to be obserued, that if the Attractiue faculty, and the Retentiue do remaine in their naturall strength; that then repletion cannot by any meanes bee hurtfull: especially if a right order of meats and drinkes be obserued. And so in like manner, if the vertue digestiue and expulsiue bee strong, emptinesse cannot be hurtfull; for thereby the body is auoyded of his burdensome and hurtful humours, of which it is requisite that it should be cleansed and purged.

But when these faculties are hurt and become weake, so that an emptinesse cannot be suffered, and a repletion cannot nourish or profit the body: we must then take heed how wee vse the one or the other.

Doct. But how are diseases proceeding of fulnesse remedied?

Stud. By vomit, by flux of the belly, by flux of bloud, at the nose, by vrine, by spittle, by sweate, by insensible

transpirations; which being vnfelt by vs, doth happen through the strength of nature. Moreouer, sometimes there must be vsed the incision of a veine, scarification, the application of leeches, of cupping glasses and vesecatories.

But sometimes it happeneth that none of these aforesaid euacuations may be vsed; then must be supplyed exercise, labour, frication and rubbings, baths, abstinence, sleepe, and such like (especially in the times of famine:) but in euery of these there must bee had a due consideration how much and how little is conuenient, according to the state of euery body.

Animi Affectus.

Doct. Now proceed vnto the last of things not naturall: which you say is *Animi affectus*, the perturbations and affections of the mind.

Of the Affections of the mind.

Stud. AFfects are the motions of the mind, by which it is either exhilarated, or disquieted; for sorrow and anguish, with such like, are as it were *Carnifices, & tortores animi & corporis*, the very torturers and murderers of the mind and body: but on the contrary, ioy, hope, and a good conscience, are the sweet nurces of life and health, as *Plato* speaketh in 1. *De Repub.*

Therefore it very much auaileth both to the health of the body, and of the minde, to be able to moderate these affects in that order, that nature may not be hurt: for we haue reade of some, that with sudden ioy haue suddenly died, as *Valerius* reporteth of two women in Rome.

And what affects arise by anger, may easily bee perceiued, when that some by extraordinary fury and rage doe fall into the Apoplexie, the palsie, spasms, and conuulsions, with diseases of the ioints, and sometimes into a trembling of the whole body; neither doth there happen lesse euil vnto bodies through terrour or feare, as the syncop, and falling-sickenesse: euen as on the contrary in some kinds of diseases, it is profitable

fitable to be terrified and made afraid.

Sadnesse and anguish of mind worke no small affects, and especially waighty cogitations, for it induceth vnquietnesse, and watchfulnesse, which hurteth the senses, and diminisheth the strength of the whole body: wherefore as *Hyp.* saith, a moderation in all those affects is very healthfull and profitable.

Pars. 3.

Doctor.

YOu told me in the beginning, that the Art of Physicke was concluded vnder three things, which you termed naturall, not naturall, and against nature: of the two first we haue briefly spoken; let vs proceed vnto the third in like manner: and let mee know of you what those things are, which are against nature. *Pathologia.*

Stud. Those things that are said to be against nature, are in number three, *viz.* Sickenesse, the Cause of sickenesse, and Accidents that doe follow sickenesse.

And generally euery disease is either of an euill complexion, an euill composition, or a solution of the continuity, which hapneth either in the similer members, or in the instrumentall, or in both.

And first a disease of an euill complexion hapneth sometimes from the excesse or defect alone of some quality, as if either heate or cold doth abound in the body, then there is wanting the more of moysture and drithe.

Sometimes also a disease hapneth from the aboundance or defect of some humor: as if the body do abound with melancholy, or flegme, it hath the lesse of choler and bloud, and so on the contrary.

Secondly, a disease rising through an euill composition, is either from the forme and figure of the parts of the body, from the quantity, from the number and situation of the same parts.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, the solution of the continuity hapneth through some Apostume, wound, dislocation, rupture, fracture, conuulsion, or excoriation.

Furthermore, euery disease is either acute, or chronicall.

Morbi acuti atque chronici 2. Aph. 23.

All acute diseases are hote, and are iudged in 14. daies, as *Hyp.* doth testifie.

The latter sort of Physitions do call those acute diseases that haue their termination in foureteene dayes, and those peracute which haue their termination in 7. and those perperacute, which haue their termination in foure.

Hip. 6. epid. li. partic. 1. Aph. 7.

Chronicall diseases are cold and dull, and are of longer continuance. In like manner acute diseases are termed ὀξέα and sometimes they are changed into a Chronicall disease, as the Plurisie into the Gout, the Cholicke into the Palsie.

And Chronicall diseases for the most part are determined with a daily consumption.

Doct. What is Crisis?

quid.

Stud. Crisis is a swift and vehement motion of a disease, either to life or death: and it hapneth about the supreme intention of a disease, that is, the Akmin or state.

4. Tempora morborum.

And wee must obserue that there are foure times of diseases, that is, the beginning, the encrease, the Akmin or state, and the declination.

The which times are so distributed of *Hyp.* that if the increase be in the fourth day, the change hapneth in the seuēth, but if the increase be in the fift, and seuenth, the Crisis hapneth in the ninth or eleuenth day: but if the disease do increase in the tenth day, the deliuerance happeneth in the foureteenth day.

In like manner saith the same *Hyp.* the Physition should not be ignorant of the day that the Patient fell sicke, nor of the houre in the which the body fell into an heate, or to wax cold, &c. From whence it doth manifestly appeare, that other times also are not to be neglected: for a little after, he saith: For this cause saith he, shalt thou recken the dayes vnto thee, in which thou shalt expect eruptions, or apostums,

in

in those times prescribed. There is also a quaternall number of dayes to bee obserued in all diseases, which doth promise an end either to life or death, as the same Author witnesseth. 3. Prog. 3. & 4. Aphor.

Moreouer euery disease is either in the superiour or inferiour venter, or in the veines, whose Crisis hapneth by spittle, by vomit, by flux of bloud at the nose, by Apostums, by seege, by hæmorrods, by menstrous and by vrine.

And sometimes also a Crisis doth happen by sweate: and many diseases doe transpire by insensible euaporation.

Doct. How shall wee come to the knowledge of the disease? 1. Of the knowledge of the disease.

Stud. Euery disease is knowne either from things substantially inhering, as in the composition of members, what doth abound, or what doth want, or whether it bee not sited in his right place.

2. From the operation of the member being hurt.
3. From the quality changed.
4. From things going out of the body.
5. From the times of the yeare.

We must know also that euery disease is either by essence, or by colligance and consent. *Morbus per essentiam & per consensum*

It is by essence if the disease be of it selfe in some member.

It is by consent, if it be deriued from some member into another, by reason of the vicinity and colligance of the same: as the affect of the head from some vapour arising from the stomacke: neither must we be ignorant, that sometimes a disease is not onely essentiall, but accidentall also, and a companion of other diseases, so sometimes a feuer is an accident of many diseases, and of it selfe no disease: and so oftentimes there hapneth Apostumes, and Tumors. A feuer an Accident of a disease.

Doct. How shall we know the cause of the disease?

Stud. Hyp. affirmeth that there are three causes and

beginings of all diseases: for euery disease springeth either from repletion, or from the intemperature of the heauens, or through some extreme violence hapning vnto the body.

Doct. What must we do, when we know the cause of the disease?

Stud. The cause being knowne, wee must proceed to medicines, and diet, and if need be to topicall meanes and Chirurgery, prouiding alwaies a contrary medicine to the cause of the disease.

Wee must therefore at the beginning vse vniuersall remedies, then we must proceed to particular, as the disease shall require; and the Physition must remember, that *contraria contrarijs curantur: & similia similibus sibi prebere adiumentum:* so any kind of disease that doth proceed of repletion, will require emptinesse, and so on the contraty: and a disease that doth proceed of drinesse will require humectation and moystning: euen as that same which doth proceed of heat will require refrigeration & cooling, &c.

Contraria contrijs curantur.

Notwithstanding, we must take heed that wee doe not apply any thing that is extreme contrary, especially Repercussius, least wee cause hurt to some principall member.

Repercussiua vitanda.

Pars. 4.

Doctor.

WHen we haue found out a fit remedy for the disease, how must we proceed to the cure?

Stud. It is to no end to find out a remedy, vnlesse the same be vsed and applied wisely: for we may find some Physitians that are furnished with a world of remedies, and yet apply them without either wit or reason: there be others that be of good iudgement, and yet notwithstanding are very barraine of helps: but those which they haue are very choice and good; and truely I know

know not how it doth happen, that there are so few sound and iudicial Physitions in this our age. But to let that passe, in the administration of physicke, these three circumstances are to be considered, *viz. Quantum, Quando, Quomodo.* For suppose the remedy be hot or cold, a purger of flegme, melancholy, or choler: it is the worke of inuention, the cause and kind of the disease being considered, to dispose the remedy in a iust quantity, to prescribe the same in a conuenient forme, and when it becommeth to offer the same according to iudgement and reason. *Quantum, Quando, Quomodo.*

And surely, there is nothing so hard, or so obscure in the practise of physicke, as to deliuer a iust dose of medicine: neither can the quantity of a remedy bee defined, except wee take the indication from things naturall, as from the strength, nature, and temperature of the sicke, the habit of the body, as fatnesse, leaneneſſe, thinneſſe, fleshineſſe, age, sex, and custome; for that is another nature. In like manner from things not naturall; as the time, the aire, the region: from things auoyded, and from things retained; and those things which are *praeter naturam*, against nature; as sickeneſſe, the cause, and the symptoms. For what wise man will giue one and the same medicine to a weake man and to a strong, to a woman and to a man, to a child and to a yong man, to an Englishman and to a Moore? The time of the yeare is also to be regarded, the month, the disease, the Paroxisme; the cause also is to bee considered; besides the vehemency and violence of the symptons; and according to the same, the dose of the remedy is to be increased or diminished; for great diseases require remedies in a greater dose. But commonly vnto an Infant ij. ℥ of *Cassia* is sufficient: of *Manna* iij. ℥ of *Rhubarbe* infused ij. ℈; but to those that bee of strength may be giuen j. ounce of *Cassia*, and of *Manna* an ounce and a halfe: and of *Rhubarbe* ij. ℥ will scarce suffice. But as I haue said, these things can hardly be defined by Art, but must bee referred to the iudgement and discretion of the *Consuetudo, altera Natura*

learned Physition.

Chologogon. *Doct.* Let me now know your medicines that you haue to purge choler.

Stud. I haue to purge choler, *Rhubarb, Cassia, Manna, Myrabalans, Citrine, Aloes*, and such like.

Doct. These are simple medicines, let mee know your compounds.

Stud. Then I haue *Diaprunum simplex*, and *Solutivum Elect. de succo ros. hiera picra Galeni, &c.*

Doct. What purgers of flegme haue you?

Phlegmagogen. *Stud.* I haue *Agaricke, Turbith, Colocinthis, Carthamus, &c.* Of compounds I haue *Benedicta lax, hiera Ruffi, hiera picra, hiera logadij, Diacarthanni, Diaturpeti, Electuarium de citro, Diaphœnicon, Indum Maius, & minus, &c.*

Doct. What Pils haue you for that purpose?

Pils. *Stud.* I haue *pilulas ex agarico, cochiæ, Lucis, Arthreticæ, ex hermodactilis, ex eupatorio, è hiera, Alephanginæ, ex euphorbio, é castorio, è quinq; myrobolanis, ex mezereo, &c.*

Doct. Now proceed to your purgers of melancholy.

Melanagogen. *Stud.* *Sena orientalis, Epithymus, Eleborus niger, Lapis Lazuli*, and *Lapis Armeniacus*, do purge melancholy.

The compounds are *Diasena, Diacatholici, hiera Ruffi, & trifera Sarasenica.* And it is to be obserued, that *hiera Ruffi* doth purge the head, the stomacke, and the whole body from grosse and viscid humors, and with all blacke choler: Wherefore it is giuen in *Mania*, in *Epilepsia*, in *oris tortura, paralysi, & melancholia, flatus discutit, stomachi concoctionem iuuat, & est medicamentum conferens fistulis, vlceribus cancrosis, & Lepra.*

Doct. What pils haue you to purge melancholy?

Stud. *Pilulæ è fumo-terræ, ex ellebero, ex Lapide Lazuli, ex Epithymo, pil. fœtidæ.* All these purge melancholy.

Doct. Tell me now the iust dose of euery one of these medicines.

Stud. I haue said already that that can hardly bee declared, but must bee referred to the discretion of the

Physition:

Physition: which for the most part do not exceed six drams of purging Electuaries; in which is no Scamony, nor aboue foure drammes of those Electuaries, in which is Scamony. As for pils, they neuer giue more then a dram or foure scruples.

But we must note, that the colder the Region, the greater may the dose of purging medicines be.

Doct. Doth not *Confectio hamech* purge melancholy?

Stud. I must confesse that *Confectio hamech*, is good against sicknesses proceeding from blacke choler, and humours adusted, as in *mania, melancholia, vertigine, obliuione*, and in *aegritudinibus cutanijs*, as Scabbes, Morphue, Leprosie, and such like.

Doct. With what waters must we giue those Electuaries that do purge melancholy?

Stud. We giue them in *aqua fumo-terræ*, and in *aqua lupulorum*; both which doth respect the melancholicke humour.

Doct. With what pils do you purge mixt humors from the stomacke?

Stud. To purge mixt humours from the stomacke, I vse:

Pil. De tribus Fernelij.

Pil. ex hilicacabo, &c.

And when I purge generally all humors, I vse *Pil. Aggregatiua*, and *Panchimagon, &c.*

Doct. Let mee know your remedies that you giue in a liquid forme: as *Apozems*, *Syrups*, *Iulips*, *Potions*, and *Infusions*.

Stud. You shall, and first it is to be obserued: that the *Arabickes* did inuent those kind of remedies, rather to open then to purge. And this is the counsell of *Hyppocrates*. *Corpora cùm quis purgare volet oportet fluida reddere.* And if the disease bee not too acute, and the humour doe not abound, it is then the worke of Physicke to purge that which is digested and concocted; and not that *Medicamenta liquida.*

which is crude, tough, and raw. The body is made fluxible by opening of the *Meatus* and passages; by which the hurtfull humors are drawne, and those grosse humors are incided and made thin: for otherwise the expelling of crude and vndigested humors, might cause a fretting and erosion of the intestines and bowels, and sometimes bloudy fluxes: neither is any thing sent forth to any purpose; for when as all the humors are crude and dull, and vnfit to be moued, by reason of the thickenesse and coldnesse thereof; it hapneth that all the narrow passages, descending vnto the belly, remaine obstructed and stopped: neither is the grosse matter it selfe auoyded, but it is also an hinderance vnto that which is attenuated and made fluxible: for which cause, as I haue said, these kind of medicines were first inuented. An Apozem may bee made with roots, hearbes, seeds, fruits, and flowers, with water and hony or sugar boiled together: or in this order, which is easiy: ℞. *Guaiaci lib.* ß, *Coquatur lento igne in* vj. *libris aquæ ad tertias, Colaturæ adde si vis parum Sacchari, ad gratiam, & hydroticum Apozema, feceris.*

Apósematis exemplum.

For some inward griefe, of which there is no manifest cause. ℞. *Florum Chamomeli* lb.ij. more or lesse, *Coquantur, Colaturæ* ʒ.iij. you may adde if you will *Sacchari* ʒj. *Anodinum erit Apozema.* And this is the difference betweene a syrupe, and an Apozem, that the syrupe is more grosse in consistence, then an Apozem, for that is more cleere and liquid; for syrups are made with more hony or suger, & so boyled together, vntill it be brought into a light body, that it may hang vpon the naile, or sticke being dropped vpon a marble stone. An Apozem is made by adding of lesser suger, hony, or syrups to a decoction; for they must not bee boiled together, but to the intent it may bee the clearer, and more grateful to sight, it is to bee clarified with the white of an egge.

In Summer-time when plants, and hearbes are in their strength and greene, we vse Apozems; In the Winter time we

we vse Syrups, and therefore it is the duty of the Apothecary to prepare Syrups in the Summer time, against the Winter season. And the dose of an Apozem is foure ℥ of decoction, adding thereunto ℥ j.ß. of Syrupe.

In framing of Syrups we adde as much Suger as Ioyces, and boile it to a consistance, as before,

There is no great difference betweene a Iulep, and an Apoxem, for vnto ℥ ij. or ℥ iij. of distilled water or decoction, we dissolue ℥ j. of Syrupe, and so make a Iulep. As for example, if I do prescribe a Iulep, or an Apozem, in an hot cause I say, *Syropus.*

℞. Rad. *Graminis & acetosæ ana* ℥ ij.
Cichorij totius
Scariolæ.
Endiuiæ. } ana. M. ß.
Lactucæ.
4. *Sem. frigid maior.* ana. ℥. ij.
Florum violarium & nymphææ. an. ℔. j.

Fiat decoctio in colatura ℥. iiij. *Dissolue Syrupi de Cichorioſi* M ℥ j. ß *fiat Apozema.*

Potus, doth not differ from the same in matter, nor forme, but in the end, because it is prepared to purge humors, but the *Apozems* and *Iuleps* to prepare them: as for example, if to the former decoction against choler, in the place of the Syrup of *Cichory*, wee dissolue halfe an ounce of *Diaprunum solut.* or so much of *Electuary de succo rosarum*, wee haue made a potion to purge choler. *Potus.*

Infusion is when diuers medicines are beaten to powder, or whole, are laid to steepe a certaine space in some kind of liquor, or decoction: as for example in ℥. iij. of the decoction of *Cichory*; or if you had rather in *Sero Lactis*, macerate for an whole night, ℥. ij. ß of *Rhubarbe*, in the morning it is to be strained, and to the straining may bee added, if you please, a little suger, or Syrup of Violets, and so there is a fit potion to purge choler. *Infusio.*

Againe, if you dissolue any purging electuary, in any kind

kind of liquor, as barly water, broth, decoction of pruins, or some distilled water: wee may make a purging potion; as for example:

℞. *Catholici* X.ʒ. *Dissolue in ptizana, fiat potus.*

Or ℞. *Diaphœnici* ʒ.ß. dissolue it in *hydromel*, or in the decoction of some other conuenient hearbes, as *cephalicis*, or *spleniticis, fiat potus* to purge flegme.

And after the same order, wee frame potions to purge melancholy.

℞. *Confectionis hamech.* ʒ.ij.

Dissolue in Decocto polypodij, in quo. ʒ iij. *fol. sennæ bullierint cum trayea cummuni. addendo Syrupi de Epithymo, vel de fumaria* ʒ.j. *fiat potus.*

Of Medicines giuen in a dry forme, viz. in pouder, Trochisks, Lozenges and pils.

Doct. LEt me know what those medicines are, that are giuen in a dry forme.

Stud. Those are powders, Trochisks, Lozenges and pils, as for powder, it is the common matter of all dry medicines, and of a meane consistance, and thereof are made Electuaries, as well solid, as liquid; Trochisks, and pils: as for example, if you will haue a powder to stay euaporations, and ascensions into the braine, I say

A powder against the Rheume.

℞. *Coriandr. prep.* } ana. ʒ.j.
Coralli. rhub. }
Cornu Cerui vsti. }
Sachari ros. tabulat. ʒ.j.ß.
Misce & fiat pul. subt.

This powder is to be taken presently after meat.

In like manner, a powder for to break wind is prepared in this order.

A powder against wind.

℞. *Anisi cond.* ʒ.iij.
Feniculli ʒ.j. ß.
Coriand. prep ʒ.ß.

Cumini

Cumini
Carui
Sesel. in vino gene. mace. ana. ℥. j.
Cort. Citri Sicc.
Cinamom. Crassi. ana ℈. iiij.
Sacchari ros. tabulat. ad pondus omnium.
Misse, fiat puluis.

Let the Patient take a spoonefull after-meales.

But the Apothecaries should be very carefull of those powders which they reserue in their shoppes, as well for their owne profit, as their patients: for it is manifest, that the aire doth diminish and decay the vertue and strength thereof, if it be of long continuance, or not close & warme kept, for which cause it is thought far better to preserue the Species, in the forme of Trochisks and solid electuaries, as the species of *Diamargariton frigid. diarhodon Abbatis, trian Santalorum, Aromatici ros.* and such like, which may be better preserued in trochisks, then by any other waies, as some very good Apothecaries at this time do vse, or taking ℥. j. of the *species* to an ounce of suger, with some conuenient liquor or distilled water, they frame a solid Electuary, diuiding the same in *Tabellis, Rotulis, Lozengis*, or in the forme of *Manus Christi*. In like manner may bee framed solid Electuaries, to purge as a ℥. of the species of *Diacarthamum*, to purge flegme, *de succo Rosarum* to purge choler, &c.

Doct. How must we administer these medicines being thus prepared?

Stud. We giue *traian santal* for a hot liuer, *Diarrhodon* to strengthen the stomacke: and if we purge as aforesaid, then we say, ℞. *Electuarij Diacarthami, tabellam. j. pondere* ℥. ß. more or lesse as it shall seeme good to the Physition; let it be taken in the morning, being dissolued in some Ptisan or broth. In like manner.

℞. *Puluer is Diamargariti frigid.* ℥. ij.
Trochiscor. De camphura ℈. j.

Conserua violarum. ℥. j.

Lozenges in an hot distemperature.

With suger dissolued in *aqua buglossæ*, make an Electuary solid in *Lozenges*, of the weight of j. ℥. a peece.

In like manner we may take *species*, or any kind of powder, and with some iuice, syrup, liquor, or distilled water, make a Masse to be formed into pils, whose dose at the vttermost doth not exceed aboue ℈. iiij. as for example, if you take powder of *Rhubarbe* or *Agaricke*, the waight of a dragm. with syrup of violets, you may make it into sixe pils. But our Physitions in these daies do vse pils ready prepared and corrected in the Apothecaries shops, which they prescribe after this manner.

P. b Agar. purgeth grosse and Phlegmatick humors.

℞. *Massæ pill. De agarico vel de Rhabarb.* ℈. iiij.

De Rabarb. obstructions of the liuer, *& contra hydropem.*

Malax it with syrup of violets, and make V. pils.

Rondoletius doth preferre water, before either iuyces or syrups, because that by the two latter, the quantity is increased which groweth loathsome to the Patient.

Of those things which are taken in a meane forme, and consistance.

Doctor.

PRoceed to those medicines that are taken in a meane forme.

Electuaries and *Opiats.*

Stud. Those medicines that are giuen in a meane forme, are *Electuaries* liquid, which are commonly called *Opiats*: not because they consist of *Opium*, but because they haue that body that *Opiats* haue, and they are prepared partly for purging, and partly for alteration of humors. And such Electuaries are *Diaprunum simplex*, and *solutivum*, *Diaphœnicon*, *confectio hamech Catholicon*, which doth purge putrified and rotten humours, euen as *Mithridat* and *Treacle* which are great *opiats*, not onely for their consistence, but also because it is confected with *opium*, and haue a property to resist venome and putrefaction.

Doct. How may these Electuaries be prepared?

Stud.

Stud. Vpon necessity they may be prepared, taking some powder or *species*, with some kind of syrup, as of conserues & Tabels, Trochisks, and such like; as for example:

℞. *Conserue Anthos* ℥.j.
Corticis citri condit. ℥.ß.
Spec. Aromatici. ros.
Spec. Diagalangæ an. ℥ij.
Cum syrupo conseruationis citri q.S.
Ficnt opiata ad frigidam intemperiem ventriculi.

Opiata ad frigidam intemperiem ventriculis

To this kind also appertaineth those *Medicamenta mollia*, which are giuen in the forme of *Bolus*: as *Cassia*, and *Cathelicon*.

Bolus aduenes.

As ℞. *Cassiæ* ℥.j. *adde sivis*
Rhubarbari ℥.j.
Cum saccharo q. S. fiat bolus.

Which tender bodies may take out of spoone with some syrup of violets, *nenuphar*, *Althæa* and such like: or

Bolus ad gonorream.

℞. *Cassiæ nouiter tract.* ℥.ß.
Pul holand ℥.ß.
Tereb. ven. lot. in aquæ plant. ℈.j.
Cum saccha. q. S. fiat bolus.

Of Clysters and their administration.

Doct. THere remaineth that you shew me the order of *Clysters* and their administration: what is a *Clyster*?

De Clysteribus.

Stud. A *Clyster* is a certaine liquor, iniected into the belly for the remedy of some kind of disease: and this kind of medicine is not a particular, but a common remedy, not onely for the diseases of the bowels, but it draweth from all other parts, as from the hollowes of the liuer, it draweth *per venam portam*, it draweth melancholy from the spleene by his branches. In like manner it doth diuert, and draw from the vpper parts; it cleanseth and scoureth the intestines, it is the best and safest medicine

that can bee giuen, especially being well appointed, for it purgeth without any trouble.

Doct. How is that medicine to be prepared?

Stud. In time past they would take one pound of liquor, as *hydromel* to scoure, milke, or the decoction of camomell to cease paine: In this age they prepare their clysters of roots, hearbes, and seedes, being artificially boyled, which they call decoction: in a pound of which decoction, they put one ounce of hony, of rose: to cleanse, of red suger, to stir vp excretion, with a dramme of common salt, besides iij. ounces of some kind of oyle, to make it more lubrick and slippery, and withall some cathartick medicine to purge: as for example, if you will purge the belly: wee say R. *Decoctionis clysteris commin.* or *remollientis.* ℔.j.

Dissolue mellis & Sachar. rub.	an. ʒ.j
Catholici	ʒ.ß.
Olei communis.	ʒ.iij.
Fiat clyster.	

This I declare for example sake, not to the intent that the matter should be followed but the manner; for sometimes wee adde in stead of the purging medicines those that be astringent, as *Centinodum, Plantago, Tapsi barbat* an. M.j & so make a decoction. In one pound of the strayning you may adde some oyle, iuice: or if the Patient bee rich, some astringent syrupe, as of Myrtels, or Quinces iij. ounces: and so make an astringent Clyster, contrary to the former.

And we must obserue, that sometimes the liquor is to be increased or diminished, according to the discretion of the Physition; as when the bowels are oppressed, as in the dropsie, and in woemen great with child: also when they are extended with wind; as in the Colicke, and Enterocele, &c. Also when we would haue the Patient to retaine the matter longer then ordinary, wee diminish the quantity. When wee would haue the Clyster to ascend,

as

as in the vlcers of the Ilions, and paine of the reines; also in the Apoplexy, lethargy, the quantity is to be increased, and to bee made more sharper. Sometimes also oile is hurtfull: as in *Dysenteria*, where it maketh the vlcers foule and filthy; for then astringents, as oyle of Roses or Quinces, ought to be added to comfort and strengthen. *Dysenteria.*

Doct. It hath bene thought of some that Clysters may bee administred for nourishment; especially being made of broth, milke, egges, wine, and other comfortable things, when as the Patient is not able through weakenesse or some other accident to wallow: let mee heare what your opinion is in that point.

Stud. It seemeth that *Galen* was of the contrary opinion, when he denyed that the substance of the Clyster was not carryed beyond the *Intestinum Ieiunum*, from whence some haue supposed that the sicke Patient hath beene refreshed with the vapour onely. It is true indeed, that the animall apetite may bee satisfied with the vapour of the nourishment, but the naturall will not bee so satisfied, which delighteth onely with substance, and not with vapours, which suddainely and speedily perish, and waste: but it is manifestly prooued that the matter of the Clyster to transcend the *Ieiunum intestinum*, euen to the stomacke, from whence the *Mezeraicall* veines doe draw nourishment: and in *illiaca passio* it hath beene seene that oftentimes the Clyster hath beene cast vp by vomit: who is hee then that will deny that Clysters nourish not, or come vnto the stomacke?

Matthæus Grad. an interpreter of *Auicen* doth affirme that hee had seene a maide, that had taken Suppositories, and forth-with, with the violent attraction of the stomacke, fell into exceeding vomitings; whereby they were compelled to minister vnto her fat broths and iuyces to dull the attractiue faculty, whereby she was recouered.

Doct. I am of your opinion, that Clysters may be giuen to nourish, and haue obserued in diuers patients, who through weakenesse could take no nourishment by the mouth, yet by Clysters, nature hath bene well refreshed, and the Patient in the end as well recouered. But I would now know of you the order that must be obserued as well by the Physition in the administring of the Clyster, as by the Patient in receiuing of the same.

Clysteria quomodo administranda.

Stud. You shall, and first for the time; it is thought that in the morning betweene seuen and eight of the clocke, the stomacke being fasting, or in the afternoone about fiue of the clocke, (as the Physition shall thinke conuenient) is the fittest time; hauing a great care that it be not administred too hote for the sensibility of the intestins. I haue knowne some that haue brought great torments to the Patient, by ministring of a scalding Clyster. But after the Patient hath receiued the Clyster let him by little and little turne himselfe vpon either side; and if the affect be in the head or vpper parts, let the Patient lie vpon his backe; if in the right side, let the Patient lye so much the longer vpon the same, and so in like manner vpon the left side; retaining the Clyster if it bee possible the space of an houre.

Afterwards when the Clyster shall bee sent forth with the excrements; let the Patient refraine meate, the space of an houre, that so by that time the vapours dispersed through the body may be setled; otherwise the fumes of the excrements may be hurtfull, &c.

De remedij delectu.

Doct. Proceed now to the choice of the remedy.

Stud. The end of preparing Physicke is twofold: the first is, to preserue the present health of the body: the second to reduce that which is lost. Health is preserued by a good diet, and sickenesse is recoured by Physicke: diet supplieth that which is wanting by the vse of like things, & Physick being the curer, doth remoue those things that are hurtfull vnto the faculties, by remedies that are contrary. There are 3 things that doth hurt the action, that is,

Tria sunt quæ actionem ladunt.

the

the cause, sickenesse, and the symptoms, or accidents that doth follow sickenesse. The cause doth precede the disease, euen as the shadow doth the body: the symptoms doth follow the disease; therefore the Physition must first indeuour to remoue the cause, for otherwise there is little hope to cure the disease: and the outward cause doth profit very much to the knowledge of the inward: and as I haue already said, the scope of the Physition must be onely to remoue the same. And this cause is twofold, either coniunct or remote; which is commonly called antecedent and consequent: we call that coniunct which immediatly and forthwith causeth the disease; as some humor *præter naturam*, affixed to the part, either by fluxion of congestion: we call that remote and antecedent, from whence the same coniunct cause springeth, and is nouriſhed: that is to say, *Plethoria* or *Cacochymian*.

Doct. What is that *Plethoria* or *Cachochymian*?

Stud. We call that *Plethoria* when there is an imoderate fulnesse, through aboundance of bloud, or of the foure humors: the cure whereof doth consist in euacuation; either by opening of a veine or purgation.

Cacochymia is a vitious quality of all the foure humors, or of some one of them: for either bloud is distempered, or choler or flegme, or melancholy; and that body which is so distempered is called *corpus cachochymicum*, a body of an euill complexion, iuice, or disposition.

Vt enim dua, sunt prima & communes causa morborum: plethora, & cacochymia, sic remedia, sunt missio Sanguinis & purgatio.

First therefore in the choice of the remedy, we must first be carefull to deale with the cause, before the disease, or the symptom: the antecedent before the coniunct: the antecedent cause, as I haue said, springeth from *Plethoria*, or *cacochymian*, and the former is remoued by *phlebotomy*, and the latter by purgation.

In the choice of the remedy also wee must consider in opening of a veine, what veine must be opened, as the *Cephalica* for the head; the *Basilica* for the naturall parts; the *Epatica* for the middle parts, and the diseases of the stomacke

Remedij electio.

macke and the ſpleene. In the choice of the remedy, wee muſt alſo diligently conſider the ſeate of that *cacochymia*, and whether it may be remoued with *Aloes* and *Caſſia*, or with ſome common Clyſter, for to purge from the firſt region, as from the ſtomacke, from the Inteſtines, from the hollows of the liuer, from the Meſenterio, and the ſpleene, it is ſufficient oftentimes to vſe *Rhubarbe*, *Sena*, and *Agaricke*, with ſuch like: but where it reſteth in the parts more remote, wee are then to vſe a ſtronger meanes, as Scammoniacke medicines, *coloquintida*, *hermodactils*, black *helebor*, and others of the ſame kind.

In the choice of the remedy we muſt alſo conſider the greatneſſe of the diſeaſe: for a great diſeaſe doth require a great remedy; and a lighter, the lighter remedy: ſometimes a ſmall diſeaſe is cured, onely by abiſtinence, frication, exerciſe, and with light remedie. In the adminiſtration of a remedy, wee muſt alſo conſider the ſtrength of the ſicke, and ſo diſpoſe the medicine accordingly. And this is an obſeruation, that the remedy muſt bee alwaies greater then the diſeaſe, and before the opening of any veine a Clyſter muſt precede, leſt the crude humor which for the moſt part is contained in the firſt region, be carried into the places that are empty of bloud.

Doct. You haue ſatisfied me well in the *Theoricke* part: let vs now come to the practiſe. Shew mee your method in the *Therapeuticke* part: let me know how you will remedy diſeaſes that proceed of bloud; which we will comprehend vnder *Synochus*, or a continuall Feuer. Goe to, let me know your methode for the curation of a continuall Feuer.

Stud. That ſhall I moſt willingly performe, and I hope to your full ſatisfaction and contentment.

Generall

Generall remedies against diseases proceeding of bloud, vnder the example of a *continuall Feuer.*

Signa.

Synochus is a continuall Feuer proceeding from bloud: the signes are an vnseparable redness in the face, an inflation or puffing vp of the veines, artires and temples, with lassitude and wearisomeness of the whole body, with a sleepy disposition; the vrine is red and grosse, the Patient hath a difficulty of breathing, a full pulse, high, and swift.

Purgatio.

The cause and the kind of the Feuer being perspected, the cure will easily follow. The first intention is with a Clyster, or some gentle purgation: onely I except *Cassia*, partly because of his humectation it increaseth the putrifaction, and partly because head-ach is familiar to this feuer, and by the vse of *Cassia* is increased, by reason of the aboundance of vapours that ariseth from the same.

Vena sectio.

Secondly, I open the basilica of the right arme, and according to the counsell of *Galen*, I draw bloud euen to the fainting of the Patient. And because it sometimes hapneth that in a full body, a veine is hard to be found, and therefore bloud cannot bee drawne: I then cause your *sanguisuga* to bee applyed to the thighes, legges, and shoulders, or otherwise, I prouoke the *Hemeroyds*, the *Menstrus*, or bleeding at the nose. Then to resist putrifaction, I giue *Syrupus de acetositat. citri*, *De limonibus*, *De granatis*, *Oxysacharum simplex*, with the waters of roses, sorrell gramen, and Cichory: Or,

℞. *Syrupi de acetositate Citri.* ℥.ij.
Aquæ graminis. ℥.viij.
Fiat Iulep, which must be giuen *inter pastus.*

The Syrups of buglosse, *De lupulis*, *De fumaria*, giuen in

in the waters aforesaid doth cleanse the bloud. And forbecause the thinner bloud by heat is apt to be turned into choler, and the grosser into melancholy; wee purge with *Cholagogo*, as *Rhubarb*, & with *Melangogo* as *Sena*, with some refrigerant decoction, which doth also open and cleanse the bloud; as for example:

℞. *Radicum graminis.*
Acetosæ an. ℥.iij.
Cichorij totius.
Endiuiæ. *Scariolæ* an. M.j.
4. Sem. frigid. maior. an. ℥.ij. *(sunt Diuretica.)*
Florum cordialium an. P.j.
Fol. Sennæ mundat. ℥.j.
Fiat decoctio.

In colaturæ ℥.viij *infunde Rhabarbari* ℥.iij. *in leui expressione dissolue syrupi De Cichorio simplicis syrupi de fumaria compos. an.* ℥.j. ß. *fiat apozema in duas Doses.*

In the whole course of the cure must bee repeated clysters that haue a cooling faculty; as for example:

℞. *Lactucæ.*
Endiuiæ.
Scariolæ.
Portulacæ an. M.j.

Fiat decoctio in collaturæ lb.j. *dissolue mellis & sacchari violati ana.* ℥.j. *Diapruni solut.* ℥.vj. or *confectio hamech,* ℥.ß. *vel vtriusq;* ℥.ij. *olei violati* ℥.iij. *fiat clyster.*

And because the bloud in the great veines doth putrifie, and is wont to moue great heat and paine about the loines: we do apply *ceratum refrigerans Galeni*, or that which is prescribed against the hot distemperature of the reines.

Victus. The dyet of the Patient must bee thinne, and such as may not increase bloud, for bodies that are full and impure, by how much the more they are nourished, by so much the more are they hurt: in stead of wine he must vse *aqua hordij*, or *aqua graminis*: and if the Patient haue difficulty of breathing, you may adde thereunto liquorish, iuiubes, or

the

the roote of Vngula cabalina, to strengthen the heart, bugloſſe, burrage; for the heat of the liuer cichory, lettice, purſlane; for the heat of the reines, the cold ſeedes and *Alcecengi*, for coſtiueneſſe, violets, *pruna acida*, *Tamarindi*. He muſt abſtaine from egges, wine, and if it poſſible may bee from fleſh, becauſe it doth increaſe bloud, and ſo conſequently the cauſe of the diſeaſe.

Of diſeaſes proceeding of choler, with their cure, vnder the example of a Feuer tertian.

Doctor.

PRoceed now to the cure of cholericke diſeaſes, which we will comprehend vnder a tertian Feuer. Tell me how will you cure a tertian Feuer. *Febris tertiana.*

Stud. As there is a common cauſe of all diſeaſes, ſo for the moſt part there are common remedies: the heate of choler is firſt to bee aſſwaged by the vſe of cooling medicines, as ſyrups of Cichory, *De endiuia*, *De granatis*, *violarum*, *Roſa*. *De lymonib*. *De nymphea*: and if the heat be great, we giue them with the water of Lectis, Purſlan, Plantine, Cuſcuta, Sorrel, and ſuch like: Afterwards wee purge with Rhubarb, infuſed in a decoction that doth both coole and open, as

℞. *Rad. graminis.*
Acetoſæ an. ℥.ij.
Cichorij.
Endiuiæ.
Cuſcutæ an. M.ß.
4. Sem frigid maior. an. ℥.j.
Florum violarum &
Nenupharis an. P.j.

Fiat decoctio: in collaturæ ℥. iiij. *infunde Rhubarbe.* ℥. ij. *in leui expreſſione diſſolue ſyrupi roſarum ſolut.* ℥.j.ß. *fiat potus.* In a tertian, we adminiſter opening medicines rather cold then

Ad Glauconem. hot: *Galen* commendeth the decoction of *Pulegium*, and *origanum.* And towards the end it shall bee profitable to vse *Syrupis de quinque radicibus cum aqua cichorij*, or the syrup of cichory, with the decoction of the opening roots (and if you would temperate the heat) they must first be macerated in viniger.

Clysters. Clysters must be prepared *ex sero Lactis*, in which is boiled Lettice, purslan, and violets: in the straining we dissolue *Diapruni solutiui*, ℥.vj. *mellis & sacchari violati*, an. ℥.j. *olei violacei & nenupharis*, *an.* ℥.j.ß. if the heat be great; otherwise oyle of violets ℥.iij. will serue.

Vena sectio. *Galen* in the most hotteste Feuers giueth counsel to draw bloud euen *ad lypothimiam*; because there is no better remedy for cooling. Howbeit, it is not expedient to open a veine before the third fit bee past: and then if the vrine appeare red, high coloured, and grosse, wee shall commit no errour to open the Basilica of the right arme: whereby the bloud commixed with choler and putrifaction may bee auoyded: and although the vrine bee not grosse, and yet high, it shall bee necessary to draw bloud, to auoide choler, and to coole the ebullition thereof. But this must be obserued in bloud-letting, that at the first opening of the veine wee may draw more bloud then at the second; for the first is for euacuation: and the latter but for refrigeration and cooling. And this bloud-letting is most fittest for young persons, such as haue plethoricke and full bodies, and strong; in whom this feruour and ebullition, by this meanes is easily asswaged. Wee must obserue also that vomiting being not prouoked, doth very much profit *Vomitus spontaneus.* in the beginning of the fit; neither is it to be restrained, vnlesse the Patient bee dibilitated and made weake thereby: and if it happen at sometimes that nature is slow to expell by vomite; the Physition is then to helpe nature, by administring of some medicine that may procure the same: *Vomitus prouocandus in paroxysm principio. Vomica.* which must be (as I haue said) in the beginning of the fit; as for example:

℞. *Aquæ*

℞ *Aquæ communis.* ℥.iiij.
Aceti & sacchar an. ℥.j.
Misce.

Mix it, and giue it being warme vnto the Patient. Some giue vnto the Patient Oximell ℥.iij. somewhat warme. But sometimes it hapneth that the Patient doth vomite too much; that nature is thereby very much weakened, against which, we must giue such things as may corroborate, and strengthen the stomacke: As Oximell

℞. *Syrup. de agresta.* ℥.vj. *Syruplis.*

Which shall be giuen by little and little to the Patient in a spoone ij. houres before meat: but if that stay not the vomiting, prepare this powder:

℞. *Coralij rubei* ℥.iij. *Pulus.*
Zacchar. ℥.ij.
Cinamomi. ℈ ß.
Misce

Of which powder let the Patient take ℥.j. mixed with two spoonefuls of the foresaid Syrup.

A Sacculus may also bee prepared to apply vnto the stomacke after this manner: *Sacculus contra vomitum.*

℞ *Rosarum rubearum.* ℥.iij.
Coriandri præparat
Menthæ an. ℥.ij.ß.
Coralij rubei.
Balaustiorum an. ℥.j.
Conquassentur, & fiat sacculus.

In like manner wee take for the same matter bread tosted and infused in rose vinigar, beaten in a morter: to which may bee added of myrtels and redde corral *ana* ℥.j of Cinamon ℥.ß. and so applyed like a plaister vpon the stomacke. It is the duty of a carefull Physition to obserue diligently the motion of nature, and to follow it as a guide, as if it will helpe it selfe by vomit, by the stoole, by vrine, or by sweate; yea sometimes by *hæmorhogia* to assist nature in her worke. *Emplastrum ad stomach.* *Natura monitor.*

worke. In the meane time we muſt regard the liuer, for now he is in himſelfe altogether hot, the gaule in its veſſell is fried and adured, ſo that we muſt apply an *Epethem ex aqua cichorij* ℥.iiij. *cum electuarij tria Santali.* ℥.ij.

Doct. But ſometimes it falleth out, that with all this labour, the Feuer ceaſeth not; what muſt we do then?

Stud. Then we giue this Apozem or the like, twice a day in the morning and euening, ℥.xij.

℞. *Tamarindorum ſubt. inciſ.* ℥.ij.
Hordei contuſ.
Paſſularum mund. ana. P.iiij.
Prunæ inciſæ & contuſ. num. xv.
Conſeruæ nenufaris.
Conſeruæ violar. ana. ℥.ij.
Fiat Decoctio. S.A.

In libris xij. *aquæ quoad* ℔. *octo reliquæ fiant.*

Let it be ſtrained, to which ſtrayning adde of ſyrup of violets, and *oxyſacchari ſolut. & ſyrupi de duabus radicibus an.* ℥.iij. *fiat Apozema.*

Clyſters. Afterwards wee adminiſter this clyſter following, or the like:

℞. *Succi betæ* ℔.j.
Olei roſ. ℥.ij.
Solis. ℥.j.
Sacchar. rub. ℥.ij.
Caſſiæ fiſtulæ ℥.j. *miſce & fiat enema.*

Ad Aridit atem linguæ. Alſo if the Patient be dry or thirſty, you may ſuffer him to hold in his mouth *Electuarium Diadragacanthi frigidi*, or Damaske pruins, or a cold apple, or to gargariſe with roſe-water and vinegar mixed together, or to licke ſome ſyrup of limons of the citren, violets, or ſuch like.

If the Patient be grieued through the heat of the ſummer, or becauſe the fumes of choler do offend the heart, we may giue him ſome cordiall confection: as

Confectio cordialis. ℞. *Conſeruæ roſæ roſ. rub.* ℥.j.
Conſeruæ borrag.

Bugloſſæ,

Buglossi.
Violarum aña ʒ.ß.
Dioscordij. ß.j.
Boli orientalis ʒ.ß.
Syrupi acetositatis citriq. ß. fiat in forma opiatæ.

Or for the richer sort;

℞. *Diamargarit. frigid.* ʒ.j.ß.
Sem. citri
Sem. acetosi & bombacis ad ʒ.ij.
Cum syrupo buglossi fiat confectio.

Or ℞. *confectionis hyacinthorum* ʒ.j.ß. *specier. Diamargarit. frigid.* ʒ.iij. *misce cum syrupo violarum fiat confectio.* Of which you shall giue vnto the sicke a spoonefull, with water of bugloss and roses.

Sometimes it hapneth that the patient is affected with exceeding head-ach, by reason of the fumes that doe arise from the stomacke; wherefore the foresaid clysters must be often repeated, and frication and rubbing of the legges must be vsed: besides the feet must be often washed before sleepe with this lotion following:

Pedum lotio.

℞. *Florum ros. rubrarum*
Foliorum vitis &
Camomillæ an. M.ij,
Florum chamomillæ &
Meliloti an. P.j.

Let all boile in common water, wherewith let the Patients feet be washed euery night, the thighes and hips are also to be bound, to the intent the fumes may be retracted, and so the paines of the head eased.

The feet may also be rubbed with some peece of course linnen cloth, which may be moystned in some vinegar and salt.

Also for watchfulnesse we may apply this vnguent.

℞. *Unguenti populeonis* ʒ.ß. *Contra Vigilias.*
Requiei Galeni. ʒ iij.

Misce

Misce and annoint the tempels.

But if the Patient sleepe not with this meanes, you may administer this potion, two houres before midnight.

℞. *Syrupi papaueris* } *an.* ℥.i.
Syrup nenufaris }
Aquæ Lactucæ. ℥.ij.
Misce & bibat.

Also may be administred this Nasale:

Nasale Somnificum.

℞. *Aquæ nenufaris* ℥.ß.
Requiem Galeni Gr.iij.
Opij Gr.iiij.
Aceti modicum:

This being mixt together, wet cotten or bumbast, and put them into the nostrels.

It oftentimes hapneth, that in this tertian Feuer, the reines to bee inflamed: to amend which, wee vse this vnguent.

℞. *Olei rosati magistri Arnoldi.* ℥.j.
Aceti modicum.
Misce.

Unguentum pro renibus.

Or wee may vse, *vnguento rosato santalato.*

And thus by the helpe of Almighty God, and the due administration of these medicines, the cure of a cholerick, or tertian Feuer shall be effected.

Doct. I like this methode very well: let me see how you will proceed in the cure of diseases proceeding of flegme, which we will comprehend vnder a quotidian feuer: let me know your methode for the cure of a quotidian Feuer.

Generall remedies for diseases proceeding from flegme vnder the example of a *quotidian Feuer.*

Stud. EVery Feuer that repeateth it selfe euery day, may not be termed a quotidian, for *duplex tertiana,*

tiana, and *triplex quartana*, doth returne daily, but the *tertian* with rigor, and exceeding cold, the *quartan* with horror, shaking and shiuering, and the *quotidian* with cold of the extreame parts. The *quotidan* doth not end in ἀκμαζίαν neither doth the fit of the *quotidian* end with sweat, as that of the *tertian*, because that flegme is hardly resolued into sweates, but choler is very easily and quickly: also the accesse of the *quotidan* is wont to bee longer then that of the *tertian*.

The cause and kind of the Feuer is chiefly to be iudged from things antecedent, as if the sicke were giuen to gluttony, of a flegmaticke constitution, & such a one that hath lead an idle life; whether it taketh him in the winter, or whether he liueth in a cold and moyst aire, or if he be a child or an old man; if it bee a woman, or a fat man; for children through much feeding, old men, women, and fat men, through the defect of nature, do gather much flegme. Also the Feuer is to be adiuged from the adiuncts: as if the heat be felt with moisture, although through putrifaction it bee somewhat sharpe: also from the consequence, as the hurt action: if the pulse be small, flegme oppressing the heat, both in quantity and quality. The Feuer is also to be adiudged by its excrements: as if the vrine bee thin (for so it happeneth through obstruction, because the thinne matter doth onely passe away) also if it be white through rawnesse and crudity, or at the length turbulent, through the permixture of some grosse humour. The stools are also to be considered, whether they be liquid, crude, & flegmaticke: no thirst, because the stomacke abounding in flegme doth represse heate and drithe, which are the causes of thirst, vnlesse it happen the flegme to be salt with putrifaction or admixion of choler. And as the cure doth proceed from Art, so wee must bee carefull to distinguish the *species* of the flegme from the effects; as if it be sharpe it prouoketh hunger; if it be salt, thirst; if it be sweet, drowsines; *quia acida coquenda, salsa mox vacuanda, dulcis naturæ committenda.*

Ab adiunctis.
A consequentibus.

Therefore when wee perceiue that the Feuer doth proceed from the domination of flegme, the first intention for the cure, is to prepare a Clyster fit to draw the same from the stomacke and intestines, the forme whereof is in this order.

Enema ad pituitam.

℞. *Parietariæ*
Mercurialis
Chamomeli
Meliloti
Pulegij an. M.ß. adde si vis tantundem
Hyssopi
Thymi
Origani.
Calamenthæ
Sem. anisi.
Sem. fenículi an. ʒ.ij.
Fiat decoctio, in colaturæ libra vna dissolue mellis anthosati, & Sachari rubri. ana. ʒ.j.
Diaphœnici, aut
Hieræ, aut
Benedictæ laxatiuæ ʒ.vj.
Olei chamomeli &
Anethini ana. ʒ.j.ß.

The humor is to bee prepared with syrups *de hyssopo, de marrubio, de absynthio, de duabus, de quinque radicibus, de Stœchade, oxemelite composito, Scillitico cum decocto radicum Aperientium*, or with the waters, *Apij feniculi, Asparagi, petrosilini, Absinthij, menthæ, saluiæ*: afterwards must be administred such things as do purge flegme, as *Agaric. Diaphœnicon, Diacarthamum*, or if you please, we may prepare an *Apozem* purging grosse flegme, as

Apozema purgans pituitam.

℞. *Radicum aperientium*, or
Rad. enulæ campanæ,
Rad peoniæ. an, ʒ.ij.
Hyssopi
Thymi

Absynthij.
Gentianæ.
Chamedrios.
Chamepitios an. M.ß.
Sem. anisi.
Sem. feniculi an ℥.iij.
Florum anthos &
Stœchados an. P. j. *fiat decoctio.*

In colaturæ ℥.viij. *infunde & bulliant agarici* ℥.iij. *in expressione dissolue Diaphanici* ℥.vj. *oximelitis aut cuiusuis dictorum syrup.* ℥.ij. *fiat Apozema in duas doses.*

Pil purgantes pituitam

But becauſe it happeneth ſometimes that the Patient cannot take a potion, but had rather take pils: then for that purpoſe may be giuen *Pil. Aureæ, cochiæ, de agarico, aggregatiuæ*; of thoſe that are leſſe purging, as *hieræ, ſtomachicæ, & elephanginæ*, which may be preſcribed by themſelues or with the others, whoſe doſe is ℥. j. Or,

℞. *Maſſæ pil. aurearum* } *an.* ℈.ij.
Pil. de hiera. }

Cum ſyrupo de abſynthio fiant pillulæ molles num. vj. Or,

℞. *Agarici trochiſcati* ℈.iiij. or of the Maſſe of *pillulæ de agarico* ℥. j. *cum ſyrupo De mentha, vel De hyſſopo, fiant* vj. *pil. molles.*

About the beginning of the cold the fit approching, it ſhall not bee amiſſe to prouoke vomite, to euacuate the flegme which is contained in the ſtomacke; eſpecially if nature ſhall ſeeme to require the ſame. To which purpoſe,

℞. *Syrupi acetoſi aut oxymelitis ſimpl.* ℥.ij. *Vomitus.*
Cum decocto corticis raphani & ſeminis
Atriplicis raphani, in quo ℥.ß. *agarici bullierit, Fiat potio, Detur tepidè.*

Hyppocrates doth very much commend vomit in this feuer, and writeth, in *Epidemijs*, that the wife of on *Theotimus* was perfectly cured by the ſame.

Alſo it is profitable to annoint the backe with oile of flower-deluce or Dil: the patient may alſo vſe hydromel in

the decoction whereof shall be boiled a little hyssop, as

℞. *Hyssoppi* P.ß. *bulliat in tribus libris aquæ ad perfectam despumationem, seu consumptionem tertiæ partis addendo mellis* ℥.j. ß. *cuius quantitas minuatur fiat q; mulsa dilutior si calor in præcordijs auctus videatur, ne bilescat.*

In the whole progresse of the disease, our chiefest care must bee for the stomacke, that it may bee strengthned by taking of some tables of *Aromaticum rosatum*, or Electuary of *Diarrhodon*, applying vpon the same *Emplastrum stomachicum*, with oyle of nutmegs *Chimical*, oyle of wormewood and such like: also to giue inwards is very much commended syrupe of mints, or syrupe of wormewood. Some doe affirme, that the iuice of Gentian with warme wine taken before the fit, doth cure the feuer: but it is most certaine, that a ℥ of old treacle, or mithridate, (the body purged) giuen in white wine one houre before the fit to cure the same.

There bee some that haue sworne that onely with the instilling of three droppes of the iuice of Mercury into the right eare, or nostrill, to haue done the same: but as it is an indifferent medicine, so those that are disposed may proue it; so that they neglect not other meanes: some others will, vpon the drawing on of the fitte, to hold their feete in hot water, wherein haue beene boiled hearbs of an hotte quallity. To a quotidian appertaineth that feuer which is called *Epiala*, contrary to *Lyperia*, for when the inward parts waxe cold, the outward doe burne, because the vitrios and glassie flegme in what part it doth putrifie is incended, but the other grosse sort doth waxe cold, which requireth to bee well prepared by such medicines as doe vehemently incide and attenuate before it bee purged. *Gordonius* counselleth in feuers proceeding of flegme, to giue the Patient wine diluted: for, saith hee, if *Valescus* doe allow of opening roots, if of pepper, if syrups *de mentha*, and *De absynthio* may bee allowed, why not wine?

Epiala Lypirian.

And this is the methode which I haue obserued for the cure of a quotidian feuer; by which methode I suppose all plegmaticke diseases, of what kind soeuer, may be remoued and perfectly cured.

Doct. Tell mee what difference there is betweene a quotidian, and an hæmitritæon, or halfe a tertian.

Of an Hæmitritæon or *Semi-tertian.*

Student.

De semitertian.

Hippocrates, primo Epidemion, doth call a semitertian, *horrificam*; not onely becausse it doth inuade with horror, but also becausse in the whole course of the disease the sicke doth altogether tremble and shake: this feuer is framed of a continuall quotidian, and of an intermittent tertian. Flegme putrified in the greater vessels, causeth a quotidian, and choler putrified in *habitu*, causeth a tertian; but it troubleth daily: besides also the third day the sicke complaineth himselfe to bee tormented for certaine houres with watchings, vnquietnesse, with thirst, with betternesse of mouth, with a feeling of lassitude, and wearisomenesse: therefore from flegme proceedeth the cold, and from choler a light succession, or shaking of the externe parts; but from both of them trembling: It is called a semitertian, not becausse wee say hee is halfe putrified; but hee is farre more grieuous then a tertian. *Hyppocrates* saith, that this disease is deadly, for many causes: first for the diuers conflict of contraries: secondly, becausse it leaueth no time to nature to nourish the body, to concoct hurtfull humours, and to repaire the strength; by which cause it must needs heape vp a great heape of excrements: thirdly, becausse it is two-fold, and is framed from contrary causes: lastly, becausse it exerciseth the stomacke, and the neruos parts;

from whence arise often syncops, and soundings: notwithstanding, the remedies must be mixed against choler, and flegme; the stomacke must bee strengthned with inward and outward meanes: the liuer must also be cooled: for I know not how it happeneth that it taketh one heat from another; and the lesser is drawne from the greater.

Doct. So, now you haue satisfied my desire, proceed to diseases arising from melancholy, which we will comprehend vnder a feuer quartan: let me know your method you haue for the cure of the same.

Of diseases proceeding of melancholy, with their remedies, vnder the example of a quartan Feuer.

Student.

De morbis melancholicis.

A Feuer proceding from melancholy is called a quartan, because that melancholy moueth euery fourth day, as choler doth euery third day, and flegme daily. That quartan is the safest, which doth inuade of it selfe, and doth not proceede from some other disease. For those feuers that degenerate into a quartan, do sometimes continue for many yeares, *Valescus* reporteth, that hee saw a man that had a feuer euery thirtieth day, and that feuer did continue for the space of thirty yeares.

Dignotio.

The feuer is chiefly to be knowne from things antecedent; as if the sicke were melancholy, and in his declining age, and whether it tooke hold of him in Autumne; although that *Hyppocrates* in *libro De hebdomadibus* writeth, that that feuer doth chiefly inuade in the flower of age: that is to say from twenty fiue vnto fourty fiue, but he hath writtten many other things of a quartan, which daily experience doth shew to be contrary. But to proceed: if the fit doth beginne with trembling and shaking, and that his bones seeme to be bruised; and feeleth paine in his lower parts, because the humor is cold, dry, and grosse, and therefore cannot be thrust out to the skinne.

Also from the adiuncts, as by the heat which doth not appeare sharp and biting, except the humor bee of burnt choler.

From the consequents, as the hurt action, a small pulse, by reason of cold; and slow by reason of the grossenesse of the humour. The feuer is also to be adiudged from the excrements, as by little sweat, because the humour being earthy is very hardly resolued into sweats: the vrine is thin and watrish, and the stooles dry. *Actiolæ.*

Wee must proceed in this feuer as in others, in concocting the matter offending, and in purging; because hee is of the kind of putrified feuers; therefore wee must begin with euacuation of common superfluities; and if the belly bee bound, we giue this or the like clyster:

℞. *Fol. Malua.* M.j.
Polyped quer. ʒ.j.ß.
Epithina.
Carthami an. ʒ.ß.
Sen. alex. ʒ.j.
Sen. aniſi.
Feniculi an. P.j.

Bulliant in ſero Lactis ad ℔.j. *in colat diſſolue mellis roſ.* ʒ.j. ß. *olei violarum* ʒ.iij. *& fiat enema.*

Also we may administer this Apozem.

℞. *Radicum capparis.* *Apozema.*
Tamaricis an. ʒ.iij.
Polypodij. ʒ.ß.
Lupuli, ouſcutæ, meliſſæ, bugloſſæ.
Borraginis an. M.j.
Sem. aniſi, feniculi an. ʒ.ij.
Florum geniſtæ. P.j.

Fiat decoctio, in colat. ʒ.viij. *Diſſolue Syrupi Defumaria ſimplicis vel compoſiti, ſyrup. de pomis aut regis ſabor an* ʒ.j.ß. *fiat Apozema clarum in duas doſes.*

In the same decoction may be boyled *Foliorum Sennæ* ʒ. iij. *in collatura* ʒ.iij. *diſſolue catholici duplati, ſyrupi de*

Epithymo

Epithymo compoſito an. ℥.j. *fiat potus.*

The humor being prepared, ought to bee purged with light and familliar medicines often repeated, for ſtrong medicines doe rather exaſperate the humour, being before ſtubborne, then otherwiſe auoid it, but for poore men, and ſtrong bodies may bee giuen this medicine.

℞. *Confectionis hamech.* ℥.iij.

Diſſolue in decocto lupuli & ſcabioſæ, in quo ℥.ß. *foliorum ſennæ bullierint, Addendo oxymelitis Galeni* ℥.j. *fiat potus.*

The powder of *Sennæ orientall*, or of *Epithymum cretenſis* ℥.ij. drunke in white wine may ſuffice, or ℥.vj. thereof infuſed in *ſero lactis*, or *aqua violarum*, if the humour bee of blacke choler.

Atrabilarium

If the body be full, the vrine appearing red, we may open the baſilica of the left arme, which if the bloud flow cleane and red, ſhall bee forthwith ſtaied, but if it appeare blacke, we may draw in more aboundance: in women wee are to moue the *menſtrus*, and in men the *hæmoroyds*, if it may poſſible be done: ſome there bee that giue counſell to open the *ſaluatella* (which is a veine betweene the little finger, and the next adioyning to the right hand, but in this caſe it muſt be opened in the left) in the *paroxiſme* it ſelfe. *Galen* giueth vs warning to looke vnto the ſpleene, as well by things inward as outward, the remedies whereof hee ſetteth forth *in capite de obſtructione lienis*: for in the ſpleene ſaith hee, is the ſeate of melancholy, which is indeed *focus febris*. But *Trallianus*, and *Ætius ex Ruffo* ſaith: that in a quartan proceeding of blacke choler wee ought to haue regard to the liuer, rather then the ſpleene, which being obſtructed, and by long heat of a chollericke Feuer, is growne into a *ſcirrhus* hardneſſe, which may be perceiued when the *hypocondre* of the right ſide by the very touch it ſelfe is perceiued to be ſtretched out and very hard.

Vomitus.

Vomite doth auaile very much to auoide the humor offending, if it bee prouoked by fit medicines, two houres before the fit. White wine being giuen luke warme in

the

the beginning of the fit, doth procure vomit, and in the declination sweate.

There be many that do commend bathing, because that the skin astricted and dry may be relaxed: but this I thinke not to be good in a cold quartan, but in a hot.

There be some also that do giue counsell, a little before the fit, to annoint the spine of the backe, and the feete (because from thence beginneth this fit) with the oile of Iuniper, of Scorpions, of *Coste*, of *Castereum*, *cum vnguento Arragonio*, or with that wherein hath bene boyled greene frogges, for that is an *alexterium* of a maligne humor; some also preferre this medicine following.

℞. *Theriacæ* ℥.j. *Nardi & caryophillorum an.* ℈.j. *cum aliquo ex dictis oleis, aut cum vino generoso fiat linimentum pro spina dorsi*, for so the trembling which is the fore-runner of the quartan is diminished, because that by heat nature is strengthned, and better able to resist cold, aud also sometimes sweate followeth, whereby the accesse is diminished, and a portion of matter of the disease auoided, *Confectio alcermes*, being giuē one houre before the accesse, the body being before purged, doth profit very much. In like manner, the decoction of Agrimony, to which is added a little white wine, at the end of the decoction, is giuen in the accesse it selfe.

I wonder of *Rondoletius* which doth so often perswade vs that the vse of white wine, wherein sage is steeped for a night, to cure the quartan, and to bee a certaine remedy for all diseases which proceed of melancholy.

But that is more wonderfull, that *Trallianus* doth affirme, that a liue Bitle hung about the necke in a peece of linnen tincted with saffron, should a sure experiment to take away a quartan: some there are that doe commend the worme that is found in the thistle called *Labrum veneris*, to bee very good against a quartan, being hanged about the necke, of which you may read more in *Trallianus*. *Scarabeus.* *Trallianus.*

Valescus doth write, that the iuice of *Tapsus Barbatus* being giuen three times an houre before the fit, to remoue the quartan.

There are certaine that do vse this secret. Take the heart of an Hare, prepared as the lungs of a Foxe, let it bee diuided into three equall parts, whereof giue one part vnto the sicke, with wine, before the fit, and by the fourth fit hee shall bee cured.

Things that do heat very much, as *Diospoliticon*, pepper, mustard, *Diatrion piperion*, and such like, must bee auoyded in a hot quartan, in a cold also they must bee carefully and warily vsed. For those that vse these remedies, as *Ætius* doth affirme, doth increase the force of the disease, for they make of a simple quartan, a double, but in the state before the fit may be giuen this medicine. R. *Myrrhæ piperis, & foliorum rutæ viridum an, partes æquales cum melle, fiant pil. quarum* ℈.j. *detur ante accessionem.*

Of diseases of Inanition or emptinesse vnder the example of a Feuer hectick.

Febris hectica.

A Feuer Hectick is an equall distemperature, and therefore without paine, for he that is hectick doth not feele the disease but priuatiuely: *quia solitas actiones obire non potest:* besides the alteration groweth by little and little, neither hath it any essence in motion: when this disease doth beginne, a feuerous heat doth inuade the dewy or almentary humor called *Cambium*, and it is said to bee confirmed when it hath consumed the naturall moysture, and the fixed spirits.

This Feuer hectick, followeth very often burning Feuers, colliquations, great euacuations, as *Aimorragian*, *Diarrhæan*, *Lienterian*, and also *Empiemæ* and *Pithisis*: that is lesse dangerous, which doth succeed some affect of the stomacke, the liuer, the spleene, the mother, and the reines.

This

This disease is knowne by his heate, the vrine is thinne, crude, white, and at last oily, from the colliquation; there is a dry cough, the pulse slacke, hard, and it is called Hecticke by reason of the dry artery: they feele presently after dinner heate, especially in the hands aud feete, because the dry heate is perfused in the nourishing humor, euen as lime in water. The stomacke almost sticketh to the ribbes, the face is leddy, because of the smalnesse of heate, and spirits; at the last hee groweth like a ghost, the eyes hollow, the nose sharpe, and then when the haires doe fall, the legges swell, and a flux of the belly hapneth: then iudge that death is nie. *Dignotio.*

The cure rather consisteth in diet, thē in Physick, but if the belly be bound, there may be administred a gentle Clyster, or some *cassia* newly drawne, his meate should be hens fed with frogs, or with barly boiled with frogs, of which being beaten together may be made a paste, and so cast vnto the hens. Some there are that do very much cōmend the yelks of egs poched, and coxe-stones boyled in milke, but that is more fitter for the cause (which is emptinesse) then to the Feuer: the Patient must vse decoctions of french barly, a yong cocke stuffed with barly, cleansed and boyled, for broth is very good; if hee shall bee weary of the vse of ptisans, he may vse white wine being made thin by dilution. The Patient must auoide watchfulnesse, venery, and all other perturbations of the minde, which doth dry and attenuate, as anger, sorrow: bathing is thought to be good luke-warme so that it hath a cooling faculty, especially before the disease be confirmed, hee may tarry in this bath three or foure howers giuing vnto him therein Asses milke tempered *cum saccharo, violato*, or *rosato*, after hee is out of his bath, he may be annointed with *cerato refrigirante galeni*, or *vnguento rosato mesue*, oile of roses, violets, or Nympheæ. *Curatio fere tota analeptica.*

Marasmus is not to bee cured, and those that make their brags that they cure consumptions, doe much misstake: for it is rather leaneneſſe, and thinnesse of body, then any *Marasmus.*

hecticke passion: for euen as to poure oyle into a lampe where is no weeke nor match, is nothing else but *oleum & operam perdere*, euen so in vaine do we striue to restore to nature that solid substance, being by heat consumed and taken away, because that through nourishment, a watry humor, & not an airy is rather supplyed to the sicke Patient.

Common remedies for maligne diseases, and contagious vnder the example of *the Pestilence.*

De Peste.

THe Pestilence is a disease which doth happen vnto many, and hath his beginning from a pernicious and vnusuall putrifaction, which doth very much exceed the condition of vulgar putrifaction. Sometimes this pernicious quality hath it begining in our selues, for it happeneth that sometimes the humours of our body doth so much degenerate from the naturall temperature, that at the length it taketh vnto it selfe a pernicious & venemos quality, & so is constrained to striue with deadly venoms. Sometimes it ariseth from outward meanes, as maligne and putrified exhalations which are communicated to the aire; sometimes from dead carcases not buried; sometimes from fennes, pooles, and standing waters corrupted, such as is the waters in Moores fields at London, where no man was wont to walke in the euenings for stench, stinking channels, venemous dens, and mettalin spirits arising out of the earth: oftentimes also it hapneth from the variable commistion of the Planets; and then it is the hidden and admirable scourge of the most iust God for our sinnes; and then it is properly called the pestilence; but when it hath it beginning from other causes, it is called *Morbus malignus*, or *Febris maligna:* those feuers that haue their originall from venome are for the most part deadly, but not pestilentiall, because they are not contagious.

I could wish that our common Gardeners about London might be inhibited from planting such multitude of Cabbages, or at the least might be compelled to bury deep vnder ground their rotten stalks and leaues, from whence ariseth a pestilent vapour and vnusuall putrifaction at the latter end of the yeare.

The

The part affected is the heart, by meanes of the p- lent aire which creepeth vnto the same by the lungs, through necessity of respiration, whereby the vitall spirits are assailed; and the *humidum radicale*, and solid substance cleane ouerthrowne. *Affect.*

We must in the beginning resist the externall cause; the aire is to be purged by fire, both abroad and in the house, for that doth separate and remoue the putrifaction many waies: if it be prepared of sweete woods, as of Iuniper, it is more better and doth more refresh the vitall spirits. The vitall faculty it selfe is to be strengthned by cordials, as wel inward as outward, the better to resist venome.

℞. *Conserue bugloss. & borrag. an.* ℥.j. *Alexiphar. macon.*
Corticis, & seminis citri, an. ℥.ij.
Diamargariti frigidi.
Trochiscorum de Camphora, an. ℥.j.

Adde si vis, boli armeni, terræ sigillatæ, tantundem; Rasuræ Vnicornis, smaragdi, ambræ an. Gr.ß. *cum syrupo conseruationis citri fiat opiata, vel cum saccharo in aqua violarum, Bugloss. scabiosæ, cardui benedicti, soluto fiat electuarium per tabellas*: but if these things shall seeme too hot for the summer; they may bee temperated with adding of roses, violets, and sanders; for the poorer sort may suffice the rines and seeds of the citren, cornu cerui, zedoaria, dictaminus, angelica, tormentill, gentian, taking the quantity of ℥.j. in *aqua cardui*, or *borraginis*, To the heart must be applyed *Sacculus*, *fotus*, *Epithemita*; the *sacculus* may bee prepared with red roses, violets, flowers of bugloss, and the citrin rine, & of their decoction or distilled waters, may be made *fotus*: and with adding of cordiall powders may be framed an *Epithema*.

There are alwaies ready in the Apothecaries shops two *Alexiterians* against all venoms and venemous diseases: that is, treacle and mithridate, the which our ancients haue vsed with great profite, as well for preseruatiue, as for expelling present sickenesse: they were wont to giue one ℥ by it selfe, or else in some cordiall water,

and also to apply it outwardly in the forme of a Linament vpon the region of the heart, with some iuice of Lymons, or mixed with some Cordiall conserues, in the forme of an Emplaster. Some learned men do agree that the same *cacochymia* is to be diminished by some gentle purge, which must be vsed with some cordiall decoction, as for example: if choler be accended, & a poyson may seeme to possesse all the humors, the signes shew presently a chollericke feuer, although by reason of the same cacoethes and conioyned poyson, it be increased: we may say,

Decoctio cordialis.

℞. *Radicis acetosæ* ℥.ß.
Scabiosæ.
Cichorij
Pimpinellæ an. M.j.
Sem. citri &
Cardui benedicti an. ℥.ij.
Flor. cordialum an. P.j.

Fiat decoctio, in colaturæ ℥.iiij. *infunde Rhabarbari.* ℥.ij.ß. *in expressione leui dissolue Syrup. rosarum Solutiui* ℥.j.ß. adde *Camphoræ grana quatuor & fiat potus*: I dare not vse any stronger purge as *Daprunum solutiuum*, and *Electuarium, De succo rosarum*; least nature should bee disturbed: and therefore wee must farre lesse vse *Diacrydium*, or *Antimoni*. Yet there be some Physitions that do affirme, that foure or fiue graines of *Antimoni* being infused in some cordiall waters, to haue bene giuen with good successe.

In all Epidemicall diseases one doth administer this medicine:

℞. *Diascordij.* ℥.j.
Syrup. De lymonibus. ℥.ß.
Aquæ cardui benedict. ℥.ij.
Spirit. vitrioli gut. 4. Misce & fiat haustus.

Nota. *Capiat & sudet.* and so let him take two or three of the same draughts: if the feuer seeme to be a *Synochus*, and the Patient haue a plethoricke body, a veine may safely be opened, but if it bee but an Ephemera or hecticke, then at no hand

hand must it be enterprised. From hence ariseth that great cõplaint of letting of bloud in a pestilent feuer: one defending one way, and another, another way; and all striue by probable reasons: some do affirme, that no man doth escape that hath a veine opened: another saith, that very few die that do bleed, and that there is no more present remedy, then the same; but this strife is to be ended by the distinction of feuers.

Celsus doth commend bathing, and hydroticke meanes, that the Venume may haue its passage through the skinne: & therefore they hold it good to annoint the groine and arme-holes, with the other *Emunctuaris*, with oile of Scorpions, that thereby the venome may be drawne forth.

De Lue Venerea, or *the Pox.*

Doctor.

PRoceed now and tell me, what disease is the Pox?

Stud. The Pox is a contagious euill, which for the most part is gotten by the vse of venery. In times past we had no knowledge of that disease, but now it is growne to bee the commonst that raigneth; and it bringeth with it many detestable euils, and troublesome accidents. In the beginning it is but small, but in time it groweth to that greatnesse, that it doth not onely corrupt the humours and spirits, but also it doth offend the nerues, membrans, tendons, the flesh and bones: and at last it doth ouerthrow and consume all the other parts of the body, and peruerteth the temperature and whole substance therof: from whence proceedeth diuers, and many kinds of excrements: it may well be called the plague of *Venus*, because that for the most part it is not gotten but by the vse of vncleane bodies. This disease hath beene knowne to lurke in the body many months together before it hath beene mistrusted, and sometimes

Let Venerians looke to themselues.

ometimes a whole yeare together.

Doct. What part is there affected in the Pox?

Part affect.

Stud In this diſeaſe the part affected principally is the liuer, as doth appeare by the naturall actions hurt; for in the ſtomacke there is euill concoction, whence ariſeth a great alteration of colour and dulneſſe of the whole body: the appetite of venerie is cleane ouerthrowne; and it is a diſeaſe peruerting the whole ſubſtance with the temperature; and by that meanes there ariſeth diuers kinds of excrements: it hath an analogie to the whole ſubſtance of the liuer, rather then to the heart or braine; for it doth oppugne rather the naturall ſpirits then the vitall or animall; which being corrupted, muſt needes infect the liuer: from whence ariſeth that ſame *Pilorum defluuium*, or ſhedding of haire; and alſo ſometimes there ariſeth itchings about the priuy parts, vlcerations, virulent Gonoreheas, and ſuch like.

Doct. What are the ſignes of this diſeaſe?

Signa Bubonis veneris.

Stud. In the beginning of the diſeaſe there doth appeare thoſe venirious bubos in the groine, and maligne puſtuls in the yard, and vlceration of the vrinarie paſſages; which after a time doth yeeld a kind of light *ſanies*, and cauſeth a kind of diſtilling, and burning of vrine: and withall there is adioyned a gonorrhea, and ſhedding of ſeede. Sometimes there doth appeare certaine ſmall ſpots ouer the whole body, now yellow, now red and filthy; and as it were warts, which will not away till the diſeaſe bee cured.

Finally, paine of the nerues, head-ach, paine of the ſhoulders, and the necke are common companions. Sometimes alſo thoſe ſpots do vaniſh, and after a time do riſe againe, and in time doe proue to bee virulent, and doe erode and eate the skinne; ſo that there doth ariſe many foule ſordid, and virulent vlcers and puſtles, and they doe very often grow in the pallat of the mouth, and in the iawes, and the noſe, and in time doth exulcerate the tongue, and the noſtrils,

strils, because those parts ate more tender then others.

Often times in this disease also the haire of the head and beard doe fall away, the Patient cannot sleepe by reason of exceeding paine, for this disease doth torment more in the night then in the day. There doth also apppeare in the ioynts, and vpon the shin-bone, certaine tophies, and tumors, hardly to bee dissolued, and especially in the fore head, and other parts of the head, and sometimes also vpon the shoulders, from whence arise vlcers, of very hard curation, which in time doth erode and corrupt the bone, bringing to the Patient intollerable paine, especially in the night time, as I haue before said. And these are the commmon signes of this disease of the poxe, which in some bodies doe appeare after one manner, and in others after another, more or lesse, and not in euery body alike. *Defluuium pilorum capitis atque barbæ.*

Doct. Tell mee, what is the cause of this disease?

Stud. The cause of this disease is a sordid and maligne quality, containing in it selfe a very deepe contagion, communicated from one infected body vnto an other, by vncleane touching, whereby for the most part, the parts of generation are affected, by reason of their rare and tender substance. In like manner this maligne quality is communicated to the apparell, to the mouth and also to the skinne: and sometimes it doth so much the sooner infect, by how much the naturall vertues and faculties of the liuer are the weaker. From thence also it doth sometimes happen, that many vsing one vncleane woeman, are in a manner all infected, but those that haue their naturall faculties strong, are very seldome infected. As in the pestilence, although the pestilent aire bee communicated to all, yet all are not alike infected, and the reason is, because some men haue their vitall spirits more stronger then others. *Causa.*

Doct. What Prognosticks haue you vpon this disease?

Prognos. *Stud.* This disease being but newly taken, doth admit an easy cure, but being old and confirmed, is very sildome or neuer cured, and the disease is contagious and infectious, to which women are more apter then men: and in this euill it happeneth that the infected cannot sleepe, and they are troubled with continuall sorrow and griefe, and in the end do perish with a feuer. This disease also is transferred from the parents to the children, and bringeth with it oftentimes, phtisis, the dropsie, asthma, and such like.

Doct. Let vs now heare what cure you haue for this disease?

Lues venerea cura. *Stud.* I haue said, that if the disease bee not very old, that then the cure is very easie: and therefore first of all I open a veine, afterwards I attenuate the grosse humours with medicines appropriate for that purpose, especially such as may reserate and open the meatus and passages,

Then I doe purge the bodie, as necessity shall require, either with pils or potions, afterwards I expell the reliquis of the disease, with such things as may procure sweate, and when the sicke doth beginne to sweate, hee must cleanse and wipe himselfe with cleane cloathes, and before hee entreth into his sweate, hee must drinke a draught of some decoction that hath property to open the passages of the neruos parts, in which the matter of the disease doth chiefly lurke, and so driue the matter from the inward to the outward, and to that purpose wee may vse *Decoctio radicum fenic. apij, enulæ campanæ, lentium, vuarum, passarum ficuum.* To this decoction may bee added treacle, or mithridate: as if wee take iiij.℥.of decoction, wee may adde ℈. ij.of mithridate, or treacle, with two drops of spirit of vitrioll, and so may hee sweate the space of three houres together: afterwards the sweate being cleane wiped, hee may commit himselfe to his bed, in which hee may more pleasantly sweate at his pleasure: and this order of sweating is often to be repeated.

Diaphoretica.

Doct.

Doct. But what if these courses taken bring no profite to the Patient?

Stud. Then wee proceed to a more stronger kind of cure, as after bloud-letting, to vse the decoction of *Guaicum*, or of *sarsa parilla*, or of the roots of *China*: alwaies prouided, that the body bee first well purged: and this decoction must be giuen hot, and the Patient well and closely couered with cloathes, that hee may the better sweate: after his sweate, hee may rise and walke in his chamber, so that hee keepe himselfe from the iniury of the aire: hee may also foure or fiue howers after the receiuing of the medicine dine and sup, either with a chickin, or a little rosted mutton. But if for businesse or pouerty the Patient may not vse the decoction, wee may in the place vse the vnction of mercury, and that with very good successe, and also sometimes after the vse of the decoction with great profit, for thereby shall the reliques of the disease bee throughly expelled, and wee continue the decoction for the space of thirty daies together. This euill also will require sometimes stronger engines, as *suffumigijs* of *cinabrium*, which may bee performed euery third or fourth day: but this medicine is neuer to bee put in vse, vnlesse wee haue in vaine assaied all the former meanes: notwithstanding in the armes and legges it may safely bee performed, if there bee either paine, aches, nodes, tophies, or vlcers: and for those which by reason of their businesse cannot keepe home, wee may vse emplasters spread vpon leather, or vpon new linnen cloth, and place them vpon the ioints, which emplaster may be remoued twice a weeke.

Doct. Shew me what plaster it is that may be applyed for that purpose?

Stud. R. *Emplastri de meliloto pro splene* ℔.ß. *Argenti viui* ʒ.ij. *olei laurini, petrolei, terebinthina an.* Q.S. *fiat cerotum.*

For the hard tumors, you may take the roots of Althea, figges, and fenugreeke, which being boiled in wine, with

capons-greaſe make an emplaſter, and ſo appply it.

And this may ſuffice for a diſcreet Student, as concerning the cure of that foule contagious diſeaſe called the French Poxe.

Doct. There is one diſeaſe more, which wee call Scorbutus: let vs finiſh our diſcourſe with that diſeaſe: tell me, what is that Scorbutus?

Of the Scorbio.

Student.

De Scorbuto.

SCorbutus is a diſeaſe obſtructing the ſpleene, whereby the courſe and paſſage of melancholy is hindred: which being mingled with the reſt of the bloud, infecteth all the body with vild waſtings and corruption, the groſſer part whereof falling downe, ſtaineth the legges with ſpots, like vnto the colour of pomgranets, and the thinner part being carried vp, doth defile the gummes with ſharpe fretting, and loathſome ouergrowing of the fleſh. This diſeaſe is thought to bee that which *Plinie* maketh mention of in *lib.* 25. of his naturall hiſtory calling it *Stomocace* and *Sceletyrbe*.

25. *Lib. hiſt. naturalium. cap.* 3. *Strabo geographi lib.* 16.

Doct. What is the cauſe of this diſeaſe?

Groſſe diet the cauſe of the Scroby.

Stud. The chiefe cauſe of this diſeaſe, is groſſe and corrupt diet, as may be perceiued by thoſe that trauell by ſea, by long voiages: and our fiſhers that trauell to the Newfound-lands, wanting freſh and ſweete waters, and vſing corrupt and ſtinking waters, and eſpecially in an hot aire, in which the waters will moſt ſpeedily corrupt: in like manner fleſh tainted, and ſtinking, lard putrified, and mouldy, venſone tainted, fiſh of groſſe ſubſtance, bread twiſe baked and ſubmucid, garlicke, drinkes ingendring euill iuce, bacon, martlemas beefe, fiſh dryed in the ſmoake, being ouer-ſalted, and ſuch like. But aboue all things a full diet, and delicate, vſing no exerciſe is the cauſe of this diſeaſe; and ſometimes this diſeaſe

doth

doth follow the quartan Feuer.

Doct. What are the certaine signes of this disease?

Stud. The signes of this disease, is first an euill sauor of the mouth, swelling and bleeding in the gummes, loosenesse of the teeth, blacke and leadie spots of the legges, and sometimes in the face, also weakenesse of the ioynts, and disability to walke, difficulty of breathing, and chiefly when they moue or stirre, and when they offer to rise, or sit vp right, they are ready to die, and their spirits faile them, but when they lie downe they are refreshed and breath more freely. In like maunner the sicke for the most part are greedy of meate, and doe desire to eate often, and for the most part their stomackes neuer faile them, also the belly for the most part is bound, and the Patient goeth hardly to stoole, and yet there are some that are subiect to a continuall fluxe. Moreouer, the spots of the legges doe some times swell and tumifie, in some the legges are so vlcerated, that the shin-bone doth often lye bare. And in a word, this disease in some bodies doth turne into a kind of leprosy, for the spots resolue into a blacke kind of scales, as is wont to be in the Morphue, and leprosy of the Greekes, although in other some, it is but light, equall and shining. *Signa Scorbuti.*

Lastly, those that die of this disease, are found to be spotted ouer all the body, and veines of the legs, and about the tongue are filled and swolne with melancholy bloud: and these are propper signes of this disease.

Doct. Let mee now know the manner of your cure of this disease?

Stud. Letting passe generall remedies I will shew you the particular cure of this disease, which must if there bee *Plethoria* and fulnesse bee begunne with bloud-letting, if strength, age, and other thinges permit: but it is not thought good to draw bloud in aboundance; but if it bee possible to draw bloud from the *hæmorrhodial* veines, it is moreconuenient; and if the spleene bee

particularly affected, the veine called *Lienaris* or middle veine of the left arme is to bee opened: but if the liuer be more affected, and that the body is perceiued to abound with bloud, then we muſt open the liuer veine of the right arme, or the Baſilica or middle veine.

Nota. But where the Phyſition is neuer or ſeldome called, vntill the diſeaſe hath taken deepe roote, and is become deſperate: that is, when it hath ſpread it ſelfe into the legs, and other parts of the body; we muſt then altogether abſtaine from bloud-letting.

Doct. What courſe muſt we then take?

Stud. Then we muſt purge the body lightly with ſena, and ſuch like; as for example:

℞. *Senea Alex.* ℥.iiij.
Epithymi. cretenſ. ℥.iij.
Paſſular. Corinth. ℥.ß.
Sem. feniculi. Zuinziberi an. ℥.ß.
Fiat infuſio in ℥.viij.

Seri lactis per noctem ſuper cineres calid. & mane fiat colat. & capiat.

In like manner may bee giuen halfe an ounce of this powder following: being infuſed as aforeſaid. ℞. *Sena.* ℥.j. *Epithymi, tartari vini albi an.* ℥. ß. *Cinamomi, Cariophill, galangæ, ſem. anniſi an.* ℥.j.ß. *fiat puluis ſubt. & ſeruatur ad vſum.*

In like manner pils *De fumoterra*, and *Diaſena*, are alſo profitable in this diſeaſe. Some vſe pils *ex Lapide Lazuli*, and *Armeno*: but they are not thought to be ſo good. Some giue *Confectio hamech*, but with good caution: for this diſeaſe doth not admit any vehement purgations; for thereby the heart is eaſily affected and hurt.

The body being lightly purged, wee giue the Patient twice a day: *viz.* in the morning, and at foure of the clocke in the afternoone, the quantity of foure ounces of theſe iuces following: ℞. *Chochleariæ, menthæ aquat. Cardamines, Syſimbriæ, an. partes æquales: Beechabungæ partem ſemiſ.*

These hearbes being greene, let them bee beaten in a stone morter with a pestle of wood, and then strained, and to euery dose may be added a quantity of suger to make it pleasant: and if it be possible let the Patient sweate after the taking thereof.

Doct. How may this profit in this disease?

Stud. The *Cochleria*, water-mints, and *Cardamines*, doe deuide and extenuate and also purge by vrine, and the Cresses doth moderate the strength of the rest: and these hearbes may be diminished or increased, as the Physition shall thinke good, according to the disease and body of the Patient: It may be giuen also in goates-milke, or for want thereof in cowes-milke, so that euery day it bee made fresh. It is approued to bee very good when the hearbes haue bene boyled in whey, and also in white wine; but yet the iuces being giuen, is much to bee preferred aboue the rest.

There may also be added amongst the said hearbs, of our commom worme-wood, and sometimes fumoterre, and Germander: also to strengthen the bowels and the ioynts may be admixed *Numularia*.

If the Physition will, hee may make a greater mixture: they may make their choice of these things following,

Myrobalan: Indorum: cort. radicis capparis corticis fraxinæ: Cuscutæ, Asari, Thymi: Epithymi, Capilli veneris, Matricariæ, Chelidoniæ, Betonicæ, Hyssopi, Agrimoniæ, Scabiosæ, Pimpinellæ, Phyllitis, Cetrachæ, Tamarisci, acetosæ, Radicum Valerianæ, Bistortæ, Enulæ Campanæ, Polypodij, Lapathi acuti, Feniculi, Petrosilini, Cichoriæ, Borraginis, Buglossæ, Rhapontic. Aristolochiæ rotund. Lequiritiæ, passularum florum, genistæ, florum sambuci, Anisi. sem. feniculi, 4. sem. frigid. viticis, and such like. Also diuers haue beene cured by this remedy following:

℞. *Fol. absinthij siccati, gran. Iunip. ana.* M.j. *Lactis Caprini.* ℔.iiij. Let all boyle vntill the third part bee consumed, then straine it, and mixe with the strayning of Saffron

one

one Dramme, then let it boyle ouer the fire for two or three walmes, and againe straine it: of this decoction you shall giue three times in a day warme: *viz.* in the morning, and at three of the clocke in the afternoone, and at the entrance into bed.

In like manner *Syrupus Sceletyrbicus* described by *Forestus* shall much auaile in this disease. ℞. *Succichochlearia succi Becabungea an.* ℔.iij. *saccbar. albiss.* ℔.ij. *clarificetur succus cum albumine oui,* and then boiled to the forme of a syrupe, and so let the patient receiue thereof in a spoone euery day thrice.

And thus haue wee finished our discourse of the scurvy, of which disease if any man desire more knowledge, let him read *Forestus* his obseruations in diseases of the Spleene.

FINIS.

THE EXAMINATION OF A CHYRVRGION,

Wherein is handled the whole course of Chyrurgirie by way of Dialogue betweene the Doctor and the Student.

By S. H.

LONDON.
Printed by *N. O.* for *Iohn Royston*, and *William Bladon*, and are to be sold at their Shop, at the great North-dore of *Pauls*, at the signe of the Bible. 1612.

THE DISCOVRSE of Chyrurgerie.

Doctor.

AS I haue dealt with you in Phyſick, ſo now I will examine you in Chyrurgery: tell mee, what gifts muſt hee bee indued with, that will take vpon him to practiſe as a Chyrurgion?

Stud. He that will take vpon him to practiſe as a Chyrurgion, muſt be of honeſt and vertuous manners: hee muſt bee faithfull and ſecret, hee muſt bee a wiſe man, and hee muſt haue a perfect knowledge of the figure, the ſituation and connexion of all the parts of mans body, by knowledge in Anatomy: he muſt be well experienced in the Art, and ſuch an one as hath gotten experience as well by the workes of others as of himſelfe.

Doct. You haue truely ſaid: for ſuch an one is indeed a fit man to bee admitted to the practiſe of the Art, that is indued with all thoſe qualities: and I would to God that this Cittie of London were altogether furniſhed with ſuch Chyrurgions: then ſhould there not be ſo many ignorant and vnskilfull ſuffered to abuſe ſo noble an Art; and withall the Kings leige people, in taking vpon them the profeſſion of that wherein they haue no knowledge at all: but I leaue that to them that haue authority to mende it. And as you haue told mee the inward qualities of a true Chyrurgion; ſo tell me how his body muſt be framed to be fit for the ſame profeſſion.

Stud. As concerning his body; it must be comely, well proportioned, and strong, his hand must bee steddy, not shaking; and be as ready with the left hand as the right; hee must not want any of his senses, and especially his sight, that must bee quicke, for otherwise hee shall be accounted but a blind Chyrurgion, and not able to iudge aright of his Patients griefe.

Doct. What other things shall a Chyrurgion haue need of in his practise?

Stud. There are many things which belong to a good Chyrurgion, as instruments of all sorts, medicines, a fit place to performe his workes, light, apparell, seruants, and some other assistants as necessity shall require.

Doct. What instruments shall a Chyrurgion need?

Stud. Those instruments that a Chyrurgion may not want, but must haue alwaies in a readinesse, are these:

Nouacula.
Scalpellum.
Forfices.
Volsella.
Specillum.
Latum specillum.
Stilus.
Acus.
Canalicula forata.
Habena ad membra laqueo intercipienda.
Fascia.
Panniculi linei ad vulnera abliganda.
Linteaconcerpta.
Auriscalpium.
Forcipes ad dentes euellendos.
Ferramentum quo eroſi dentes eraduntur. (*tusum.*
Vncinus, or (as *Celsus* calleth it) *Hamulum re-*

Doct. What medicines must the Chyrurgion haue alwaies in a readinesse?

Stud.

Stud. A good Chyrurgion must haue in a readinesse Powders, Vnguents, and Emplasters, they serue to stop bleeding, or to conglutinate wounds, or to cleanse foule and rotten vlcers, to mollifie hardnesse, to produce a cicatrix, and skinne, to remoue away excrescent and corrupt flesh, to cease paine, to strengthen Fractures and Luxations.

As for powders which hee ought to haue in a readinesse, they are of three sorts: one to stay bleeding, as that which is framed of

Bolus Armeniæ.
Rosis.
Mastiches, and
Pollin.

The second is for fractures of the skull, and hurts of other bones, and is called *Puluis cephalicus*, and is framed *ex*

Radicibus ireos,
Aristo lochiæ.
Ex myrrha.
Aloe, and such like.

The third powder is to remoue away excrescent, and corrupt flesh: as

Alumen vstum.
Pul. precipit. Mercurij, and such like.

Doct. Well, goe forward, and tell mee, what bee the Vnguents proper to a Chyrurgion?

Stud. The Vnguents that a Chyrurgion ought alwaies to haue about him, are these:

Vnguentum Basilicon, which doth humect, digest, and cease paine.

Vnguentum Aureum, called of some *Regis*, which doth incarnate and conglutinate wounds together.

Vnguentum Dialthea simplex, which doth calefie, soften, humect, and also cease paine.

Vnguentum album Rhasis, which doth refrigerate, coole, and dry.

Vnguentum apostolorum, which doth deterge, mollifie, dry, and remoue away corrupt and superfluous flesh: and of that faculty almost is *Mundificatiuum ex apio*, and *Ægyptiacum*.

Doct. Proceed, and tell mee what the Emplasters are that are fit and necessary to a good Chyrurgion.

Stud. The Emplasters are these following: *Diachilon compositum*, which doth ripen Apostumes, and doth mollifie and resolue hardnesse, and doth digest, and also absterge.

Diacalciteos, commonly called *Diapalma*, which doth conglutinate vlcers, produceth cicatriz, and skinne, and according to the opinion of *Galen*, is very fit in the curing of Phlegmon.

Emplastrum de betonica, which is also called *De Ianua*, it doth vnite and ioyne together the fractures of the skull, it couereth the bones with flesh, it draweth out spleets, and splinters of bones, it doth absterge, digest, and drie, with such like.

Doct. You must tell mee now what Chyrurgery is; and afterwards your methode that you haue for the curing of wounds and vlcers: goe to, tell me, what is Chyrurgery?

Chyrurgery is an Arte which doth remoue and cure diseases, by the artificiall worke of the hand, which is called *Chirurgicall* operation. Or Chyrurgery is a right orderly taking away of affects besides nature, with the worke of the hand.

Doct. How many parts hath Chyrurgerie?

Stud. Chyrurgerie hath two parts: that is, *Synthisis* and *Analysis*, Composition and Resolution: by Composition things that were separated and disioyned against nature, are conioyned againe and fited in their naturall places, as hapneth in wounds, fractures, dislocations, and ruptures. By Resolution, things that were conioyned and vnited together, are separated and diuided; either for preseruing of health, or for the recouery of the same: and the species

thereof

thereof are, fection, punction, diuulsion, and vstion.

There are some that adde a third part of Chyrurgerie, which they call *Exæresis*; and that is exercised in extracting and drawing forth of such things as are sent into the body, as bullets, darts, arrowes, and other war-like engines; of which parts it shall not bee needfull to make repetition at this time.

Doct. Tell me, what is a wound?

Stud. An wound is a solution of the continuity, newly made, fresh, and bleeding; and of wounds there are two sorts, simple and compound.

Doct. What is a simple wound?

Stud. A simple wound is that which is made with some kind of weapon, only in the flesh, without either cutting of bones, sinews, muscles, or veines.

Doct. What is a compound wound?

Stud. A compound wound is a solution of the continuity, diuiding or cutting the bones, sinewes, muscles, veines, or Artiers: in which hapneth for the most part dolour, inflammation, tumour, and oftentimes Apostumation.

Doct. Let mee know your methode for the curing of a greene wound.

Stud. Euery good Chyrurgion doth set downe a fiuefold scope or intention for the curing of wounds.

The first is, to draw out that which is sent into the body, whether bullet, wood, bone, or stone, arrows, darts, and such like.

The second is a coniunction, and vniting of parts diuided.

The third is a retaining of those parts vnited in their proper seate.

The fourth is a conseruation of the parts of the substance:

The fifth is a prohibition and mitigation of accidents.

Doct. How is the first intention performed?

Stud.

Stud. The first intention is performed, either with instrumens of yron, or attractiue medicines, whereby things that are infixed are drawne out. A wise Chyrurgion will consider the forme and difference of things infixed, and the naturall parts affected: of which matters *Taugatius* hath written at large, and many others. The medicines attractiue are:

Radix Aristolochiæ.
Arundinis.
Anagallis.
Thapsia.
Ammoniacum.
Saga penum.
Dictamnum:
Ranæ combustæ.

Or *Emplastrum Auicennæ*, so much commended by *Guydo*.

Doct. How is the second and third intention performed?

Stud. The second and third intention is performed by binding and ligature, if the wound bee simple and small, and in a place where it may fitly bee performed, yea although it be large, so it may be easily bound, as in the muscles of the arme, and such like; but if it happen that ligature will not serue, then must bee added the helpe of the needle, being carefull to handle the party gently, and to place it in his due seate.

Doct. How is the fourth intention performed?

Stud. The fourth intention is accomplished by appointing of a fit & conuenient dyet, according to the strength of the Patient and greatnesse of the affect, and disposition of the whole body: for a thinne diet and cold, doth verie much auaile in resisting of *Symptons*, wee also adde bloudletting and purging of humors to auoide accidents; also the part is to bee contained in this due place, and a *cataplasme* framed with the whites of egges, and other cooling things are to bee applyed, and sometimes to bee fomented with astringent wine.

Doct.

Doct. How do you finish the fift intention?

Stud. The fift intention is in the correcting of accidents, which is fluxe of bloud, dolor, tumor, paralysis, conuulsion, feuer, syncope, delirium, and itching.

But this is to bee obserued in the fluxe of bloud: whether it hath flowne sufficiently or no; if otherwise the flux is to be suffered; for after a sufficient flux, the wound doth remaine dry, and is so much the neerer cured and the lesse symptoms follow, as phlegmon and such like: and if the wound bleed not sufficient, wee must open a veine for reuulsion, according to the greatnesse of the affect, and the nature of the wound: especially when through paine or other cause we feare inflammation or a Feuer.

Doct. So, you haue now satisfied mee reasonably in wounds, let me know your methode in vlcers: tell me first what is an vlcer?

Stud. An vlcer is a solution of continuity, yeelding forth *sanies*, *pus*, and matter.

Doct. How many sorts of vlcers be there?

Stud. As there are of wounds two sorts, so there are two sorts of vlcers, simple and compound,

Doct. What is your methode and intention of curing of an vlcer?

Stud. The common indication and intention of curing of all vlcers, if onely we consider the vlcer, is exiccation; but if we consider the cause from which it is ingendred or nourished, and symptoms, without remouing of which it cannot be cured, it hath foure intentions of curing.

The first, that we prescribe a fit diet.

The second that we intercept the matter antecedent.

The third, that we remoue the symptoms, and dispositions ioyned with the vlcer.

The fourth, that we dry the thinne excrement of the vlcer, and deterge the grosse.

Doct. How will you performe your first intention, as concerning a fit and conueinient diet.

Stud. I prescribe a diet to the patient either small or

large, according to the strength of the patient or aboundance, or fewnesse of humors; in the quality of meates I haue consideration, of the temperament and humours redounding as well in the whole body, as the part affected: as if the humors be sharpe and hot those wee alter vnto coldnesse, and withall correcting the Acrimony and sharpnesse,

Doct. How do you finish the second?

Stud. The second scope I also performe when I consider as well the quality as the quantity of humors offending, as well in the whole body as flowing to the part affected, and so by euacuation and auersion, partly by purging medicines, partly by bloud-letting, if strength, age, and other things doe agree: partly by binding, frictions and fomenting of the parts opposite to the vlcer: partly by repellent medicines to intercept the fluxe, such as is *vnguentum ex holo* and such like.

Doct How is the third scope finished?

Stud. Wee performe the third intention when wee remoue, as I said, the manifold and diuers Symptoms, and euill dispositions ioyned with the Vlcer: for sometimes there is ioyned distemperature, sometimes paine, sometimes tumor, and swelling, and sometimes contusion, often times *Hypersarcosim*, but more often thickenesse of lippes, corruption of bone, virulent excrement, foule matter, hollownesse, crooked windings, as in Fistulaes with cacoethia aud euill disposition, all which haue diuers cure.

Doct. What is the difference betweene a Fistula, and an Vlcer?

Stud. A Fistula is a deep & hallow Vlcer, indurated with a strict and narrow orifice, which doth require handy operation, as the common Vlcer doth; and the difference is, that the one hath callositie and induration, and the other hath not.

Doct. Well, now wee must proceed to tumors against nature: tell me, how many tumors be there against nature?

Stud. The Physitions prescribe foure kinds of tumors against

against nature: according to the foure humors; the first is called Phelgmon, and is an inflammation, or collection of bloud, and as *Galen* saith, is a simple tumor, and an affect of the fleshie parts, proceeding of a flux, which sweateth through the coates of the veines, like vnto a dew, wherein they gather together to themselues a tumor with heate, redneſſe, stretching, pulsatiue or beating paine, which is propper to great inflammations.

The second is called *Eryſipilas*, and is properly an affect of the skinne, and doth proceed of pure choler, and is much hotter then Phlegmon, and therefore is of some Physitions called *ignis ſa.* or *ignis S. Anthonij*, and of some *ignis Perſicus*, which names may also be applied vnto or to his kinds.

The third is called *Oedema*, and is soft, looſe, and without paine, springing of thinne flegme or vapourous spirits.

The fourth is called *Scirrhoi*, or *Scirrhus*, that is induration or hardneſſe, and is a tumor proceeding of a groſſe melancholicke humour, and is hard without paine, and sometimes without senſe, and sometimes also it hapneth of groſſe and tough flegme, and of the dregs of bloud, sometimes also phlegmon is turned into *ſcirrhus* by the application of medicines that do vehemently coole and bind.

Doct. Let mee know your methode for the curing of phlegmon.

Stud. The curing of Phlegmon, doth consiſt in a foure-fold intention: the first doth consiſt in preſcribing of fit and conuenient diet, which is in the due vſe of thoſe sixe things that be called not naturall: In this affect therefore we must be verie carefull to make choice of a pure, cleere, and cold aire: also the diet must be cold, and a little drying, and that which doth procure and ingender little bloud, and therefore wine, egges, and nouriſhing brothes must be refrained, or very little vſed: the part affected must in no caſe be exerciſed: and there must also a meane bee kept and obſerued in sleepe and watchings; sleeping in the day time,

and after-meales must be auoided, the belly must be kept looſe, either by clyſter, or otherwiſe, the patient must auoid anger, clamour, and contention, and withall, hee must flie from venery, and the vſe of women, as from a moſt deadly enemy.

The ſecond ſcope is in the reſtraining of the Flux of humours, which is performed as well by reuulſion, as by medicines repelling: therefore preſently in the beginning we muſt open a veine in the oppoſite part, ſo that the Patient haue a plethoricke and a full body; but where there is no fulneſſe of body, and yet notwithſtanding we feare the vehemency of the diſeaſe, through the greatneſſe of the cauſe, and that withall the diſeaſe is in his augmentation, then for reuulſion we cut a veine not far from the affect: ſo likewiſe when the diſeaſe draweth to his eſtate, if it be poſſible wee open a veine neere the effect. But this we muſt be carefull of, that before phlebotomy the belly muſt be emptied, and the common excrements auoided, either by cliſter, or ſome bole of Caſſia, or otherwiſe.

The third ſcope is in curing of the matter, now coniunct and impacted together, for that muſt be auoided. Therefore in the increaſe we haue a twofold ſcope of curing: the one in repelling of the matter flowing; the other in diſcuſſing of the matter inhering vnto the part.

Doct. What medicines haue you that doe diſcuſſe and reſolue?

Stud. Medicines that do diſcuſſe which be of the gentler ſort are:

Aqua calida.
Vinum gilvum ac tenue,
Panis furfuraceus fermentatus,
Adeps ſuillus, gallinaceus, anſerinus,
Anatinus, Oleum vetus, Oleum chamœmeli,
Oleum anethinum, Lana ſordida butyrum,
Furfur, hordeum, Lentes, althea,
Malua agreſtis, chamœmeli, meliloti,

Parietaria,

Parietaria, Absynthium, brassica,
Caricæ pingues.

The stronger medicines are:

Farinæ seminis lini: fœnegræca, lupinorum,
Oribi; adipes, taurinus, vrsinus, Leoninus;
Olea larinum, Rutaceum, irinum, sicynium,
Nucum, Radices Ireos, aristolochiæ rotund.
Bryoniæ gentianæ, follia Hyssopi, Mariorane,
Saluiæ, Rutæ, obrotan. pulegij, calameti,
Origan, semanisi, fœniculi, anethi.
Dauci, carui flores, sambuci & Anthos,
Gummi, Ammoniacum, Bdellium, galbanum.
Opoponax.

But in all hot tumours we are to vse the gentler remedies before said, and in the increase we mix discussiue medicines with those that be astringent.

As for example: in a cataplasme we say:

R.	*Farinæ seminis lini.*	℥.j.ß.
	Far hordij.	℥.ij.
	Flor. cham.	P.j.
	Ros. rub.	℥.iij.
	Fol. & bacchar. myrti. an.	℥.j.ß.

Let all be boyled in vinegar to the consumption thereof; then adding thereunto *Pinguedinis gal.* ℥. iiij. *olei rosacei & chamæm. an.* ℥. ij. *fiat cataplasma.*

Doct. But what if the tumor will not giue place to resoluing medicines? what must we do then?

Stud. Then we apply medicines to bring the tumor to suppuration, such as are framed with *aqua calens. oleum dulce, butyrum recens; adipes, Medulla œsypus, pix sicca, resina, colophonia, thus, cera, Ladanum, styrax pinquis, galbanum, crocus, farina triticea, viscum, caricæ pingues, cepe coctum, radix lily, althea, malua, branca vrsina, tetrapharmacon ex farina triticea, oleo & aqua mediocriter coctis cum tantillo croci.* In like manner, *Vnguentum de althea, de meliloto, basilicum, Diachilon simplex,* and such like. Or for examples sake; R. *Rad. lil. bryoniæ*

lapathi acuti, sub cineribus coctarum singul. quartum ß. Bruise them, and mixe them with the muscelage of *Althea, malua,* and Figs *an.* ℥.j.

Farinæ triticeæ, hordij, & lini, an.	℥.ß.
Auxungiæ guillæ salis exp rtis.	Q.S.

Fiat cataplasma, and apply it.

Doct. When it is come to the suppuration and matter, what must we do afterwards?

Stud. When the abscessus or tumor is come to suppuration, wee then apply in the most conuenient place some actuall cauterize; or else wee open it with a pen-knife: or this medicine following, although it were safer to vse the cauterize.

R. *Fermenti acris.*	℥.ß.
Cepæ sub prunis coctæ.	℥.ij.
Stercoris columbini	
Seminis canabis an.	℥.j.
Limaces num.	iij.
Saponis nigri.	
Auxung. guillæ singul.	Q.S.

Make a plaster of the bredth of a groat, which must be applyed vpon the most eminent and softest place of the Apostume.

Doct. After the Apostume is opened, how must wee proceed?

Stud. The Apostume being opened, wee vse a digestiue framed *ex oleo ros. & vitellis ouorum*, for three whole daies together; for that asswageth paine, and helpeth to bring the residue to matter: afterwards we vse medicines detergent and mundificatiue.

Doct Goe now to the fourth intention, which is to remoue accidence; and especially dolor and paine: how shall we do when the patient crieth out for exceeding paine?

Stud. Then wee apply whites of egs, or the whites and yelks together, being well wrought together with oile of Roses: or else we take

Mica

Miee panis triticei aqua calenti macerati & exprſſi lb.j. *vitellos ouorum num.*ij. *Lactis caprini.*ʒ.iij. *miſce & fiat cataplaſ.*

Doct. But what if the naturall heat be extinct by application of narcoticke and ſtupefactiue medicines? what muſt we do in that caſe?

Stud. Then we preſently ſcarifie the place, and waſh it with ſalt water; afterwards applying a cataplaſme framed *cum farine fabarum*, and *orobi an.*ʒ.ij. boiled in Oximel.

Doct. Go now to the cure of *Eryſipelas*: what is your methode for the ſame?

Stud. Eryſipelas hath a fourefold ſcope of curing: the firſt is in a cold order of diet, moiſt, and ingroſſing all fat things, ſweete, ſharpe, and hot, muſt be auoided, becauſe they eaſily turne into choler. Tht Patient may vſe in his broths, lettice, purſlane, ſorrell, and ſuch like, ptiſans, made with the decoction of barly, and *cremor hordij* is good to bee taken in drinke for cooling: rice may alſo bee giuen to ingroſſe the bloud: exerciſe, watchings, anger, noiſe, and ſuch like affects, and venery muſt bee auoided.

The ſecond ſcope is in turning backe of the matter; wherein we muſt diligently conſider where the affect bee ſmall or great: for if it bee ſmall, and the body not verie cholerick, it ſhal not be amiſſe to open a veine; but if choler do much abound, it ſhall be far better to auoid it *per feceſſum*, then by cutting a veine.

And before the veine be opened, we muſt miniſter ſome Lenitiue Clyſter; wherein I would wiſh the Chyrurgion to vſe the adiuce of ſome learned Phyſition.

The third ſcope is the explication of topicall medicines: as in the beginning, *ſemperuiuum, portulaca, lactuca, lenticul. paluſtris, vmbilicus veneris, pſyllium, glaucium, craſſula ſolanum:* of which we take the iuices or diſtilled waters, & therwith mix *opiũ*, or the iuice of poppy, or henbane or of *mandragora*, & ſuch like; eſpecially in the ſũmer time. In like manner *Galen* and *Auicen* doth approue cold water and *Oxycratum*. Wee may alſo adde to thoſe iuices the flower of barly or lentils,

lintils, with some viniger, and so make a cataplasme: or else *Vnguentum Rosaceum* ℥.j. *aquæ ros. abluto*: adding thereunto whites of egges, for it hindereth inflammation, and is one of the best remedies.

We may also mixe with the same vnguent, *muccag semi-nis psylly & cydon, cum succo in frigidante.*

Doct. What if Erysipilas should possesse the face? what may we then do?

Stud. Then we are wont to take, *aquarum vell succorum plantaginis, rosarum, lactucæ, semperuiui*, of euery one equall parts: mixing therewith a little wine vineger, and so wetting linnen clothes therein, apply them to the part affected; oftentimes moistning them that they dry not with the heat of the disease.

Doct. But what if it will not giue place to so easie medicines?

Stud. Then we adde to one pound of the waters or iuices aforesaid, v. grains of opium, & of saffron vj. graines; or in the place of the opium, of the iuice of henbane ℥.j. And if it chance the head to be affected, we vse *Vnguent. rosarum*, with oile of violets, and such like.

Doct. What if the paine bee so vehement that the Patient cannot indure the same?

Stud. Then we take roots or leaues of henbane, being rosted vnder the hot embers, and mixed with *Vnguent populion*, or else we take *sem. hyosciam* ℥.j. *sem. pap. albi* ℥.ij. *cum vnguent. popul.* with the iuice of henbane, or *semperuiuum*, or of *Virga Pastoris*.

Doct. Sometimes it happeneth, that by applying of ouercooling medicines the life of the part is extincted: what course must we take then?

Stud. Then we scarifie the place, and wash it with Sea-water or Salt-water.

Doct. But what if Erysipalas do excoriate and turne into vlcers?

Stud. Then we make a linament after this forme: wee take

take *Summitatum Rubi, & solani an.* ℥.j. *olei ros.* ℥.iij. *ceruse & Lithargirij an.* ℥.ß. *aceti paurum*, and so make a linament. Or else we take *Trochis. albar. Rasis* ℥.j.ß. *plumbi vsti, & loti* ℥. j. *caph.* (if there bee any great inflammation) ℈. ß. *olei rosarum* ℥.iij. *ceræ quantum sufficit*; and so make a linament.

The last scope is in the correction of symptoms, which arise through the disease, as a feuer, and through a feuer, head-ach, watchfulnesse, and thirst; of all which the remedy is to be sought for from the learned Physition.

Of Oedema.

Doct. The next of tumors against nature is *Oedema:* let me know your methode in curing of the same.

Stud. The methode in curing of *Oedema* is performed first by a dry order of diet, a little hot, and something attenuating; the aire must be cleere and dry, either naturally or so framed by Art: no sleeping by day is allowed, and at night as little as may be: exercise before meate is commendable, and frications of the part opposite to the part affected; the belly must be kept laxe and soluble.

As concerning topicall meanes, in the beginning wee may vse those things that do meanely repell: for the humor for the most part being grosse and thicke by medicines that do ouermuch repell, is made more thicker and grosser, and therefore we must mix with repercussiue medicines, discussiues: as when we apply to strong bodies, *Oxicratum* of two parts of vineger, and one of water, moistning therein some new spunge, or prepared with *Aphronitro*; or some kind of salt; for the vineger doth not onely repell by his coldnesse, but it doth incide and attenuate, and by his drinesse doth resolue: the spunge also either new, or prepared doth resoule.

There bee some that doe apply bolarmonicke, nuts of Cipres, and Alume; which the ought not to do without

discussiues, for the cause aforesaid. The same consideration is to be had of any other Astringents, in the cold gout, which is an *Oedematous* tumor. Wormewood boiled and beaten into the forme of a cataplasme, is found to do very much good.

The tumor is resolued *cum oleo Irino, succo Ebuli, Diachilon* by it selfe or mixed: *Emp. de meliloto* malaxed with the oile of camomell. You may adde if you will *Storax* or *Ammoniacum* dissolued in vineger.

If need require we may make a *fotus ex hyssopo, thymo pulegio, origano, calamentha, Ebulo, seminibus anisi, faniculi, fænugræci: fiat decoctio pro fotu.* The residence may bee bruised, & there may be added vnto it *oleum chamomelinum, Irinum, Anethinum*, or *ex farina fabarum, orobi, loly:* with the iuice of *Ebulus, sambucus, brassica*, or with the foresaid oiles, and so make a cataplasme.

Stercus vaccæ with butter or oyle fried together, adding a fourth part of sulphure of *stercus caprarum, columbarum*, with vineger and the lees of wine, doth very well.

Doct. What if the tumor will not be discussed, but grow into *abscessus*, what must we do then?

Stud. Then as much as we may, procure it to suppuration, taking *Rad. althea* ℥.iiij. *Rad. lil.* ℥ ij. *caricarum par* v. *florum chamomeli, & meliloti, sing.* P.j *farinæ hord. & fenugræci sing.* ℥.j. *coquantur, terantur, addendo pinguedinis, gal. butyri recent. olei lil. & chamo sing.* ℥.j. make a cataplasme and apply it. When the *abscessus* is opened: we may giue inwardly treacle *cum aquis cardiacis*, by which the heart is strengthned, and doth repell from it selfe the hurtfull humor.

When this tumor is a symptome of an other disease, as of the dropsie, the phtysicke, cacexia, it hath then no propper cure, for it is vnpossible to cure the same, vnlesse the affect from whence it springeth bee first cured.

Doct. Goe now to the last of those tumors against nature, which is called *Scirrhus*, and bee as briefe therein as the

in the former: well, how will you deale against that grosse, hard, and melancholike tumor?

Of the true Scirrhus.

Stud. The first intention for the cure of *Scirrhus*, is referred to a due order of diet, which must be but little, attenuating and somewhat hot and moist. The nourishment must be such as may breed pure and good bloud, such as the Grecians call *Euchima*. The bread must bee of pure wheate, not too stale or hard baked. Wine that is thinne and pure, such as Gascoigne or white wine, may bee allowde. New laid egs, chickins, capons, cockrels, partridge, veale, and lambe may bee eaten: also broth may bee made with spinage, beets, borrage, and bugloss. All goats flesh, beefe, buls flesh, hares flesh, brawne, bacon, and all salt fish must bee auoided. In like manner, coleworts, cabbage, beanes, and peason, and such like pulse; old cheese, salt meates, and sharpe with pepper, mustard, garlicke, and onions must bee refused: so the Patient must auoide anger, griefe, vehement cares: with immoderate exercise, and watchings, for those are exceeding driers of the body; the belly must be alwaies kept laxe and soluble.

The second intention is to purge the matter antecedent, to performe which may be prescribed some emollient clyster, or some bolus of cassia, and catholicon: also a veine may be opened, especially if the body bee altogether melancholicke, taking heed that the melancholike humor bee not altogether alienated from the nature of the bloud, for then we must abstaine from bloud-letting, and minister purging medicines.

Doct. What medicines are fit to purge melancholy?

Stud. To purge melancholy, *Thymus, Epithym, Senna orientalis, polypodium, quercinum, lapis lazuli, veratrū nigrum, catholicon, Diasenna, triphera, persica, confectio hamech*, and *hiera Ruffi*, and like, as we haue before declared.

Doct. Well, wee will leaue out the purging medicines, and in the meane time proceed to your topicall medicines: tell mee, what is your first intention or application?

Stud. At the first application, I doe not as some common Chyrurgions doe, to vse repellent medicines, and so make that which is of it selfe cold, and grosse, to bee more cold and grosser, but I apply mollients and resolutiues, and such things as may discusse and incide, by which the part is made strong and comforted: neuertheless, I doe auoide those medicines that doe too much mollifie, least the tumour thereby be turned into a cancrous vlcer. Wee must also beware of immoderate discussiues, least wee discusse the thinne matter, and leaue onely the grosser substance of the humour remaining, and so the tumor become vncurable.

Doct. Tell mee then, with what medicines that tumour is mollfied?

Stud. Mollifying medicines are *Oesypus, lana succida, butyrum, oleum Amigdalarum, oleum chamomeli, anethinum, liliorum, adeps Gallinaceus, anserinus, anatinus, suillus, vrsi, medullæ vituli, cerui,* and the fats of other liuing creatures, *Muccagines, propolis, cera, malua, althea, lilium, branca vrsina, caricæ pingues.*

Doct. Giue me a stronger sort.

Stud. The stronger sort is *Ammoniacum* dissolued in vineger, *bdellium molle & pingue, styrax liquida, galbanum,* and such like: to which may be added *semen apij cumini, radix ireos anethum, ruta, flos genistæ, &c.*

Doct. Giue mee a composition or two, fit for that purpose.

Stud. I will giue you a plaister.

℞. *Caricas pingues* 12. *coquatur, & terantur, ammoniaci, bdellij galbani, in aceto dissolut. sing.* ℥.ij. *styracis liquid* ℥.j. *muccag. althææ sem. lini & fenugr. sing.* ℥.ij. *œsypi & butyri recentis sing.* ℥.j. *olei recini, vel de lilio* ℥.iij. *ceræ* Q.S. make an Emplaster.

Or

Or this ointment following.

℞. *Rad. geniſtæ, hyperici fol. cupreſſi. & ſcrophul. ſiccor. ſing.* ℥. v. *Litharg. auri,* ℥. j. *muccaginis ſem. lini, & fœnugræc. ſing.* ℥. ij. *olei vulp. & de lilio ſing.* ℥. iiij. *ceræ* Q. S. *fiat vnguentum,* adding thereunto a little vineger.

Alſo *vnguentum de althea,* to which may be added of the gummes aforeſaid, is very conuenient.

Doct. You haue ſatisfied me reaſonable well as concerning tumors againſt nature: I will now examine you in ſome particular cures, and then I will leaue off to trouble you any farther. I am now to deale with you about the puncture of a nerue: what are your intentions in the ſame cure?

Of the puncture of a Nerue or Sinew.

Stud. There is a two-fold ſcope in the curing of a puncture of a nerue, the firſt that we preuent Plegmon, or inflãmation: for which purpoſe I preſcribe to the ſicke a thin diet, cold, and dry; yet notwithſtanding the aire muſt be hot and moiſt, for a cold aire is very hurtfull to the ſinewes, and an ouer hot aire may cauſe Phlegmon. I cauſe him alſo to lie in a ſoft bed, placing the part ſoftly and fitly, that the body may be quiet: alſo if need be, I open a veine, I cauſe him to go freely to the ſtoole, either by giuing a clyſter, or ſome other laxatiue medicine, fit for the nature of the humors reſting in the body:

Then I proceed to topicall medicines, in which I do obſerue the largeneſſe of the orifice, which if I perceiue to be but little and ſmall, I delate and inlarge, to the intent the matter may more freely auoid out: if any thing remaine therein, that I draw forth; then I remoue accidents and eſpeciall dolor and paine, which I performe with fomentations of wine and water, wherein is boyled ſome flowers of camomell: alſo I apply vnto the wound and round about, *oleum terebinth.* or *oleum hypericon,* as hot as the patient may indure: all which do remoue the paine, & auoid the matter.

In the beginning also it is very good to apply *Emplastrum Auicennæ*, framed *ex farina hordij fœnugræci, orobi*, of either equall parts boiled together with syrupe of vineger and *lixiuium*, or instead thereof new wine. In like manner *oleum Rutaceum partes 5. terebinth. partem vnam & dimidiam.* Or this medicine following: R. *Musci quercini* M.ij. *furfuris* M.j. *Olibani* ℥.j. Let them bee boiled in a little wine with halfe so much vineger, to the forme of a pultisse and so applyed to the place.

Doct. Oftentimes there followeth great dolor and paine, what must be done then?

Stud. Then wee apply fitly *oleum de vitellis Ouorum*, or *oleum terebinthinæ*, mixt with oile of Roses, or with *oleum Lumbricorum terrest.* Or else a cataplasme framed of crumbs of bread, and milke with oile of Roses, Camomell, yelks of egges and a little saffron.

Doct. But sometimes all these meanes will not serue to cease the exceeding paine: what shift will you vse then?

Stud. Then if there be no remedie, wee flie to stupefactiues, as a pultisse framed with the crumbs of bread and *papauere alb.* yea and if need be *cum opio.* Or,

R. *Farinæ tritici* ℥.ij. *succi foliorum hyos.* ℥.iij. *fiat puls quæ calens applicitur.*

Doct. What if convulsion should follow? what must be done then?

Stud. If the patient be in danger of convulsion, or that there be convulsion then presently wee foment or annoint the head, the necke, the spine of the backe, the shoulders, & arme-holes if the wound be in the hand; or if the wound be in the foote, we annoint the flanks, priuities, & the knees with hot oyle of lillies; or *cum oleo Laurino, vel costino, vel spicato, vel oleo expulegio*, or with common oile wherein is decocted some *Castoreum*, or *Euphorbium.*

Doct. But what if there be inflammation? how shall we remoue that?

Stud. In that case *Guydo* teacheth vs to make an Emplaster

plaster *ex farina orobi. fabarum, & hordij cum Lyxiuio & syrupo acetoso, coctis,* or with wine and a little vineger: or to make a cataplasme *ex lumbricorum* ℥.ij. *porrorum tritorum* ℥.j. *& olei sufficienti quantitate.* Which must be applyed hot.

Doct. After the generation of matter, what must bee then done?

Stud. Then to cleanse the wound we vse this vnguent following:

℞. *Farinæ hordij & fabarum an.* ℥. ß. *farinæ lupinorum & orobi an.* ℥ j. *pul. lumbricorum* ℥.j. *vini decoctionis caudæ equinæ & prasij ac matricariæ* Q.S. Let all boile together, and then adde of *mel rosarum* ℥.ij. *sarcocol. sagap. in pr. dict. vino dissol. sing.* ℥.j. and so mak an ointment.

Sometimes it happeneth that through these punctures of the nerues there proceedeth exceeding putrifaction; so that we are driuen to apply caustick medicines; as *vnguentum Ægyptiacum, ferrum candens,* and such like.

Of wounds in the head.

Doct. I will now proceed to wounds of the head: tell me your methode to cure those wounds.

Stud. For the curing of wounds in the head, we prescribe to the patient a thinne diet, vntill such time that wee bee safe from inflammation and other accidents; and if necessity be, wee open the Cephalica veine, if strength may suffer it; so that a gentle clyster bee first iniected. Wee are alwaies carefull to keepe the belly loose: we also forbid the patient such meates as doe cause fumes and vapours; and while wee are curing the wound wee cause the aire to bee warme; neither doe wee suffer the Patient to lie vpon that side of the head that is wounded, vntill such time as there flow sufficient matter digested.

Then we admit him to lie on that side; for by that meanes shall the matter auoide more easily.

Doct. What if the skull be fractur'd? how shall we perceiue that?

Stud.

Stud. To trie that, if the wound be not large enough, we open it with a raser or fit knife for that purpose, in the forme of the letter X. and being discouered, wee apply stuphs moistned in vineger to stay bleeding; then we search diligently where the rift or sciſſure be there or no; which being doubted of, we frame a linament with the white of an egge, and mastich, which wee do apply; and at the next dressing wee obserue diligently whether the linament bee drier in one place then in another; which if wee finde so to bee, then we iudge vndoubtedly that there is some rift, or sciſſure in the skull. In like manner in a contusion without a wound, the head being first shaued, wee apply the same medicine: which if wee perceiue to bee drier in one place then in another, wee may then suppose that there is some fracture. Or, R. *Cere, thuris, Ladani, an.* ℥.ij. *terebinth. farinæ fabarum, aceti sing.* ℥.j. and so make a cataplasme, which must be applied to the part that is shaued, and there will appeare the same signes as before.

Doct. What must be done when the skull is fractur'd?

Stud. Then if the fracture be large enough that the matter may auoide, we haue no neede to apply the trepan, or other instrument to make it larger. But if it bee so small that the matter cannot flow out fitly, then wee must make passage by some instrument, and so prouide that the rough fragments of the bone may not hurt the *crassa meninx*, wee may make way in the forme of the letter X. or in the forme of a crosse: which being performed, and the skull discouered, wee apply stuphs moistned in the white of an egge, and so let them rest for a day: the next day following wee apply the trepan: declaring first the danger and perill of the patient. Neither doe wee vnaduisedly apply the trepan, in the full of the moone, nor vpon the commissures, and wee open the skull in the most declining'st place, if there bee nothing that may hinder it. If the fracture bee great, wee do not disseuer all, but as the matter may flow out, wee draw forth by degrees the fragments of the bones that are

likely

likely to hurt the *meninx*, and that wee doe with as much speed as possibly may be; neither must we defer that businesse beyond the third or fouth day, least we be intercepted with a feuer and other symptoms.

Doct. When these fragments are remoued, how must we proceed?

Stud. That worke, as I haue said, being performed, we dip a peece of red sarsnat in hony of roses, made hot, and wee apply it betweene the *meninx* and the *cranium*. *Guido* in the beginning doth admixe one part of hony of roses, with three parts of oyle of roses; but that is in great paine: but being free from paine, he vseth hony as aforesaid. *Iohan. de Vigo*, in strong bodies doth mixe in the beginning hony with *aqua vitæ*, for neither oile nor any other humecting thing is conuenient to the head, as *Hip.* doth witnesse. Afterwards wee apply ouer the rest, stuphs moistned in *mello rosarum*, and to the other parts of the wound we apply linaments framed *ex vitello oui & oleo rosaceo* to digest the wound: and if perhaps some spell or fragment of the bone sticke, so that it cannot be drawne out with ease, then wee perfuse oyle of roses, the more easy to draw it out.

Doct. Must not the head be kept exceeding warme during the cure?

Stud. There be many that bind the head with the application of many clothes, which is nothing else but a burthen and load to the head, which doth increase the heat, and hinder transpiration: but it is sufficient to apply so much warmth as may keepe the braine from the iniury of the aire: and the ouerwarme keeping of the head was found fault with by *Hypocrates*.

Doct. This is the first intention of the cure: how must we proceed to finish it?

Stud. After the first two or three daies as aforesaid, wee leaue our digestiues (vnlesse there bee great paine and dolor) and proceede to other medicines, and so apply this vnguent; ℞. *Vnguent. Regis* ℥. iij. *mellis rosacei* ℥. j. *terebinthinæ*

terebinthinæ lotæ ℥.ß. *Pulueris myrrhæ, corticis thuris, sacocollæ, ireos sing.* ʒ.℥. *olei hiperici aliquantum, fiat vnguent.* With which wee must dresse the wound: alwaies prouided, that we apply a peece of red sarsnat betweene the *Crassa meninx* and the *Cranium*: but when the *meninx* shall bee couered, wee may vse the powder of myrrh, Aloes, thus, mastich, and sarcocol mixt together; as for example: R. *Rad. aristoloch iridis floren, corticis thuris, sarcocol, sangu. Draconis sing.* ʒ.j. *Nucis cupressi. myrti sing.* ʒ.ß. *centaurij minoris* ϑ.j. *coralij.* ϑ.ij. *farinæ orobi* ʒ.j. *fiat puluis tenuissimus:* which must bee applyed with the linaments and *Emplast. de betonica*, laid ouer, or else *Emplastrum de caprifol.* of which I will speake afterwards.

Doct. But what if the *crassa meninx* tumifie and swell, and arise through the passage made by the trepan? what remedy haue we for that?

Stud. Then we apply *oleum de vitellis ouorum*, and a peece of linnen or a spunge dipt in a decoction of roses, camomell, and melilot: but if there be an excrescence of flesh, then we apply vpon the same *Alumen vstum*, or *puluis mercurij præcip.* or *hermodact.* or else *vnguentum apostolorum*; but the best medicine to cleanse the wounds of the head, is *mell rosarum* mixt with *aqua vitæ*, terebinthin or the oile thereof, with the powder of *sarcocol.* and *gran. tinctorum*, as much as shall be thought meete; but that which is more gentle is framed of *mel ros.* ʒ. ij. *farinæ hordei* ʒ.j *. sarcocol.* ʒ.ij. *vitello oui, & oleo rosato.* But when there is but a small contusion without a wound and the skull not fractured, the head is first to be shauen, and then fomented with oile of roses warmed, vpon which shall be sprinkled the powder of mirtles, and so remaine for that day, and the next day shall be applyed this cataplasme following:

R. *pulueris myrti* ʒ.j. *nucum cupressi. sumach Balaust. ros. sing.* ʒ.ij. *olei ros. vel. camon, quantum sufficit:* make a cataplasme which is also profitable to a contusion, with a small fracture in the skull, or where the same is suspected. It shall

be

be sufficient to resolue and discusse, if in the end we adde *squinantium, absynthium, lentium, farinam fabar,* for then wee haue an excellent medicine, both to discusse and strengthē: neither in the meane time must be pretermitted *Reuulsions* and *Diriuations,* with the opening of a veine, and applying of cuppings if neede shall require. Sometimes also through a contusion, the skull is rather depressed then fracture, as may be often seene in children by reason of their tenderneſſe.

Doct. How do you proceed then?

Stud. Then we do apply this Emplaster.

℞. *Cerae nouae sordidae & mellis communis an.* ℥.iij. *lapidis magnetis* ℥.ß. *lapidis pumicis* ℥.iij. *absinthij cumini, sulphur. sing.* ℥.ij. *salis* ℥.j. *furfuris* P.j. *vini optimi* ℥.iiij. mixe them and make an Emplaster, which shall bee applyed hot, the head being shauen in that place where the depression is, and so let it rest for fifteene daies. It hath a marueilous vertue in raising vp, and reducing the skul that is depressed: or else this emplaster following:

℞. *Mellis communis* ℔.ß. *fermenti* ℔.j. *furfuris* ℥.ij. *salis* ℥.ß. *cumini, absinthij sing.* ℥.iiij. *fiat Emplastrum,* which must be applied as aforesaid.

Doct. But sometimes it hapneth that the head is growne very weake, by reason of the wound, so that it receiueth many excrements, and sometimes fourty daies after there hapneth inflammations, and other symptoms, yea and death also: what shall be done in that case?

Stud. Then towards the end of the cure (not in the beginning) we administer this decoction following, which maketh the humour thinne, and auoideth it by vrine.

Drink in wounds of the head.

℞. *Rad. Graminis, Rusci, Asparagi, & fenieuli, sing.* ℥.ij. *fol. beton, scorphil. philipend. pilosel. sing.* M.j. *Rad. ireos & aristoloch an.* ℥.j. *chamed.* M.ß. *sem. halicabi, alcacengi nuncupant.* ℥.ß. *sem. milij solis* ℥.ij. *seminis anisi* ℥.j. *quatuor sem. frigid. maiorum sing.* ℥.vj. *florum stachad. & ros. sing.* P.j. *macerentur diem & noctem in libris* iiij. *vini albi & aquae, & coquantur, addendo*

mellis lb.v. then straine it, and let it bee aromatized with cinamon, and let the patient take thereof ℥.iiij. in the morning, and so much at the entrance into bed for the space of nine daies.

And here I cannot but reprehend the errour of some Chyrurgions, which in a small sciſſure or rift in the skull, although it doth not penetrate, will presently apply the trepan, and looke how much of the skull he doth take away; so much the more he brags and glories, as if he had performed some great and excellent matter.

The most part are so blind and ignorant in their operations, that they perceiue not that they protract the cure by the same application; and withall, they bring to the sicke manifold symptoms, by reason of the aire offending the braine, and finally they bring death to the Patient. But as I haue said before, when the wound is large enough, so that the matter may bee freely auoided, there shall bee no other neede of section, but to remoue the sharpe spels, and splinters of bones, and other things which are against nature.

Doct. I will now end my discourse with you in fractures and dislocations: tell me how many intentions be there in the curing of a fracture?

Stud. There be foure scopes or intentions in the curing of a fracture: the first is, that we reduce the parts of the bone fractured into its naturall forme: the second is, that being so reduced, they may so remaine, being laid straight without remouing: the third is, that the broken bone being reunited, may be adglutinated with *Callos*: the fourth is, that wee defend the part from symptoms, and accidents which doe vsually happen.

Doct. When the bones are reduced into their forme, what must we doe first?

Stud. Then we apply a defensiue for certaine daies, of oile of roses, and mirtels, of each alike, with the white of an egge.

Doct.

Doct. What afterwards?

Stud. Then we comfort the member with that *cerot* described by *Vigo*, whose description is as followeth. ℞. *Olei myrtini, olei rosati, omphacini an.* ℔.ß. *succi radicis altheæ* ℔.ij. *Rad. fraxini & foliorum eius, Rad. Zymphiti minoris & fol. mirthi. fol. salicis an.* M.ij. *bulliant omnia aliquantulum contusa in vini nigri, & aquæ æquali mensura ad mediat, cum mirrhæ, thuris, ana.* ℥.ß. *colaturæ adde seui hircini liquefacti* ℔.j.ß. *terebinthin.* ℥.ij. *mastichis* ℥.j *bullliant ad consumptionem decoctionis. Colaturæ, adde litargiri auri & argenti an.* ℥.iij. *boli Armeni, triti terræ sigillat. an.* ℥.ij. *minij* ℥.x. *coquantur lento igne & continuo agitentur spatula, & fiat cerotum cum cera.*

Doct. It is very good; I haue knowne that *cerot* to haue holpen many: but is this all the order that is to bee obserued in fractures?

Stud. I truely, so that first we be carefull in placing and reducing the bones into their right seate: secondly, that we defend the member from defluxion of humors and inflammation: and thirdly, as I haue said: that wee comfort the same part fractured.

Doct. Are there any hearbes that haue an hidden propertie to cure Fractures?

Stud. Sophia, as well crude as decocted doth that, so doth *Radix Symphiti* boyled in wine, and applyed, cause a *callos* and *Aristolochia* and *Serpentaria.*

A definition of all those diseases that *doe chiefly affect the body of man.*

And first of the Head.

De Apoplexia.

APoplexia, wherein the fountaine and originall of all the sinewes are affected, whereby euery part of the body doth suddenly loose both mouing and sense. It is caused of a phlegmatick humor that is cold, grosse, and tough; which doth at one time abundantly fill the ventricles of the braine, which humor ouermuch crudity and drunkennesse doth ingender: sometimes it is caused by a fall or blow, which doth shake and bruise the braine, and so causeth humors to flow thither. Also a very cold aire, which doth thicken and congeale the humidities and excrements of the braine; it may come also of a grosse melancholike humor.

Paralysis, or *Resolutio*, in English the Palsie, it is a disease wherein the one halfe of the body, either the right side, or the left doth loose both sense and mouing, and then it is called generall: also sometime the palsie chanceth in one member onely, as in the hand, the legge, or the tongue, and such like, and then it is particular: but we must note, that whereas in the Palsie sometimes sense onely is lost, and sometimes mouing alone, and sometimes both sense and mouing, it is especially called *Resolution* of the sinewes or Palsie: this disease is caused through aboundance of grosse and

and clammy humors which stop the sinewes, & hinder the animall facultie, that it cannot come from the fountaine to the members. It may also be caused through immoderate cold. It may bee caused also by an inflammation, or some *scirrhus* chancing in the backe bone, or in parts nigh adioyning, or in other sinew parts whereby the sinewes are crushed and pressed, and so stopped that the animall facultie cannot passe: sometimes it is caused through a Feuer, and is chiefly ingendred of melancholy occupying the minde, and changing the temperature of it. It is caused, three kind of waies, for sometimes it is caused of melancholy it selfe, sometimes by the alteration of bloud in the braine, and lastly it may spring through inflammation and euill affect about the stomacke and sides; as for the signes they are many, as fearefulnesse, sadnesse, hatred, strange imaginations, and such like.

Vertigo or *Scotama*, is a disease wherein the Patient doth imagine that his head is turned round about, There is another disease not much vnlike vnto the same, which is called *tenebricosa vertigo*, and then the patient doth thinke, that all that he seeth turneth round, and sodainely his sight doth faile him, supposing that he is incompassed about with mist and darkenesse, and that is it which the Physitians do call *Scotama*. It is caused through the braine it selfe, being either distempered or euill affected, or of the mouth of the stomacke, offending the braine.

Ephialtes, or *incubus*, it is a disease, whereas one thinketh himselfe in the night to bee oppressed with a great waight, and doth beleeue that something doth come vpon him, and lying heauy vpon his stomack, so that the patient doth thinke himselfe strangled: it is called in English the Mare; and is caused of excesse of drinking, and euil diet, by which proceedeth cruditie, and rawnesse of the stomacke, from whence do ascend grosse vapours, and cold, filling the ventricles of the braine, & so do let the faculties of the braine to be dispersed by the sinewes.

Epilepsia,

Epilepsia, called also *morbus comitialis*, *morbus sacer*, *morbus herculeus*, and *morbus lunaticus*: it is a convulsion, drawing & stretching all the whole parts of the body, with hurt of the mind and sense.

There be three differences in this sickenesse or disease, the first is, when it proceedeth from the braine it selfe being affected, and the originall of the euill springing therehence: the second is by consent of the mouth of the stomacke, from whence vapours and fumes do ascend and so affect the braine: thirdly, when some cold venemous vapour doth creepe vp from some remote part by hidden passages.

Achor, or *Furfur*, it is a kind of vlceration of the head like a scurffe, or dandruffe, and is like vnto branne or oatmeale. It springeth through too much humiditie and moistnesse of the braine, and sometimes through melancholy, or some salt humor: it is not much different from *Fauus*, which is also a kind of scaly matter in the head.

Phrenitis, or *Frenisis*, is the Frensie or madnesse: some affirme that it is bred in the pellicles of the braine, called *Pia mater*, either by inflammation, or impostumation: it causeth alienation of the mind, and losse of memory. There is an other kind of Frensie, which doth follow as accidents of some disease, as with a Feuer, the Pluriſie; and such like.

Lethargus, λήθαργος, an other disease which doth take his name from the forgetfulnesse of all things. It hapneth with the alienation of the mind, and a sleepinesse not to be resisted. It is caused of flegme, which cooleth the braine ouermuch, and moisteneth it, and thereby doth prouoke sleepe: it is deriued of *Lethe*, *obliuion*, and of *argos*, *hebetudo*, that is, dull obliuion.

Caros, or *Subeth* is a depriuation of mans sense and motion. It doth differ from *Lethargus*, because that those that bee affected with the *Lethargie* will answere to a question demanded; but those that are affected with this disease, are occupied with a dead sleepe; and if they bee stirred, or pricked

pricked, although they feele, yet they will say nothing, nor once open their eyes. It is causèd of a cold, grosse, and viscous flegmaticke humor, filling the braine.

Melancholia, and *mania*, is an alienation of the minde, troubling reason, and waxing fooliſh, so that the Patient is almost besides himselfe. It doth come without a wound, or an vlcer, either in the braine, or in the marrow of the back, or in any particular sinewes.

Tortura oris, called of *Almanſor*, *contractio*: it is vntruely named the Palsie, for it is more neerer a crampe, for because it doth contract the sinewes of those parts. The chiefe cause of this disease springeth as of that of the Palsie, or else of cold, or some angry passion.

Spaſmus or *conuulſio*, in Englisſh the Crampe, it is a disease in the which the sinewes are drawne and pluckt vp against ones will: there be of it three kinds; the first is called by the Latines *Diſtentio*, and is when the necke doth remaine altogether immoueable, and cannot be turned any way, but must be holden right forth: the second is called in Latine *Tenſio ad anteriora*; in this disease, the head and the necke bee drawne downe to the breast: the third is called *tenſio ad poſteriora*; in this disease the head is drawue downe backewards to the backe and the shoulders.

The causes by *Hyppocrates* are said to bee two, that is, fulnesse and emptinesse of the sinewes in the body, and sometimes it doth come with the biting or stinging of some venemous beast: some are also of opinion, that the immoderate vse of Venerie, and vsed vpon a full stomacke may cause this disease: also debilitie and weakenesse, and the want of bloud may bee an occasion of this disease.

Catarrhus, is a distillation of some rheumaticke matter, vnto the lower parts; as when it doth descend to the nostrels, and cause oppilation, it is called *Coryza*, or when it doth descēd to the parts of the throat, it is called *Branchus*:

or when it doth descend vnto the breast, or to the lungs: then it is called the *catarrh*: frō whence this verse doth arise:

Si fluit ad pectus Rheuma, tunc dico catarrhum:
Ad fauces, branchon, ad nares dico coryzam.

The *catarrh* is also caused either through some outward coldnesse, or heate, sometimes by euaporation of meats, sometimes by the smell and odor of hot and cold things, by the immoderate vse of Venerie, ouermuch sleepe, violent exercise, or too much rest or repletion.

There are many other diseases which do spring from the braine, as *palpitatio membrorum, tremor*, and *stupor*, with such other like, which for breuities sake I do omit.

Chap. II.
Of the Affects of the Eyes.

THe affects of the eyes are *opthalmia*, the *cataract*, *lippitudo*, *leucoma*, *glaucoma*, *Ægilops*, *suffusiones*, and such like.

The *opthalmia* is an inflammation, or an hot impostume in the eye. It is caused of some distillation from the braine, or else of the corruption of bloud, mixt with choler, and sometimes accidentally by a stripe, or blow, the smoake, dust, the Sunne, &c.

The *cataract*, of some called *suffusio*, is a disease in which the Patient doth imagine oftentimes that hee seeth blacke things: it is a corrupt water, congealed like a curd, ingendred of the humors of the eye, distempered betwixt the tunicles, and set before the sight of the eye, and the Crystaline humor.

The causes hereof may bee a fall, stroake, heate, cold, paine, by whose meanes the humor is drawne and gathered together; or the cause may be vapours, and humors ascending to the braine, and from thence descending to the eyes, which in processe of time, and by reason of cold, are changed into water, and in the end is become thicke and congealed.

Lyppitudo

Lippitudo, bleare-eyes, it is when the vnder-lid of the eye is ſubuerted.

Raſis doth affirme that to be *lipitudo* when the white of the eie is turned to redneſſe. It is cauſed of ſome ſalt humor, or of ſuperaboundance of rheume, with corruption of bloud.

Leucoma, a kind of webbe, the which is rooted in, and vpon the eies. The cauſe is a viſcous humor, or ſome rheumaticke matter: ſometimes alſo it may come of a ſtripe or bruiſe.

Glaucoma is vſed in two ſenſes: for it is taken vnproperly for a webbe, *cataracte*, or ſpot which is gathered and dried round about the apple of the eye: but there is a difference betweene the *cataract* and *Glaucoma*: for the *cataract* is a collection and an heape of other humors then of thoſe which are naturall in the eye; flowing vnto it from ſome other place: but *Glaucoma* is properly vſed when the chryſtaline humor is dry and thicke, and the colour of it is greene, whereupon the eyes ſeeme greene or pale.

Ægilops, is a little fiſtula in the corner of the eye neere vnto the noſe, out of the which doth iſſue continually flegme or a thinne humor ariſing of ſome former diſeaſe, as of *anchilops* ſuppurated, but either not ſpeedily opened, or negligently dreſſed; or rather it doth ariſe of ſome ſlimie matter, or moiſt medicines, or the aire which hath altered and rotted the bone in that part.

Chap. III.

Of the diſeaſes of the Eares.

Dolor auriũ, paine in the eares, is cauſed, of ſome, through cold take in iournying by cold winds; ſometimes it is cauſed of cold bathes, and medicinall waters; alſo it doth chance to many through hot diſtemper: ſometimes through inflammation: ſometimes ſharpe and biting humors do cauſe paine in the eares.

Sonitus aurium, sound and noyse of the eares, is for the most part ingendred of a windie vapour, or of grosse and clammy humors: sometimes it is caused through weaknes of the members. When it doth chance in the recouery of a disease, some humor is taken into the sinews of the eares; it may be caused also of outward things, as of cold, heat, or a blow on the head.

Surditas & grauis auditus, deafnesse and slow hearing: it doth beginne sometimes at ones birth, and sometimes afterwards, which doth chance either through cholerick humours flying vpwards, or through crude and grosse humors stopping the hearing.

Parotides, bee inflammations which are wont to issue out in the kernels which be by the eares. It is caused of aboundance of hot bloud, which is either mixed with choler, or flegme, or melancholy: and sometimes it is caused of humors compact in the head; and sometimes of the rest of the body by sickenesse, and especially by feuers.

Chap. IIII.

Of diseases of the Nose.

Ozena, are certaine vlcers in the nose that be deepe and rotten, out of the which doth breath a loathsome and stinking sauour: the cause is sharpe and rotten humours, which flow to the nostrels.

Profluuio sanguinis ex naribus flux of bloud at the nose is caused by a twofold meanes, as internall and externall: externall as some fall, a stripe, vehement exercise and tarrying in the Sunne. Inward causes, as plenty of bloud, or thinnesse of the same, and sometimes great drinking of wine.

Polypus, is a fleshy matter growing in the nostrils, like vnto a kind of caruncle, *Hyppocrates* doth affirme, that it is incurable; sometimes it is caused through grosse humors descending to the nostrels, & sometimes it ariseth through a melancholicke humour.

Coryza,

Coryza. Read before in the description of *Catarrhus.*

Chap. V.

Of the Affects of the Mouth and Teeth.

Foetor oris, stinking of the mouth: it is caused for the most part through putrefaction of the gums or teeth, or through meate sticking still in the teeth: many times it commeth through hot distemper of the skin of the mouth: sometimes also through corrupt and rotten humors sticking in the mouth of the stomacke: sometimes vlceration of the mouth or lungs, is the occasion of the stinking of the breath.

Acola and *apthe*, are certaine vlcers bred in the vppermost part of the mouth, and haue a certaine burning heat: some are whitish, and some are of a red colour, and some are blacke, and they are most perillous: they ingender for the most part in infants and sucking children, when either the nurses milke is naught, or the child cannot well digest it. These vlcers sometimes chance to them that be of perfect age, as well through great flux of vitious and corrupt humors to the mouth, as also through sharpenesse of those things that are eaten and drunke.

Dolor dentium, the tooth-ach: it is caused sometimes through hot or cold distemper: sometimes through flowing of humors out of the head vnto the rootes of the teeth; which through their sharpenesse either doe gnaw about them, or else with their aboundance they ingender greife in the teeth: as if inflammation be about the fleshy parts. Paine in the teeth is sometimes without inflammation of the gummes: sometimes in the sinew wherein the rootes be planted.

Dentes denigrati & molles: teeth that bee blacke and loose, happen through the flowing of vitious humors, and sometimes through a stripe or fall: sometimes through flowing of moisture, which doth loose the sinews and

ligaments, and so doth make the teeth loose; or else gnawing and weakenesse of the gummes in which the teeth are set, are the cause of looseneſſe.

There are many other infirmities of the teeth and mouth; as Apostumes in the tongue, inflammations, chaps, and such like, vlcers of the gummes, with the excrescence of flesh: all which I ouerpasse for breuities sake.

Chap. VI.

Of the affects of those parts that serue to the voice.

Tvmor vuulæ, the swelling of the vuula: sometimes the vuula is inflamed, and sometimes it falleth downe. It is caused either of rheume, or else of some hot humour; but if the vuula doe fall, it doth proceed either through great labour, or heat, or else through great sickeneſſe or weakeneſſe.

Squinantia, or *angina*, it is an Apostume of the throate. *Hyppocrates*, in 3. *prog.* 17. describeth foure kinds, and *Celsus* doth approue but three kinds; and the first kind doth seldome appeare outward, and for the most part is mortall: the three other be not so dangerous. It is caused through some flux of humors that do descend from the head to the throte; and sometimes it doth come through euaporations, ascending from the stomacke to the throate.

Bocium, the Greekes call it *Bronchocelen*, the Latines call it *Herniæ gutturis*: it is a great round tumor in the throate: it setleth it selfe betweene the skinne and the sharpe artery, in which sometimes grosse flesh is included, as it were a kind of humor like vnto hony, fatneſſe, or like to cheese and egges sodden together.

Tonsillarum inflammatio, the inflammation of the Tonsils: some do call them *amygdale*, the Almonds; they are oftentimes inflamed, for their places are hot and moist. Those which are most vexed with this euill, haue aboundance of bloud, and children and infants which do sucke, through the

the drawing of the milke: sometimes it hapneth to men and woemen by the drinking of strong wines, and through greedy deuouring of meate; especially if they be eager or sharpe: sometimes there are vlcerations of the Tonsils, which hapneth vnto those that do abound with vitious humors.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Affects which are incident vnto the Breast and Lungs.

OF the *Catarrhe* we haue already spoken of, in the infirmities of the head.

Tussis, the cough: *Galen* in *lib.* 1. *cap.* 2. *de symptomatum causis*, doth affirme, that a cold distemper of the instrument of breathing, to be the cause of the cough. Also a humor distilling from the head to the *trachœa arteria*, and sharpenesse onely of the vpper skinne of *trachœa arteria* going about within, doth prouoke the cough: sometimes it is caused through cold or flegme, descending vpon the lungs, sometimes it happeneth through heate, dissoluing the superfluous matter of the braine, and so through a catarrhall distillation the cough is excited.

Asthma, is a disease in the which the patient hath difficultie of breathing; and it is caused when as grosse and clammy humors in aboundance be gotten into the gristles and lappats of the lungs; or when as there is some swelling, like vnto a botch: sometimes a pestilent aire, & the fumes of quicksiluer may be the cause.

The disease hath a threefold diuision; for first when it is but small, and that there is no danger of suffocation, it is called *Dyspnœa*: secondly, when it doth grow more vehement, and that the patient cannot breath without wheesing or difficultie, it is called *Asthma*: thirdly, when the patient is not able to lie in his bed for feare of swounding, or suffocating, it is then called *Orthopnœa*.

Pleuritis,

Pleuritis, the Plurisie, or *Lateralis dolor*. It is an inward inflammation or apostumation of the vpper skinne girding the ribs, called *Pleura*. It is caused of aboundance of hot bloud, flowing vnnaturally. To the aforesaid vpper skinne within there is adioined difficulty of breathing, the cough, a continuall feuer, a vehement pricking paine, and a hard and sharpe pulse.

Peripneumonia, is an inflammation of the lungs with a sharpe Feuer and difficultie of breathing. It is caused of strong distillation, falling to the lungs, or else of the *Squinancie*, or the *Asthma*, or of the plurisie, or of other diseases: sometimes a simple inflammation is the cause of this disease.

Sputum sanguinis, spitting of bloud. It is caused many times of an outward cause; as of falling from an high place, or a stroake, or with riding, or leaping, or of some heauie thing fallen vpon the breast: sometimes immoderate cold or heat breaketh the veines, as *Hyppocrates* doth witnesse: sometimes fulnesse and aboundance of naughtie bloud doth gnaw asunder the veines, and breaketh open the heads of them: sometimes also sharpe humours falling from the head to the lungs doth gnaw asunder the veines.

Empiema or *suppuratio*, it is a spitting of a kind of matter; caused when an apostume or botch, being in the vpper skinne of those which do girde the ribbes inwardly, or else in some vpper skinne of the breast; and being broken, it is shed and powred into the empty place of the breast, which is betweene the lungs and the vpper skinne girding in the ribs. It is sometimes caused through some eruption of bloud; and sometimes through fluxe of the head and other parts falling thither, which doth sometimes change into the *squinancy*.

Ptisis or *Tabes*, it is an exulceration of the lungs vntill there followeth spitting of bloudy matter. It is caused through a sharpe and gnawing humour, flowing to the

lungs

lungs from the head. It is caused also through bloud and matter that doth remaine after the bursting out of it in them that haue the Plurisie, *Peripneumonia*, or *Empiema:*

They which haue this disease, their flesh doth wast away, their eyes are hollow, they are vexed with a cough, and the feuer hectick, they haue difficulty of breathing, with a pale and swart countenance.

Chap. VIII.
Of the Affects of the Heart and Breasts.

Palpitatio and *tremor cordis* is the panting and trembling of the heart: it is a corrupt motion of the heart, or a stretching out of it against nature: our moderne Physitions do call it *Cardiaca*. It is caused through some distemperature or an euill humour which doth rest in the celles about the heatt, or else some tumor or swelling against nature: sometimes imbecillitie and weakenesse may cause this disease; and sometimes it ariseth through a grosse melancholicke bloud.

Syncope is a swift failing of the strength, and is caused through much excretion and auoyding of bloud; also through infection about the braine and the heart, causing oppilations: or else through some great sickenesse: it may also come through great heat, and suddaine cold: it may come through vehement sweating and other immoderate euacuations: sometimes also feare, dread, and such like perturbations of the minde may cause swonding.

Chap. IX.
Of the tumor of the Pappes.

The tumor of the Pappes is of manifold causes; for sometimes it proceedeth of cold: sometimes through concretion of milke: sometimes through inflammation:

sometimes through a stroake or blow: sometimes there is an hard tumor which is *cancerus*, and doth arise of some inward cause, as the stopping of Menstrus, vnnaturall melancholy, and such like.

Concretio lactis, curding of milke, is caused through aboundance of milk, which is not drawne forth. It is caused also of some hot distemper, when that through ouermuch heate the thinner part of the milke is digested and dissolued, and the rest groweth together and turneth into curds: it may also bee caused of cold which may cause the milke to congeale and turne to curds.

Inflammatio mammarum, the inflammation of the Paps, is caused of aboundance of hot bloud flowing to the Paps: sometimes through milke curded and turned to suppuration and matter.

Chap. X.

Of the Affects of the Stomacke.

Dolor Stomachi, paine of the stomake, is caused when naughtie, venemous, and gnawing humours bee kept in the stomacke, whereby it doth chance that through intollerable gnawing, they cause swonding, which they call *stomachica*.

Imbecillitas Stomachi, weakenesse of the stomacke, is caused through distemper of the working qualities, without any flowing of humors: sometimes it is caused of an humour being contained in the bosome and large space of the stomacke, which hath power either to heat or coole, or to moisten, or dry, or two of these qualities mixed together.

And sometimes also it is caused of an humor stuffed and drowned in the films and coats of the stomacke.

Vomitus & nausea, vomiting and disposition thereunto, proceedeth of a naughtie and wicked motion of the expulsiue facultie of the stomacke. It is caused of a vitious humour

humour contained in the ſtomacke, being either hot or cold: which humour either ſwimmeth in the concauity and hollowneſſe of the ſtomacke; or it is ſtuffed in the filmes thereof, cleauing like bird-lime: ſometimes great exerciſe after meates, ſailing on the ſeas, and ouer-fat meats may be the occaſion of vomit.

Eructatio, belching, is cauſed either of ventoſitie, or of ſome ſharpe and ſower humor: ſometimes it proceedeth of an hot cauſe, and that is perceiued when either there is bitterneſſe in the mouth, inflammation, thirſt, or that the Patient receiueth remedie by cold cauſes, as *Gal.* affirmeth, *Si à materia calida ſunt cum ſiti, ſi à frigida cum fame.*

Singultus, yelking or hicket, is a motion of the ſtomack, as it were a crampe raiſed of the expulſiue facultie, which goeth about to expulſe euill and hurtfull things. It is cauſed for the moſt part either of fulneſſe or emptineſſe, as is affirmed by *Hyppocrates*: alſo ſometimes it is cauſed through the biting and gnawing of ſharpe humours: alſo coldneſſe of the mouth of the ſtomacke, is oftentimes the cauſe of yelking: ſometimes it is ingendred in feuers, when either the ſtomacke or ſome other bowell is inflamed.

Sitis, thirſt, hath a twofold cauſe: the one is through want of moiſture, and partly through aboundance of heat; alſo through much drinking of old ſtrong wine: ſometimes it is cauſed through ſalt humours, or eating of very ſalt meates: and ſometimes the ſtomacke is dried by the conſent of the whole body, as it hapneth in burning feuers.

Chap. XI.

Of the Affects of the Liuer and Spleene.

Imbecillitas Iecinoris, weakeneſſe of the liuer, is cauſed of diſtemper, either hot or cold, moiſt or dry: a hot diſtemper doth burne vp, as well the humors which were before in the liuer, as alſo thoſe humours which are carried to the liuer, by the veines *meſenterij*.

But cold distemper doth make the flegmaticke and raw humor, which is already contained in the liuer, tough and hard to be moued, and the humours that be carried to the liuer, it doth leaue them halfe digested.

A dry distemper doth make the humours dryer, and thicker.

Moist distemper doth make the humors thin, and more watery, therefore those which haue a weake facultie of the liuer, are called *Hepatici*.

Obstructio Iecinoris, obstruction and stopping of the liuer, is caused of vapours and windinesse, hard to digest: sometimes it is caused of grosse and viscous humors in the ends of the veines, springing from the flat part of the liuer, by which veines nourishment is sent from the stomack and bowels to the liuer.

Inflammatio Iecinoris, Inflammation of the liuer, is caused as other inflammations in other members.

Apostema hepatis, the Apostume of the liuer, hath a twofold cause, as externall, and internall: externall, as a fall, bruise, and such like; internall, as gluttony, indigestion of the stomacke, weakenesse of the vertue digestiue of the liuer, humours gathered together in the liuer: sometimes it hapneth through imperfect clensing of the gall, spleene, raines and intestines.

Scirrhus lienis, hardnesse of the splene, it is caused of a certaine humor, which cleaueth stubbornely to the splene: and sometimes it hapneth after an inflammation of the splene if it be not rightly cured.

Obstructio lienis, stoppings of the splene, is not caused onely of the weakenesse of the attractiue vertue which is in the splene: but also through stopping of the passage, by which the dregs of melancholy are deriued from the liuer vnto the splene; by which meanes, the same vnpure excrements of bloud are dispersed into all the parts of the body, which causeth a kind of corrupt and vnnaturall colour in the whole body, which doth incline to blackenesse; and if

there

there be not speedy remedie, there doth not onely follow the blacke Iaundes, but also that same most dangerous disease called *Scorbutus*, after the which doth follow most dangerous and vncurable vlcers.

Scorbutus, the Scruuie, is caused through obstruction of the Splene, whereby the course and passage of melancholy is hindred, which being mingled with the rest of the bloud, infecteth all the body, with vile wasting corruption; the grosse part whereof falling downe, staineth the legs with spots like vnto the colour of pōgranets; & the thinner part being carried vp, doth defile the gums, with sharp, fretting, & loathsome growing out of the flesh. This very disease is thought to be that which *Plinie* maketh mention of in *lib.* 25. of his naturall hystory, calling it *stomacace*, & *sceletyrbe*.

Ictheritia, the Iaundes, which is a shedding of yellow choler, or melancholy all ouer the body: sometimes there chanceth shedding of choler to the skin, the liuer being safe, as in the crisis of diseases: many times the Iaundes is caused, and doth chance when the bloud is corrupted, without a Feuer, of some external cause, as it falleth out by the biting of some venemous beast. Also it may be caused through inflammation or change of the naturall temperament of the liuer: Sometimes it is caused through weakenesse of the bladder that receiueth the choler, which doth not draw it from the liuer vnto him, & so doth leaue the bloud vnpure: also sometimes it is caused through obstruction and weakenesse of the vessels, whose mouths are deriued from the gall to the liuer, and for that cause cannot draw the cholericke humor. Sometimes it is caused through obstruction of the passages that do goe to the bowels.

Cacexia, euill state of body, which is a watrish disposition of the whole body, whereby it waxeth loose and soft, it is ingendred for the most part, of some long sickenesse, after the *scirrhosyti* and hardnesse of the liuer and splene.

Hydrops, the dropsie: there are three kinds of them, the first is called *Ascites*, the second *Tympaniter*, and the third is

called *Anasarca*, *Yposarca*, *Sarcites*, and *Leucophlegmatia*. *Ascites* is when much watry humor is heaped vp betweene the skinne, or filme called *Peritoneum* and the bowels. *Tympanites* is when much windineſſe and ſuperfluous vapour is gathered in the aforeſaid places of the belly. *Anaſarca* is when the humor is diſpearſed throughout the whole body, that all the fleſh doth appeare altogether moiſt and wet like a ſpunge. The dropſie is cauſed through great coldneſſe of the liuer, or through other parts ouermuch cooled, which doth bring the liuer into the ſame affect. The liuer is affected through the ſplene, being cold, and by the ſtomacke and the bowels; alſo by the lungs, the raines, and the midriffe; alſo it doth chance through vnmeaſurable auoiding of the *hæmorrhods*, or through womans fluxe, or retention of the menſtrus, or through ſome other great affect of the wombe. Some fall into the dropſie after the gout, and the great paine called *Sciatia*: ſometimes alſo the dropſie doth follow the Iaundes; but howſoeuer, it is the coldneſſe of the liuer, and weakeneſſe therof, that doth cauſe the dropſie.

Chap. XII.

Of the Affects of the Belly and Inteſtines.

Diarrhæa, is a great flux of the wombe, without exulceration, and inflammation. It is cauſed through weakeneſſe of the inſtruments that ſerue to digeſtion; alſo through aboundance of nouriſhment, and meate that is moiſt and viſcous, and through corrupting of the ſame meate. Moreouer, gnawing and biting of thoſe things that are contained in the belly: alſo flowing of ſome things from aboue to the belly, and alſo weakeneſſe of the retentiue vertue.

Lienteria, is a certaine lightneſſe, or ſmoothneſſe of the bowels, or a flux of the belly, in which thoſe things that are eaten and drunke are auoided, euen in the ſame order that they

they were receiued, that is, before it bee changed or digeſted: it is cauſed oftentimes through a grieuous flux, *Dyſenteria* preceding, which cauſeth deepe exulceration of the bowels: alſo ſometimes it is cauſed through weakeneſſe of the vertue retentiue, for being weakned, the meates be neither digeſted, nor diſtributed, but they are caſt forth crude, moiſt, and nothing changed: alſo ſometimes it doth ingender after long flux of the wombe: ſometimes alſo when dropſie water is auoided by the belly.

Dyſenteria, is an exulceration of the bowels, the Latines call it *tormina*, becauſe through it the bowels are tormented and fretted very much with paine: there is ioined with this inflammation and excretion of bloudy matter, and dreggy; the belly & the inteſtins are vexed with griefe. *Gordonius* ſaith, that it is a bloudy flux, with excoriation, and exulceration of the inteſtines. It is cauſed through exulceration of the bowels, alſo through drinking of naughty medicines, as *ſcamonie* and ſuch like; alſo through eating of friute, and ſower meates, or through ſharpe and gnawing humours, flowing from the whole body to the belly, or ingendred in the belly it ſelfe.

Tenaſmus, is a continuall deſire to goe to the ſtoole or ſiege, which the Patient cannot auoide, and yet there is no excrements auoided, except it bee a little bloud, or filthy matter, like vnto ſniuel. It is oftentimes cauſed through cold, or ſharpe and chollericke humors, or ſalt flegme, or inpoſtumation, or inflammation ingendred in the *rectum inteſtinum*: ſometimes excrements baked in the blind gut, do cauſe *Tenaſmus*.

Colica paſſio, the cholike or paine which is bred in the gut called *colon*: it is cauſed many waies; for ſometimes it is ingendred through groſſe and flegmaticke humors fallen downe within the thinne skinne of the gut *colon*. Alſo ſometimes through windineſſe, which may not goe out. Sometimes it is engendred through ſharpe and gnawing humours, which doe afflict the foreſaid bowels vehemently

mently. Sometimes the baking of the excrements in the inteſtines, is the cauſe of that griefe.

Iliaca paſſio, the Iliac paſſion is a diſeaſe, cauſing moſt grieuous paine in the ſmall guts: this diſeaſe is called of the Latines *Volunlus* and *Conuolunlus*. It is cauſed through continuall corruption and cruditie of meates, but eſpecially of fat meates, which doe ingender obſtructions in the ſmal guts; alſo vehement cold, reſtraining and withholding of the excrements.

In like manner much drinking of cold things; eſpecially if it be taken when they ſweate.

Chap. XIII.

Of the Affects of the Reines and Bladder.

Mictus ſanguinis, piſſing of bloud, is cauſed through weakeneſſe of the reines which be not able to diuide the vrine. Sometimes bloud is piſſed forth through breaking of a veine in the reines, as ſometimes it doth happen to thoſe that haue liſted ſome great waight, or leapt violently, or fallen from ſome high place. Sometimes it doth chance through gnawing of the veines of ſome ſharpe humours flowing from aboue.

Renum inflammatio, inflammation of the reines. It is cauſed through corrupt humors and medicines that do ingender inflammation of the reines and eſpecially continuall and vehement ridings.

Calculus renum, the ſtone in the reines, is cauſed through continuall cruditie and rawneſſe of the ſtomacke, whereby aboundance of groſſe and earthy humours are heaped tother, and burning of fiery heate about the reines parcheth the humors, and ſo baketh them together, and hardneth them into a ſtone.

Diabetes, is a continuall diſeaſe about the reines, cauſing much thirſt; and alſo whatſoeuer is drunke, euen as it is taken, is piſſed out againe. It is cauſed of weakeneſſe of the retentiue

retentiue facultie of the reines; but there is such strength of the attractiue vertue, that it sucketh from the whole body through immoderate heat. The Patient is troubled with a marueilous thirst, neither is it auoided by receiuing of any kind of liquor.

Vlcers of the reines is caused through rupture and breaking of the veines in the reines: also it is caused through rotting of inflammations, and through sharpe and gnawing humors carried into the reines.

Inflammation of the bladder is a most grieuous and mortall disease: it proceedeth for the most part as other inflammations.

Stillicidium vrinæ, the strangury, is a disease when as the vrine doth distill downe by drops, or by little and little, and causeth a continuall prouoking and desire to pisse. It is caused through the sharpenesse of the vrine, or by the exulceration of the bladder, or by an impostume of the liuer, or reines, which being broken doth send the filth and matter to the bladder, through the sharpenesse whereof it doth cause a continuall desire to pisse.

Dysuria, is a disease wherein the vrine is hardly pissed out. It is caused through weakenesse of the bladder, and through a cold distemper, which hurteth the actions thereof. Sometimes it is caused of grosse and flegmaticke humours, which do stop the necke of the bladder.

Ischuria suppressio vrinæ, it is a disease in which the vrine of the Patient is altogether letted and stopped. It is caused sometimes through weakenesse of the bladder: sometimes it chanceth by the stopping of the nether passages of the bladder, or of grosse humors, or of a stone congealed. Sometimes it is caused through inflammation, or of hardnesse of some swelling against nature, as the caruncle and such like; which doth make the passage straighter, or stoppe it altogether. Also matter sent downe from the liuer and reines, or some other place causeth stopping of the vrine. Sometimes grosse and clammy humours fill vp

and stoppe the passage, so that the vrine is stopped and hindred.

Priapismus, is a disease wherein the yard is extended in length and bigneſſe, without any lust or desire to the act of generation at all. It is causeſd either through immoderate opening of the mouth, of the Arteries, or of some vaporous spirit, ingendred in the hollow and fistulous sinew. Sometimes this disease chanceth to them which haue abstained long from carnall copulation contrary to their custome, especially to those in whom bloud doth predominate, and vsing little or no exercise.

Satyriasis, is a continuall erection of the yard, with a desire and appetite to carnall copulation: the causes are as of that of *Priapismus*.

Gonorrhœa, is a disease in which the seed or sperme is shed against the Patients will: It is causeſd through imbecillity and weakeneſſe of the retentiue vertue in the vessels containing the sperme, or through some other disease that moueth the parts of the vessels of sperme: also sometimes it is causeſd through fluxe of the spermaticke vessels: the seede that commeth forth is watrish and thinne, without appetite of carnall copulation, and for the most part without feeling of it: but sometimes it doth come forth with a certaine pleasure.

There is another kind of *Gonorrhœa* which those men are subject vnto, whose liuer, reines, and seminarie vessels abound with heat: full bodies like to goates, who in their nightly dreames lying vpon their backes, shed forth a spermaticke matter, and effusion of seede: of which the Poet *Lucretius* speaketh:

Irritata tument loca semine, fitq; voluptas
Eiycere id, quo se contendit dira libido.
Incitat, irritans loca turgida semine multo,
Idq; petit corpus, mens unde est saucia amore.

There is yet another kind of *Gonorrhœa*, and that is virulent, and is a symptome that doth follow *lues venerea*.

Ischias

Ischias, called *sciatica*, is a grieuous paine of the huckle-bone, which the Greekes call *Ischion*. It is causèd through a grosse flegmaticke humor, which being congealed abideth in the ioint of the huckle-bones.

For which cause crudities and rawnesse, with vnmeasurable vsing of venereous acts must be auoided. Also violèt exercises & walkings, with stopping of the hæmorrhodes, with other accustomed euacuations, as the purgation of the menstrues, and other ordinary exercises may be an occsion of this disease.

Arthriter, weakenesse and paines in the ioints, is ingendred of continuall crudities and drunkennesse, with the immoderate vse of letchery: also through vehement and swift deambulations, and walkings, through long standing and often riding, also by suppression and stopping of accustomed excretions, and fluxes, and of letting slip of accustomed exercises; sorrowes, cares, watchings, and other perturbations of the minde, doe not onely engender this euill, but doe also breed hurtfull and corrupt humors. Sometimes also the colicke is turned into the goute when it is not well cured.

Thus haue I briefly touched those chiefe diseases that are incident to mans body, I will now proceed to the definition of feuers, and so draw this booke to an end.

Febris, a feuer: the originall or matter of a feuer in generall is from the aboundance of the foure humours, for from the redundance of bloud is ingendred a continuall feuer. From the superfluity of choler is ingendred the feuer tertian. From the domination of flegme is ingendred the feuer called *Ephemera* or quotidian; and from melancholy putrified is ingendred a continuall quartan. And generally the Physitions do define a feuer to be an vnnaturall heat kindled in the heart and liuer, distempering the whole body and hurting the same.

Some define a feuer to be an vnnaturall heat kindled in the heart and liuer, distempering the whole body, and doth

proceed from the spirits and bloud by the artiers and veines into the whole body, and so doth hurt and let the operation of it. This wee must note, that there be three kinds of simple feuers.

The first is called *Ephemera*, and doth continue but one day, for if hee continue any longer, hee is changed into some other kind.

The second is called *Putrida*, and *Humuralis*, or rotten feuer, and is in the foure principall humours, as bloud, choler, flegme, and melancholy.

The third is *Febris hectica*, and is in the solid and radicall members, and of all others is most dangerous; for it doth consume the naturall humidity in man: that is to say the bloud, and so consequently nature. From these three are deriued all other kinds of Feuers.

The

The Antidotarie.

Pils for Alopecia, proceeding of Phlegme.

℞. *Loes Hepatici*
Diagridij an. ℈.ij.
Pulpæ colocynthidos ℈.j.
Maſtiches, bdellij an. ʒ.ß.

With the iuice of wormewood make a maſſe, of which you may giue one dragme, or halfe a drgame in three pils, according to the ſtrength of the Patient, after midnight.

An vnguent for Alopecia.

℞. *Euphorbij.*
Seminis Naſturtij an. ℈.ij.
Sulphuris viui.
Ellebori albi vel nigri, an. ℈.j.
Cera ℈.vj.

Olei laurini Q. S. make an vnguent, with the which anoint the place.

Pils for *Cephallagia*, and paine of the head.

℞. *Pil aurearum.* ℈.ij.
Pil. de fumo terræ. ʒ.ß.

Mixe them with the ſyrup of violets, and make v. pils.

And if it chance that the paine do proceed from *morbus*

Galicus, you ſhall after the taking of theſe pils, take this potion following, for the ſpace of twenty daies together, and ſo ſleepe vpon it.

℞. *Decocti ligniguiaci*
Secundum artem facti. lb.vj.
Fol. ſenæ alex.
Betonicæ
Stacados Arab. } *an.* M.ß.
Polypodij querc.
Turbith boni }
Agarici elect. } *an.* ℥ij.ß.

Mixe them, and boile them altogether, vntill the third part be conſumed, then let it be ſtrained; and take of the ſtraining. ℥.vj.
Oximellis ſimplicis ℥.ij.
Let them be mixed for one doſe. Let him continue this manner, and there is no doubt but he ſhall grow well.

Vnguents for *Achor*, and *Vlcerations* of the head.

℞. *Sulphuris, foliorum*
Parietariæ an. ℥.ß.
Saponis Galici ℥.j.
Mixe them with the iuyce of *Parietaria*, and make an vnguent.

An other.

℞. *Litargirij* ℥.ij.
Foliorum rutæ virid. ℥.j.
Staphiſagriæ ℥.ß.
Vitrioli. ℥.ij.
Mixe them together in a mortar, with vineger and oile of mirtels, vntill it come to an vnguent, and therewith annoynt the place.

A water called *aqua Bozoartica*, or a water against the Peſtilence.

℞ *Cardui benedicti*
Radicum enulæ an. ℥.j.
Zedoriæ
Imperatoriæ
Carlinæ
Diptami albi
Angelicæ an. ℥.j.ß.
Gentianæ
Pimpinellæ
Tormentillæ
Sandalorum omnium an. ℥.vj.
Petaſite
Serpentariæ an. ℥.j.
Valerianæ ℥.ß.

Let all theſe be bruiſed very finely, and then adde

Muſci optimi ʒ.j.& Gr.v.
Camphoræ ʒ.ij.& ß.
Theriacæ
Mithridatij an. ℥.ij.ß.

Let all be infuſed for two daies in vij. pints of *aquavitæ*, or of wine twice diſtilled, and then let it bee diſtilled in a lembecke, with a gentle fire, and then will it be a moſt perfect water againſt the Peſtilence, and other venome, whoſe doſe is two ounces, or one ounce and a halfe, with ſorrell water and the water of *Card: Benedictus*, and for a preſeruatiue, halfe a ſpoonefull is enough at a time.

Some make an infuſion for three or foure daies making afterwards an expreſſion and it is more delectable.

A diſtillled water againſt the falling ſickeneſſe, called aqua Epileptia.

℞ *Florum lilij conuallij.* M.vj.

Infuſe them in one meaſure of the beſt white wine, and

ſo

so let it stand for tenne daies; then let it bee distilled at a gentle fire in a lembecke, *in balneo mariæ*, afterwards take

Florum lauendulæ	M.j.
Florum anthos	M.ß.
Garyophillorum	ʒ.ij.
Macis	ʒ.ß.
Cubebarum	ʒ.j.
Viſci quercini	
Radicis diptami alb. an.	ʒ.ij.ß.

Let these be infused for foure dayes in the aforesaid distillation, then let all be distilled againe by a lembecke. The dose for preseruation is one or two spoonefuls to bee taken once or twise in a week, the day before the new Moone, & the full of the Moone, & in, or after the Paroxysme or fit, so much also. And with this water & suger may be made *Manus Christi*, against the falling sickneſſe, *caros*, *ſubeth*, and the *Apoplexie*.

A distilled water against the Apoplexie and Palsie.

℞. *Florum primulæ veris.*	
Florum roriſmarini.	
Florum maioranæ.	an. M.j.
Florum iuæ arthetica.	
Speciarum Diamuſci amar.	
Diapliris.	an. ʒ.ß.
Diambræ.	
Confectionis anacardinæ.	ʒ.j.
Cubebarum.	
Ligni aloes.	
Nucis Muſcatæ.	
Gariophillorum.	
Macropiperis.	
Carpobalſami an.	ʒ.j.
Radicum acori	
Ireos	

Ariſtologiæ

Aristologiæ rotund. an.	℥.j.ß.
Seminum sileris montani,	
Pœoniæ	
Famiculi an.	℥.j.
Aquarum herbæ paralysis	
Saluiæ.	
Betonicæ an.	℔.j.
Aquæ florum tiliæ,	℔.j.ß.
Serapini, opoponacis	
Myrrhæ	
Gummi Iuniperi. an.	℥.j.ß.

Let all be bruised and mixed together, and let to stand in infusion for eight daies: afterwards let there be a threefold extraction in hot ashes, or by vapour, or *Balneo sicco*. It is of marueilous vertue, in the preseruation from the *Apoplexie*, and all other cold sickenesses of the nerues. It cureth the Palsie, *tortura oris spasmus*, and doth marueilously restore speech.

A water that doth strengthen the memory.

℞.	*Aquarum buglossæ*	
	Betonicæ	
	Florum tilliæ an.	℔.j.
	Aquæ ardentis opt.	℔.ß.
	Florum anthos	
	Rosarum rubearum	
	Maioranæ	
	Buglossæ an.	M.j.
	Specierum confectionis	
	Anacardinæ	℥.ij.

A Cordiall water.

℞.	*Rosarum rubearum*	M.ij.
	Florum Borraginis	M.ß.
	Cinamomi	℥.ij.ß.

Xyloales	ʒ.j.
Spicæ Indicæ	
Garyophil.an.	ʒ.ß.
Radicum ireos	ʒ.j.ß.
Ben albi & rubei,an.	ʒ.j.
Sandalorum rub. & citri.an.	ʒ.ß.
Corallorum rubeorum	ʒ.j.
Corticum citri	ʒ.ß.
Seminum ocimi	
Garyophilati	ʒ.ß.
Galliæ muſcatæ	ʒ.ij.
Margaritarum	℈.ij.
Zedoriæ	ʒ.j.
Zinziberis albi	ʒ.ß.
Camphoræ	Gr.vij.
Croci orientalis	℈.ij.
Moſchi	℈.ß.
Aquæ roſarum	℔.ij.
Vini maluatici	℔.ß.
Aceti roſ.	℔.ß.

Let all be finely bruiſed and mixed for eight dayes, and afterwards diſtilled in *Balnea mariæ.*

A water againſt the ſyncope or ſwounding.

℞.	*Aquæ roſat.*	℔.ij.
	Aceti roſati	℔.j.
	Maluatici	℔.ß.
	Florum roriſmarinæ	
	Maioranæ an.	ʒ.j.ß.
	Zedoariæ	ʒ.j.
	Coriandrorum	℈.ij.
	Cubebarum	
	Nucis Muſcatæ	
	Macis	
	Garyophillorum ſingl.	ʒ.ß.

Cinamomi

Cinamomi	℈.ij.
Ligni aloes	ʒ.ß.
Specierum Diamuſci	ʒ.j.
Camphoræ	℈.ß.
Ambræ	Gr.iiij.

Let all be bruiſed and mixed together with the liquors, and let it infuſe together for foure daies: then let it be diſtilled in *Balnea Mariæ*. You may adde to theſe:

Aquarum nymphææ	
Violarum	
Lauendulæ an.	ʒ.ij.
Aquavitæ	ʒ.iij.

It is a moſt effectuall remedie againſt ſwounding in the peſtilence.

In like manner three branches of penny-royall, infuſed in two ounces and a halfe of vineger of Roſes, and one ounce of Roſe-water: for onely with the ſmell of this the ſpirits are reuiued.

A reſtoratiue water.

Take a Capon, or Pheſant, or a Pertridge, the bowels being pulled out, and him let bee cut into ſmall peeces and waſhed: then with Roſewater and vineger, adde one dragme of Cinamon.

Of Cloues	℈.ij.
Manus Chriſti	
Cum perlis	ʒ.ß.
Succi arantiarum	ʒ.ij.
Acetoſitatis citri	ʒ.iij.

Let all be put into a glaſſe, or into ſome earthen veſſell, & let it be boyled with a ſtrong fire in *Balnea Mariæ*, vntill halfe be conſumed; and then ſtraine it, and preſerue it, and drinke thereof twice a day.

A Cinamon water.

Wee make Cinamon water either by distillation: the Cinamon being grossely bruised, and infused in as much Borrage water, or Rose-water as shall suffice, and so distilled in *Balnea Maria.*

Or else we take two dragmes of Cinamon, being finely powdred with fiue ounces of the best suger, being put into a measure of the water of the decoction of Barly, being very hot, and so to remaine vntill it bee cold; or else with three dragmes of Cinamon, one handfull of Barly, Resons of the Sunne being washed one ounce, Anisseed two dragmes, of white suger Candy two ounces and a halfe, rnnning water sixe pints: and so let it be boiled at a gentle fire vntill halfe be consumed, and then straine it.

A water in the opilation of the Liuer and Iaundes.

℞. *Caponem Deplumatum.*
Et Euiscératum, being cut into small pieces and boyled, and then bruised with the flesh and bones in a morter: then adde thereunto

Aqua violarum.	
Betonicæ	
Endiuiæ	
Lupulorum	
Cuscutæ	
Sichorij an.	℥.iij.
Succi pomorum	
Redolentium	℥.iiij.ß.
Decoctionis caponis	
Macri	℔.j.
Sandalorum citrinorum	℥.j.℈.ij.
Spodij	℥.j.
Cinamomi	℥.ij.
Camphoræ	

Camphoræ Gr.v.

Let all be put into a veſſell of tin cloſe ſtopt, and placed in a veſſell of water, and ſo boiled for foure howers ſpace, then let it be ſtrained, & put the ſtraining into a Lembeck, and ſo diſtilled by *Balnea Marinæ*.

A wine againſt the oppilation of the Liuer, Splene, Reines, and the euils of the Bladder.

℞. *Scolopendriæ* M.vij.
Adianti M iiij.
Chamæpyteos M.iij.
Roris marinæ M.ij.ß.
Cyperi ʒ.ß.
Radicis liquiritiæ raſæ ʒ.ij.
Rhapontici ʒ.j.ß.
Paſſularum ℔.ß.
Alkakengi. M.iiij.ß.

Let all be put into an earthen veſſell well glazed, and being cloſe ſtopped, and ſo let there be put into a peece of fine linnen, of

Calamus aromaticus ʒ.iij.
Gariophillarum ʒ.ij.

And ſo let it hang in the veſſell in the midſt of the wine for foure and twenty houres: then diſtill it by filter as wee vſe to diſtill hipocras, ſtill letting the *Calamus aromaticus*, and cloues hang in the veſſell.

A wine that is laxatiue.

℞. *Fumi terræ* M.j.
Foliorum ſcolopend. M.ij.
Fol. ſenæ alexandr. ʒ.j.
Polypodij ʒ.v.
Turbith electi ʒ.ij.
Cinamomi ʒ.j.ß.

Garyophillorum	℈.iiij.
Zinziberis	ʒ.j.
Rhabarbari cum scrupulo	
Vno squinanti in petia.	
Ligati	℈.v.
Florum violarum	
Borraginis an.	M.ß.

Let all boyle in an earthen vessell with three pints of white wine, and so let it stand for a night; in the morning let it be strained, in which shall be dissolued foure ounces of fine white suger, one white of an egge, and with two scruples of Cinnamon, and halfe a dragme of Cloues tied in a peece of fine linnen, in the boyling let it be clarified. The dose for those that be of ripe yeares is foure ounces and a halfe, in which may be dissolued fiue scruples, or two dragmes of *Diaturbith.*

Against the retention of the Memstrus.

℞.	*Baccarum Lauri*	ʒ.ß.
	Roris marini	M.ß.
	Granorum Iuniperinum.	xj.
	Cinamomi fracti	℈.v.
	Croci integri in petia ligati	Gr.v.

Let all be boiled in one pinte and a halfe of white wine, and let the patient drinke euery morning a good draught hot against the time that nature seeketh to expell the matter. In like manner you may take *Trochis. de myrrha subt. pulu.* ʒ.j. in a cup of white wine being warme, in the morning fasting. Or.

℞.	*Boracis mineralis.*	ʒ.ij.
	Cassiæ ligneæ	℈.ij.
	Croci.	Gr.iij.

Let all be made into fine powder, and with fiue ounces of *aqua matricaria.* Let it be giuen once in a weeke.

A Diuretic decoction in the stone.

℞.	*Capillorum veneris*	M.j.ß.
	Crithami marini	M.ß.
	Radicum aptij & remorse an.	℥.j.
	Liquiritiæ rasæ	℥.ij.
	Corticum radicis scolymi	℥.j.ß.
	Seminum saxifragiæ	℥.j.ß.
	Damasonij	℥.ij.
	Alcacengi	*nũ.*xvij.
	Radicum graminis	℥.iij.

Let all be cut, bruised, and boiled at a gentle fire in three pints and a halfe of running water, vntill the third part bee consumed; then make a strong expression, in which shall bee dissolued one ounce and a halfe of syrupe of Violets, and of fine Rhubarb two ounces: then let it be clarified with the white of an egge. The dose is ℥.iiij.& ß.

A decoction against the strangury and burning of the Vrine.

℞.	*Hordei integri*	M.j.ß.
	Liquiritiæ	℥.j.
	Seminum anisi	℥.ij.ß.
	Dactilorum incisorum	*num.*v.
	Sebestenincisorum num.	xv.

Let all bee boyled in two measures and a halfe of running water, in an earthen vessell being glazed, vntill the barly breake, then let it be strained, and take three ounces and a halfe of this decoction.

Syrupi de papauere	℥.j.
Syrupi liquiritiæ	℥.ß.
Pulueris glaudum	℥.j.

Let it be mixed, and giuen at the entrance into bed.

A Iulep against the *Apoplexie* and *Vertigo*.

℞.	*Florum Lauandulæ*	M.j.
	Violarum	
	Rosarum	
	Sticados Arabici	
	Origani an.	M.ß.
	Radicum Pœoniæ	
	Acori	
	Pyrethri an.	ʒ.ß.
	Squillæ	ʒ.ij.
	Cubebarum	ʒ.j.
	Cardamomi	
	Cinamomi	
	Griophillorum an.	ϑ.j.

Let all bee boyled in one pint and a halfe of Betony water, and one pint of *Marioran* water, and let it be strained, and with seuen ounces of suger make a Iulep according to Art. Or if you will, you may dissolue in your decoction for your daily vse the syrupe of *Sticados*.

A pectorall Iulep.

℞.	*Cinamomi*	ϑ.iiij.
	Thymi	P.j.
	Liquiritiæ	ʒ.j.ß.
	Radicum ireos	ʒ.ij.
	Enulæ	ʒ.j.
	Passularum enucle.	ʒ.ß.

Let all be boiled in a double vessell, with eight ounces of fennell water, three ounces of hyssop water, halfe a pint of *Scabios* water, then let it be strained, and in the straining dissolue seuen ounces of fine suger.

Cinamomi	ϑ.ij.
Gariophilorum	ϑ.j.

Ireos

Ireos	ʒ.ß. *in*

Petia ligati boile the Iulep to a thicknes and with the white of an egge let it be clarified.

A Cordiall Iulep of wine.

℞. *Vini Rhenensis.*	℔.j.
Aquæ rosarum	ʒ.ij.ß.
Goryophilorum	
Contus.	℈.ij.
Cinamomi	ʒ.ß.
In petia ligatorum	
Sacchari sim.	ʒ.iij.

Let it bee boyled at a gentle fire, to a thickeneſſe of a cleere Iulep, and let it be giuen in the morning, and euening, two ſpoonefuls, againſt ſwounding.

A Iulep for the ſtomacke.

℞. *Foliorum ſcolopendriæ*	M.iiij.
Cuſcutæ	M.ß.
Menthæ	P.j.
Galangæ	
Xyloaloet an.	ʒ.ß.
Seminum aniſi	℈.ij.
Garyophilorum	ʒ.j.
Cinamomi	ʒ.j.ß.
Vini albi	℔.j.
Aquæ abſinthij	℔.ß.
Aquæ chamomillæ	ʒ.iij.

Let all be boyled in a double veſſell, then let it ſtand for a night; afterwards make a ſtrong expreſſion, then with fiue ounces of ſuger let it be boyled to the thickeneſſe of a Iulep: it is vſed in the paine of the ſtomacke, through the oppilation of the entrails, and from a cold cauſe.

A Iulep in the intollerable paine of the ſtomacke and cholicke.

℞. *Conſeruæ roſarum* ℥.j.
Opij thebaici opij. Gr.ij. *iuſti ponderis*
Croci orientalis. Gr.iij.

Let it be diſſolued in foure ounces of chamomell water, and then ſtrained and drunke three houres before ſupper. It doth extinguiſh heat and paine of the ſtomacke and colicke without any harme: it doth alſo prouoke ſleepe, eſpecially if the cauſe proceedeth of heat.

A Iulep for Melancholy, a quartan Feuer, and the French Pox.

℞. *Fumiterræ* M.j.ß.
Scolopendriæ
Caſcutæ an. M.ß.
Adianti M.j.
Foliorum & folliculor.
Senæ ℥.vj.
Polypodij ℥.ß.
Corticum myrobalanor.
Indorum ℥.ij.
Paſſularum enuleat. ℥.j.
Florum boraginis
Bugloſſæ an. Pugil.j.
Epithimi ℥.j.
Ellebori nigri ℥.ij.ß.
Radicum capparorum ℥.ij.

Let all boile in three pints of common water, to the conſumption of the third part, then let it ſtand for two houres, and then make a ſtrong expreſſion, which ſhall bee afterwards twice diſtilled by filter, then afterwards with two ℈. of cloues, and one ℥, and a halfe of cinamond tied in a linnen cloth, and with

Sacchari ℥.ij.

Syrupi

Syrupi de pomis
Vell regis ſabor. ℥.j.ß.

Let it be boiled to the thickneſſe of a cleere Iulep: the doſe is fiue ounces, and for ſtrong bodies there may bee in *petia ligati Agarici* ℥.j.ß.

Cum duobus ſcrupulis zinziberis, in the laſt decoction.

A Iulep for *Dyſenteria*, and the bloudy fluxe.

℞. *Roſarum rubearum* M.ß.
Sumech
Balauſtiarum an. ℥.j.ß.
Seminum lappatiæ
Acutæ ℥.j.
Myrtillorum ℥.ij.
Antheræ ℥.ß.
Radicum tormentillæ ℥.ij.

Let it boyle for the ſpace of halfe an houre, in one pinte of the water of the flowers of the ſlow tree, and ſeuen ounces of plantane water, then let it ſtand eight houres, and make a ſtrong expreſſion, in the which ſhall be diſſolued one ounce and a halfe of the iuyce of plantane being purified, three ounces of fine white ſuger, with two ſcruples and a halfe of the powder of nutmegs, and halfe a dragme of cloues, tied in a peece of fine linnen, and ſo boiled to the thickeneſſe of a cleere Iulep.

A Iulep for the Sciatica, goute, and paines in the ioynts.

℞. *Chamæpyteos* M.j.ß.
Aſari M.j.
Betonicæ
Chamedrios
Sticados Arab. an. M.ß.
Capillorum vener
Rutæ an. M.j.
Turbith alb. gumoſi ℥.ij.ß.

Polypodij querc.	℥.ß.
Foliorum, & folliculerum	
Senæ sine stipitibus	℥.vj.
Hermodactilorum	℥.iij.
Seminum anisi	
Fœniculi an.	℥.j.
Passularum enucleat.	℥.j.

Let all boile in three pintes of running water, vntill the third part be consumed; then let it stand for an houre, and make a strong expression, which shall be twice distilled by filter, in which at the last shall be put of

Agaricke	℈.iiij.
Zinziberis	℈.v.
Garyophilorum	℈.ij.ß.

Being bruised and tied in a peece of linnen, with three ounces of fine white suger, and so againe boyled to the sickenesse of a cleere Iulep: the dose is ℥.v.

A powder against poyson, and the Pestilence.

℞. *Zedoariæ*
Euphorbij
Corallinæ
Tormentillæ
Gentianæ
Dyptami vulgaris
Terræ sigillatæ
Boli armeni
Corallorum rubeorum & alborum
Spicæ nardi
Masticis
Herbæ garyophillatæ
Centaurij minoris
Sandalorum rubeorum
Ossis de corde cerui
Camphoræ an. partes equales

Let all be made into fine powder, of which giue j.℥.with the

the water of sorrell, or of wine & sorrell boyled together.

An experimented powder, in the fit of the falling sickenesse.

℞. *Seminum nigellæ* ℈.j.Gr.v.
Maioranæ Gr.vj.
Nucis muscatæ
Radicum pœoniæ
Mumiæ an. ℈.ß.

Make all into fine powder, and let it be blowne vp into his nostrels.

For the Vertigo, Palsy, Apoplexy, Scotoma, and for the memory lost.

℞. *Radicum acori*
Pyrethri
Pœniæ an. ʒ.j.ß.
Galangæ
Costi an. ʒ.ß.
Cileris montani ʒ.ij.
Roris marini ʒ.j.ß.
Florum saluiæ
Lauendulæ
Betonicæ an. ℈.j.ß.
Cubebarum
Cardamomi
Baccarum lauri an. ℈.ij.
Macis ℈.j.
Nucis muscatæ
Caryophillorum an. ʒ.ß.
Cinamomi ʒ.j.
Sticados Arab.
Foliorum rutæ an. P.j.
Seminum anisi
Sem. faniculi
Ameos

Carui an. ℈.ß.
Piperis longi
Carpobalzami an. ℈.j.

Let all be mixed and made into a fine powder, and with ſuger diſſolued in the waters of maioram and ſage, make Lozenges, or with the ſyrup of ſticados, or hony clarified, you may make an Electuarie.

Lozenges for the ſame.

℞. *Specierum Diambræ* ℈.iiij.
Cinamomi ℥.j.
Garyophillorum ℈.j.
Muſci Gr.j.
Ambræ Gr.ij.
Cubebarum ℈.ß.
Pinearum præparatarum ℥.iij.
Sacchari ℨ.iij.ß.

All being made into fine powder, and with as much of the Epilepticke water before written, and roſewater as much as ſhall ſuffice, make Lozenges.

Lozenges comforting the braine, and the heart.

℞. *Ambræ griſeæ.* ℈.ij.
Cinamomi ℥.ij.
Sacchari candi ℨ.iij.
Aquæroſarum Q. S. make

Lozenges they are of a moſt pleaſant taſt.

Lozenges for paine of the head, ſinging of the eares, and Vertigo.

℞. *Nucis muſcatæ* num.j.
Cimini
Seminum aniſi
Fæniculi
Carui
Cubebarum
Piperis longi

Garyophillorum

Caryophillorum an. ʒ.j.
Pulegij ſicci
Foliorum maioranæ an. ℈.j.
Specierum diacimini ʒ.ß.

Mixe all together, and make a fine powder, giue one dragme with fennell water: or with fiue ounces of ſuger, and *aqua apilleptica*, and roſe-water, Q.S. make Lozenges.

A Pectorall confection.

℞. *Cinamomi* ʒ.j.ß.
Liquiritiæ ℈.ij.
Thymi P.j.
Radicum ireos ℈.iiij.

Let all be bruiſed and let it boyle.

Cum aqua fœniculi ʒ.ij.
Scabioſæ ʒ.j.
Roſarum ʒ.j.ß.

Then let it ſtand one quarter of an houre, and ſtraine it, and take ſo much of the ſame ſtraining as ſhall ſuffice to diſſolue ij ʒ.ß. of white ſuger candy, and of *Pennidice* j.ʒ. and ſo let it boile to a thickeneſſe, and then mixe therein, of cinamon in fine powder halfe a ſcruple.

Radicum ireos ℈.j.
Dragaganti alb. ℈.ß.
Margaritarum
Præparat Gr.vj.
Seminis bombicis
Enucleati ℈.ß.
Fol. auri num. 4.

And therewith make pectorall roles.

Roles for the cough and Aſthma.

℞. *Pineæcum prap.* ʒ.ij.
Radicum ireos
Liquiritiæ raſæ an. ℈.ij.
Dragaganti ʒ.ß.

Seminum

Seminum anisi	℈.j.
Feniculi	
Urticæ an.	℈.ß.
Rad. angelicæ	ʒ.ß.
Cinamomi	℈.iiij.
Storacis calamitæ	℈.ß.
Sacchari	
Penidij & candi an.	ʒ.j.ß.

And with the water of *Scabios*, and fennell as much as shall suffice, make roles.

Restoratiue Lozenges.

℞.	*Pinearum præparat.*	ʒ.ij.ß.
	Fisticorum viridium	ʒ.ij.
	Specierum Diambræ	℈.ij.
	Cinamomi	ʒ.ß.
	Galangæ	℈.j.
	Garyophilorum	ʒ.ß.
	Nucis muscatæ	℈.ij.
	Zinziberis albi	ʒ.ß.
	Xiloaloes	℈.ß.

With iiij. ʒ. and a halfe of suger, dissolued in rose water, with the species and other things, make a confection in Lozenges.

Lozenges for the opilation of the Liuer, euill state of the body, and the dropsie.

℞.	*Specierum aromatici rosati*	ʒ.j.℈.ß.
	Specierum Dialaccæ	ʒ.ß.
	Macis	℈.j.
	Squinanti	
	Carui	
	Radicum asari an.	℈.ß.
	Cinamomi	℈.iiij.
	Sandalorum citrin	
	Rubeorum an.	ʒ.ß.

Cyperi

Cyperi	℈.j.
Limaturæ eboris	℈.j.
Fisticorum viridium	℈.iiij.
Seminum melonum	
Excorticat.	℈.ij.

With vj.℥. of suger in the water of Agrimony and roses Q. S. dissolued, make a confection in Lozenges.

A Tragea for Dysenteria, and the bloudy Flux.

℞.	*Magaritarum*	℈.ij.
	Carabe	
	Xyloaloes an.	℈.j.
	Chermes	
	Garyophillorum an.	℥.ß.
	Nucis muscatæ	
	Corallorum præparat an.	℈.j.

With one ounce and a halfe of *manus Christi sandalini*, being finely powdred, make tragea: it is also very good against Abortion.

Manus Christi sandalini.

℞.	*Specierum trium sandalorum*	℥.j.ß.
	Margaritarum præp.	℈.ij.
	Corallorum amborum an.	℈.j.
	Seminum melonum	
	Excorticat.	℥.j.
	Conserue rosarum	℥.j.
	Sacchari in aqua	
	Rosarum dissoluti Q. S.	

Make a confection in roles; it is good against a hot distemper of the liuer and stomacke, and other diseases that spring thereof.

Tragea. Against inuoluntary pissing.

℞,	*Coriandri*	℥.j.
	Corabæ	℥.ß.
	Corallorum rub.	
	Xyloaloes an.	℈.ß.

Glandium quercus	ʒ.ij.
Nucis muſcatæ	ϑ.v.
Sandalorum rubeor.	ϑ.ij.ß.

With fiue ounces and a halfe of ſuger, make *Tragea*, and let it be giuen at the entrance into bed.

Againſt the ſuperfluous flux of the Menſtrus, and of the Wombe.

℞. *Granorum chermes* ϑ.v.
Sandelorum rubeorum ʒ.ß.
Carabe ϑ.j.
Nucis muſcatæ ϑ.ij.
Fragmentorum ſmaragdi. Gr.v.

With three ounces of fine white ſuger make Tragea.

Againſt ache and paine of the ioints.

℞. *Chamedrios*
Camepitheos
Gentianæ an. ʒ.iij.
Foliorum rutæ ſiccæ ʒ.iiij.

Make all into fine powder, this muſt be adminiſtred after euacuation, the body being well purged, and there is vſed to be giuen, one ſpoonefull in the winter time with white wine, and in the ſummer with ſome diſtilled water.

Hermes compoſed the like powder *ex*

Chamedrios
Gentianæ an. ʒ.iiij.
Ariſtologiæ rotund. ʒ.j.
Seminum rutæ ſiccæ ℔.ß.

The doſe is one ſpoonefull, with Hydromell. *Vide Gal. 14. meth. &c.*

Tragea de tartaro.

℞. *Foliorum ſenæ* ʒ.j.
Tartari albi de vino potenti } ʒ.ß.
Turbit albi & gummoſi an. }
Cinamomi

Zinziberis

Zinziberis an.	ʒ.ß.
Gariophilorum	ʒ.j.
Sacchari	℥.j.
Fiat tragea	

A laxatiue powder.

R. *Polypodij*	℈.ij.
Zinziberis	℈.j.
Agarici trochiscat	ʒ.ß.
Rhabarbari	ʒ.j.
Folliculorum senæ	℈.j.
Garyophillorum	
Turbit	
Cinamomi an.	ʒ.ß.

Make all this into powder for the delicater sort of people. For those that be stronger there may be added of *Diagridium* one scruple. The dose is one drag. giuen in foure ounces of *Claretum laxatiuum.*

Laxatiue Lozenges.

R. *Foliorum senæ mund.*	℈.ß.
Cinamomi	
Zinziberis	
Garyophillorum an.	℈.ij.
Hermodactilorum	℈.iiij.
Rhabarbari	ʒ.j.
Turbit electi	ʒ.ij.ß.
Diagridij	ʒ.j.℈ ij.ß.
Squinantij	Gr.v.
Galangæ	
Nucis muscatæ an.	℈.ß.

With eight ounces of suger dissolued in the water of Endiue make a confection in Lozenges. The dose is from three dragmes vnto sixe dragmes.

An Electuarie against the Epilepsie and vertigo.

℞. *Diacori* ℥.j.ß.
Conſeruæ maioranæ
Lauendulæ
Roriſmarini an. ℥.j.
Conſeruæ ſticados ℥.ß.
Specierum diambræ ʒ.v.
Garyophillorum
Cinamomi
Cardamomi an. ʒ.ij.
Cubebarum ℥.ß.
Nucis muſcatæ
Galangæ an. ℥.ß.
Viſci quercini ʒ.ij.
Corallorum rubeorum ʒ.j.

With ſuger diſſolued in the water of Lauender, make an Electuary.

An Electuary for the conſeruation of the ſight.

℞. *Conſeruæ Euphragiæ* ℥.j.ß.
Conſeruæ roſarum ℥.j.
Galangæ ℥.ß.
Macis ʒ.ij.
Cubebarum ʒ.j.
Garyophillorum ℥.j.
Cinamomi ʒ.iiij.
Seminum rutæ
Fœniculi an. ℥.ß.
Nucis muſcatæ ʒ.ij.
Pulpæ Chebulorum
Conditorum ℥.iij.
Nucis muſcatæ.
Conditæ ℥.ß.

Let all be brought into fine powder & *cum Brodio emblicorum conditorum*, or of Ginger *condite*, make an Electuary.

An Electuary for spitting of bloud.

℞.	*Conserue rosarum vet.*	℥.ij.ß.
	Betonicæ	℥.ß.
	Electri albi	℈.iiij.
	Corollorum præparat.	℥.j.ß.
	Cornu cerui vsti	℥.j.ß.
	Gummi Arabici	℈.ij.
	Rob. de ribes	℥.vj.

With the syrupe of purslane, as much as is sufficient, make an Electuary.

An Electuary for trembling of the heart.

℞.	*Conserue rosarum*	℥.iij.
	Conserue florum	
	Tunicæ	℥.j.
	Conserue melissæ	℥.ß.
	Specierum margariti	
	Frigidi	℈.iiij.
	Galangæ	℈.j.
	Cinamomi	℈.iiij.
	Garyophilorum	℈.ij.
	Doronici	℈.j.
	Succini alb.	℥.ß.
	Nucis muscatæ conditæ	℥.ij.
	Zinziberis conditi	℥.ß.
	Corticum citri	
	Pinearum præparatar.	℥.ij.
	Seminum melonum	℥.j.
	Manus Christi cum	
	Perlis	℥.ß.
	Margaritarum prep.	Gr.v.
	Foliorum auri num.	iiij.

With the syrupe of *Acetosus citri* make an Electuary.

A restoratiue Electuary.

℞.	*Conserua rosarum.*	℥.ij.ß.

Conſeruæ cichorij	ʒ.j.
Sandalorum citrinorum	
Xyloaloes an.	ϑ.ß.
Galangæ	ϑ.j.
Cinamomi	ϑ.ij.ß.
Calomi aromatici	
Conditi	ʒ.ij.
Radicum cichorij conditi	ʒ.iij.
Ziuxiberis conditi	ʒ.ß.
Fiſticorum viridium	ϑ.v.
Seminum melonum excort.	ʒ.j.

Whith the ſyrup of the roots of Cichorie *condit.* make an Electuary.

A reſtoratiue Electuary for thoſe that are hecticke, and in a conſumption.

℞. *Carnis de pectore perdicis optimè*
Decoctæ ℔.ß.

Which being cut into peeces, let it bee well beaten in a ſtone morter; then let there be added.

Cinamomi		
Cardamomi		
Garyophillorum		
Folij		
Cubebarum.	*an.*	ʒ.j.
Zinziberis		
Draganti		
Gummi Arabici		
Galangæ		
Nucis muſcatæ		
Croci		
Macis an.		ϑ.ij.

Let all be beaten together, then adde

Amili
Liquiritiæ
Pinearum mund.
Amigdalarum dulc.

Paſſularum

Passularum
Sebesten
Fisticorum viridium an. ʒ.ß.
Incisorum grosso modo
Seminum cucurbitæ
Melonum
Cucumeris.
Papaueris albi
Lactucæ
Portulacæ an. ʒ.ij.
Penidiarum ʒ.ij.ß.

Let all be mixed together with the flesh in a mortar; then afterwards take *Succhari albissimi* lb.iij.ß. being dissolued in the broth of a Pertridge, or a fat yong Cokrill, and being added to the rest, make an Electuarie.

Another, called *Electuarium regale.*

℞. *Conserue rosarum* ʒ.j.
Conserue violarum ʒ.ß.
Fisticorum viridium ʒ.vj.
Pinearum mund. ʒ.j.
Amygdalarum dule. ʒ.ß.
Galangæ ϑ.ij.ß.
Cinamomi
Garyophillorum an. ʒ.ij.ϑ.ß.
Macis
Ligni aloes an. ϑ.ij.

And with suger dissolued in Malmsey, the nuts being finely beaten, make an Electuary.

A Loch for the Catarrh, proceeding of an hot cause.

℞. *Conserue rosarum recentium* ʒ.iij.
Conserue violarum ʒ.j.
Muscillaginis psilij
Et maluæ an. ʒ.ß.
Seminum maluæ ʒ.j.

Pinearum

Pinearum pr. p.	℥.iij.ß.
Fisticorum	℥.ij.
Passularum	℥.iij.
Seminum melonum	
Succi liquiritiæ an.	℥.ij.
Seminum fœniculi	
Seminum vrticæ an.	℥.j.ß.
Draganti	
Gummi Arab. an.	ʒ.v.
Carnem Vnius dactili	
Cinamomi	℥.iij.
Rad. ireos	℥.ij.ß.

Let all be cut and beaten together, and with syrupe of Scabios make a loch.

Loch ad catarrhum subtilem.

℞. *Capillorum veneris*	M.j.
Seminum papaueris albi	℥.ß.

Let it be macerated for a night in running water, then let it be strained, and boyle the straining to the one halfe, *cum Aqua de seminibus psily.*

Cidoniorum	
Portulacæ	
Dragaganti an.	℥.ij.
Gummi Arab	ʒ.v.

Make a *Muscilage*, in the which dissolue.

Amili	℥.vj.
Sacchari candi	℥.j.ß.

And make a Loch.

An Electuary for paine of the stomack, proceeding of a cold cause and wind.

℞, *Conserue rosarum*	℥.j.ß.
Specierum Diagalangæ	℥.j.ß.
Seminum anisi	
Carui an.	ʒ.ß.

Gariophilorum

Garyophilorum	℈.j.
Xyloaloes	℈.ß.
Calami aromatici	
Conditi	ʒ.ij.
Zinziberis condit.	ʒ.ij.
Cinamomi	ʒ.ß.
Seminum melonum	℈.iij.

Cum Brodio Zinziberis: make an Electuarie.

For paine of the stomacke, proceeding of wind.

℞. *Theriacæ*	ʒ.iij.
Diptami	ʒ.ß.
Ameos	
Dauci an	Gr.vi.
Galangæ	
Gariophillorum an.	℈.j.
Ligni aloes	
Corallorum an.	℈.j.
Conserua rosarum	ʒ.j.
Conseruæ menthæ	ʒ.ß.

Make a mixture with the Syrupe of Mints. There may be added, if need require, two graines of Opium.

For the oppilation and obstruction of the Liuer.

℞. *Mellis passularum*	ʒ.ij.
Fisticorum viridium	ʒ.ij.ß.
Seminum melonum	℈.iiij.
Cinamomi	ʒ.j ß.
Garyophillorum	℈.ij.ß.
Limaturæ eboris	
Baccæ prep.an.	ʒ ß.
Rad cum asari	℈.ij.
Capri	℈.ß.
Seminum anisi	
Macis an.	℈.j.
Cardamomi	

Squinanti an.	℈.ß.
Calami aromatici	
Conditi	ʒ.iij.
Zinziberis conditi	ʒ.ß.
Diacalamenti in	
Rotulis fracti	ʒ.j.

With the syrupe of Agrimonie and *Calament minus amar.* make an Electuary effectuall in *Cacexia* and *Hypospharca.*

An Electuary for the dropsie and oppilation of the Liuer.

℞.	*Rhabarbari electi*	ʒ.j.
	Laccæ præparat.	ʒ.ij.
	Xyloaloes	
	Cinamomi	
	Aristologiæ longæ an.	ʒ.ß.
	Passularum enucleat.	
	Fisticorum an.	ʒ.ß.
	Squinanti	
	Asari an.	ʒ.j.
	Croci	℈.ß.

With the syrupe of Cichorie, *cum Rhabarbaro,* make an Electuarie.

For the superfluous fluxe of the Menstrues.

℞.	*Athanasiæ Nicolai*	ʒ.ß.
	Philonij Persici	℈.iiij.
	Garyophillorum	
	Nucis muscatæ	
	Cinamomi	
	Smaragdi an.	℈.ß.
	Granorum chermes	℈.j.
	Cum modico acetositatis	

Citri, make an Electuarie. The dose is from one scruple to two, to bee taken at the entrance into bed with wine of the infusion of Chermes and Sanders.

Pilles for the plague.

℞. *Aloes rasatæ* ʒ.iij.
Agarici trociscat. ℈.ij.ß.
Zedoariæ
Angelicæ an. ℈.j.
Garyophillorum ʒ.ß.
Radicum eryngij ℈.ß.
Rhabarbari ℈.ij.
Croci
Smaragdi an. Gr.v.
Trochiscorum Alhandel ℈.j.
Cum theriaca in aqua vitæ aureæ dissoluta fiat massa.

Pillulæ de tribus.

℞. *Aloes Rosati*
Agarici trociscat.
Rhabarbari an. partes æqual.
Cum syrupo de Rhabarbaro nostro, fiat massa.

Pilles for the dimnesse of sight and weakenesse of the braine.

℞. *Calami aromatici*
Cubebarum
Nucis muscatæ
Spicæ
Squinanti
Carpobalsami
Epithimi.
Macis
Masticis
Asari
Garyophilorum
Myrobalanorum critrini an. ʒ.j.
Euphragiæ ʒ.ß.
Rhabarbari ℈.v.

Turbit	
Colocynthidis an.	ʒ.j.ß.
Agarici	ʒ.ß.
Aloes	ʒ.iij.ß.

Cum succo fœniculi fiat massa. The dose is from one Dragme to fiue scruples.

Pilles against melancholy, and the French Pocks.

℞.	*Elebori nigri*	ʒ.iij.
	Turbit albi & gummosi	ʒ.ij.
	Agarici albiss.	℈.v.ß.
	Polypodij querc.	
	Epithymi cretens. an.	℈.ij.
	Diagridij	ʒ.ij.ß.
	Trociscorum alhandal.	ʒ.j.
	Sp. cierum hiera simpl.	ʒ.ij.
	Caryophillorum	℈.j.

Let all be incorporated with two dragmes and a halfe of old treacle and a little water of *Fumiterra*, & make a masse. The dose is from a dragme vnto foure scruples.

Pilles to prouoke the Menstrues.

℞.	*Cort. cum cassi ligne*	
	Myrrhæ	
	Cinamomi	
	Aristologiæ long. an.	ʒ.j.
	Borracis	℈.ij.
	Croci	℈.j.
	Nigellæ	ʒ.ß.

Let all be incorporated *cum succo sabinæ*, and giuen in the water of penny-royall, or Camomell; it is an expert medicine.

Pilles against the wormes.

℞.	*Aloes*	℈.ij.
	Rhabarbari	
	Myrrhæ an.	℈.ß.

Trociscorum

Trociſcorum alhandal	Gr. iij.
Pulueris coralline	ʒ. ß.

With the iuice of wormewood make nine pilles; one ſe. uple is ſufficient for a child.

Trociſci ſub lingua in Paralyſi.

℞. *Radicum acori veri*	ʒ. j.
Pyrethri	ϑ. ij.
Zinziberis	
Caryophillorum	
Nucis muſcatæ an.	ʒ. ß.
Cubebarum	ϑ. ß.

With Sage or water of Lauender make Trocisks of the bigneſſe of a Lupin.

To make oile of *Hypericon.*

℞. *Florum hypericonis ante.*	
Solis ortum	M iiij.

Let them be bruiſed, and boyled in three pints of redde wine, almoſt to the conſumption of the wine. Then let the iuice be ſtrained out, and put into a glaſſen veſſell; and let it ſtand in the ſunne for eight daies ſpace, and then adde thereunto,

Olei veteris	℔. j.
Terpentinæ	ʒ. iiij.
Succi ſcabioſæ	
Succi mille-folij	
Centaurij minoris	
Agrimonie	
Barbæ filuane an.	ʒ. ij.
Sanguinis humani	
Recens extracti	ʒ. iiij.
Vermium terreſtrium lot.	
Vini num.	xv.
Myrrhæ	
Maſticis	

Scarrcolle

Sarcocollæ
Opoponacis an.

Let all be mixed together, and boiled to the consumption of the iuices.

Oleum ranarum.

℞. *Ranas maiores excoriatas*
Cum capitibus num. vij.
Florum Camomillæ M.j.

Let it be boyled in one pinte of common oile vntill the flesh be dissolued from the bones, then let it be beaten, and adding a little more oile, let it bee againe boyled. Then make a strong expression, to the which shall be added of Turpentine washed ℥.iiij. Let it bee mixed hot in a morter one ounce and a halfe of this oile, with so much of *Vnguentum de succo Ebuli*, mixed together, is good against the goute, paines of the ioints, and Nerues.

An oyle for the Sciatica and paines of the ioints.

℞. *Petrolei*
Olei philosophorum
Succi Ebuli
Terebenthinæ an. ℥.ß.
Lumbricorum ℥.vj.
Vini maluatici ℥ ß.

Boile all together at a gentle fire and annoint the place grieued hot.

Vnguentum de succo Ebuli.

℞. *Succi radicum ebuli*
Succi rutæ an. ℥.iij.
Lumbricorum lot. ℔.j.
Olei Camomillæ ℔ ß.
Olei rosati ℔.j.

Let the wormes be cut and boyled to the consumption of the iuices, then let it be strained, and adde vnto the straining.

Terebinthinæ ℥.ij.
Cera ℥.iij.

Make

Make an vnguent for the paine of the backe and Nerues, the goute, and sciatica.

An vnguent for the French Poxe.

R.	*Axungiæ canis*	ʒ.j.
	Axungiæ porc.	ʒ.j.ß.
	Theriacæ veteris	ʒ.ß.
	Mithridati	ʒ.iij.
	Argenti viui cum succo	
	Mercurialis extincti	ʒ.vij.ß.
	Masticis	
	Olibani an.	ʒ.ij.
	Pimpinellæ	ʒ.j.ß.
	Succi Lapatij acut.	
	De radice expressi	
	Olei laurini an.	ʒ.j.

With a little waxe make an vnguent. Some vse to mixe with these kinds of vnguents *Oleum de euphorbio*, because that then there is no euacuation by fluxe at the mouth or vomit, but by seege and sweate.

An other vnguent for paine of the ioints and muskles, proceeding from *Lues veneren.*

R.	*Olei irini*	
	Dekeiri	
	Laurini an.	ʒ.iij.
	Axungiæ porc.	
	Mascul. liquefact. & colatæ	ʒ.xj.
	Succorum Radicis ebuli	
	Absinthij	
	Rutæ agrestis an.	ʒ.iiij.
	Vini maluatici aut.	
	Albi odoriferi & opt.	℔.j ß.

Let all boile together, to the consumption of the iuices and wine, at a gentle fire, then let it be strained, and adde to the straining *Bdellij dissoluti* in

Aceto

Aceto ℥.ix.
Olibani pulu. ſub. ℥.ij. ℥.ij.
Euphorbij
Pyrethri ſubt. pul. an. ℥.vj.
Ceræ. Q. S. Let all be put together, and placed vpon the fire vntill the waxe be liquified: then remoue it from the fire, and ſtill ſtir it vp & downe vntill it be cold: then adde
Mercurij extincti ℥.j ß.

And beeing well mixed together, make an vnguent; of which being hot, anoynt the members grieued, or tumors, in the morning: then let the patient reſt in his bed, beeing well couered, for the ſpace of three or foure houres, aud let him ſweate throughly: then let the ſweate bee wiped away, and ſo let him reſt for an hower, vntill he be ſomwhat coole. The patient muſt be of a ſpare dyet vntill the cure be ended, which will be in ten or twelue dayes. This vnguent is of ſuch excellency, that it doth not procure any paine in the throat or mouth; ſo that the body bee well clenſed before by purgation and phlebotomie.

Emplaſtrum de ſucco Ebuli.

℞. *Vnguenti de ſucco Ebuli.* ℥.ij.ß
Olei hypericonis ℥.vj
Terebinthinæ cum vino
Lotæ ℥.ß.

Make an Emplaſter: it is good againſt the paine of the Nerues, convulſion in the muſcles, armes, and feet.

Another Emplaſter for paine of the Nerues.

℞. *Olcorum Camomillæ* ℥.iij
Hipericonis ℥.j.ß.
Verbaſci ℥.j.
Benzoi ℥.ß.
Croci ℥j ß
Maſticis ℥.ij.ß.

Camomilæ

Camomillæ	ʒ. v
Pinguedinis caponis	ʒ. j. ß.
Medullæ vituli	ʒ. v.
Storacis liquidæ	ʒ. ß.
Terpentinæ	ʒ. ij.
Picis colophoniæ	ʒ. j. ß.
Ceræ albæ	ʒ. ß.

Make an Emplaster. *S. Æ.*

An Emplaster for the *Squinancie* and Apostumes of the Throte.

℞. *Lithargirij* ʒ. j.

Vpon which powre as much oyle of Violets, and *Oleum sesaminum* as may make it in the forme of an vnguent: then take

Muscilaginis psyllij
Seminum althææ &
Marubij an. ʒ. ß.
Gummi amygdalarum
Infusi in aquæ coriandri
Die ac nocte, & colati ʒ. j.

Put thereunto of the Flowers of Camomell and Melilot finely powdered, of either Dragme two: at the last let all bee mixed well together, and adding thereunto three new laid egges, being well mixed together, and so apply it.

An Emplaster that doth consolidate and mundifie.

℞. *Tutiæ præparat*	ʒ. ij.
Cinabaris aut minij	ʒ. ij. ß.
Lithargirij auri	ʒ. j. ß.
Cerussæ	ʒ. ij.
Sanguis draconis	ʒ. ß.
Camphoræ	℈. v. ß.
Olei rosati	℔. j.
Ceræ albæ	ʒ. iiij.

Make an Emplaster, & let it be malaxed with Rose-water.

Cerotum ſtomachale.

℞. *Maſticis pul.* ℥.iij.ß.
Terebenthinæ cum aqua
Mentæ lotæ ℥.j.ß.
Ceræ albæ ℥. iij.

Theſe being mixt in a hot morter, let it bee ſpread vpon leather; then caſt this following powder thereon.

℞ *Garyophillorum* ℈.v
Xyloaloes ℥.j.
Calami aromatici
Nucis muſcatæ an. ℥.ß.
Corallorum rubeorum ℈.ij.
Menthæ. ℈.ß

Make it into powder, and then let it bee couered ouer with red ſarſnat, and inter-baſt it, and ſo apply it. In like manner *Maſtic* beeing wrought in a hot morter with a peſtell, may bee ſpread for a Cerot to bee applyed for the ſtomacke: but it is beſt if there be added a quantity of oyle of Mints, to bring it into the forme of a Cerote.

A Declaration of the qualitie of *certaine Seeds, Hearbs, Flowers,* Rootes, and Waters.

The foure greater hot Seeds.

ANiſſeed.
Fenel-ſeed.
Comin-ſeed.
Caraway-ſeed.

The foure leſſer hot ſeedes.

Yellow Carret-ſeed.
Smallage-ſeed.
Ameos, and Amonie.

The foure greater cold ſeeds.

The Gourd ſeed.
The Cucumber-ſeed.
The Melon-ſeed.
And the Citron-ſeed.

The foure leſſer cold ſeeds.

Endiue ſeed.
Cichorie ſeed.
Lettiſſe ſeed.
And purſlan ſeed.

The foure hot ointments.

Vnguentem martiaton.
Vnguentum de althea.
Vnguentum Aragon.
Vnguentum Agrippæ.

The foure cold ointments.

Vnguentum album.
Vnguentum citrinum.
Vnguentum populion.
Vnguentum resumptiuum.

The fiue opening rootes.

The Smallage roote.
The Fennell roote.
The Parsly roote.
The Sperage roote.
The Kneeholme roote.

The foure waters that do comfort the Heart.

The water of Endiue.
The water of Cichorie.
The water of Scabios.
The water of Bugloſſe.

The eight hearbes that are laxatiue.

Mallowes.
Mercurie.
Holyhocke.
Parietarie.
Violets.
The Colewort.
Branckurſin, and Beets.

The three common hot Flowers.

Camomell
Melilot.
And the Lillie.

The foure common cold Flowers.

Violets.
Red Roſes.
Borrage flowers.
And Bugloſſe flowers.

A Table of those simples that are appropriate for all the cheefe parts of the Body.

Comforters of the Head and Braine are:

CVbebes, Lignum aloes, Balme called Melissa, Acorus, Nux Mistica, Roses, Peonia, Spicke, Melilot, Francumcense, Castoreum, Galengall, Maioran, Staphysagre, Muske, Rosemarie, Stœchados, Hyssop, Camomell, Rue, Ladanum, Capparis and such like.

Things good for the Eyes.

Eye-bright, Fennel, Cloues, Agrimony, Celendine.

Things good for the Heart.

Chyperus, Safferne, Cloues, Lignum Aloes, Macis, Myrobalans, Nutmegs, the bone of the Stagges heart, Rosemarie, Spodium, Terra Sigillata, Bugloss, Maioran, Cinamon, Corall, Amber, Perls, Balme, Muske, Olibanum, Pistacia, Roses, Stœcados, Zedoaria, Borage and such like.

Things good for the Lungs.

Enula campane, Horehound, Liquirish, Iuiubes, Figges, Penidice, Dates, Hyssop, Scabios, Reasons of the Sunne, Maydenhaire, Sebesten, Tragacantum, Almonds, Pistacia, and such like.

Things comforting the stomacke.

Wormewood, Cassi lignea, Calamus aromaticus, Cyperus, safferne, Cuscuta, Fumus terræ, Cloues, Lacca, Lignū aloes, Mints, Nutmegs, Origanum, the inward skin of the stomacke of a cocke, Spodium, Olibanum, Corrall, Agrimonie, Galengale, Gallia muscata, Leuisticus, Mastech, of Balme, Myrobalans, Pistacia, Quinces.

Things profitable for the Liuer.

Wormewood, Safferne, Agrimonie, Cloues, Origanum, Liuerwoort, Cichory, the greater Plantane, both kinds of Dragons, Spicke, Fennell, Cassia lignea, Cuscuta, Fumus terræ, Gallia muscata, Pistacia, Endiue, Schænanthos, Polium, Reasons of the Sunne, Anisseeds, Sanders.

Things profitable for the Spleene.

Walwort, Iuie berries, the Ash-tree, Harts tongue, Tamarix, Polytrichon, Calament, Cyperus, Acorus, the yellow Caret, Madder, Capparis, Asarum, the Elder-tree, Agrimony.

Things good for the obstruction of the Liuer.

Cassia lignea, Maydenhaire, red Phetches, Dodder, Agrimonie, Fumus terræ, Horehound, Draggons, Asparagus, Stechados, Polium, Rhaponticke, Rhubarbe, Smallage.

Things good for the obstruction of the Spleene.

Rhaponticke, Maydenhaire, Capparis, Dodder, Agrimonie, Fumus terræ, Horehound, Tamariske.

Things

Things profitable for the Matrix.

Sauin, Sothernwood. Iuniperburies, Maioran, Penniroyall, Staphysagre, Hypericon, Acorus, Fenell, Saxifrage.

Things profitable for the Reines and Bladder.

Asparagus, Saxifrage, Milium solis, Asarum, Acorus, Filipendula, Genista, Parsly, Polium, Dodder, Fennell.

Things profitable to the Ioynts.

Polium montanum asarum, Acorus, Amomum, Sage, Calament, Pellitorie of Spaine, Stœchados, Coste.

Of Syrups concocting Choler in the head.

Syrupus *De Nymphæa simplex*
De Nymphæa compos. Head
Syrupus *De Papauere simpl.* Choler.
De Papauere compos.

Of Syrups concocting yellow choler in the Breast.

Syrupus *Infusionis violarum.*
De succo violarum. Breast.
Syrupus violarum.
De Iuiubis
Syr. granatorum Dulc.

In the Stomacke.

Syrupus acetosus simpl. Stomacke.
Granatorum acid.
Oxisaccharum simpl.
Oxisaccharum comp.
Syrupus De agresta.
Syrupus infusionis rosarum
Syrupus De succo rosarum.

Mine

Mina cotoneorum
Syrupus de succo myrtil.
Syrupus myrtinus.

In the Heart.

Heart. *Syrupus de succo acetosa.*
Acetositatis citri
Arantiarum, & limonum.

These syrups purge choler simply.

Purgers of Choler. Infusion of Roses.
Infusion of Violets.
Ex Floribus Persicorum
De Cichorio cum Rhabarbaro.
De Rhabarbaro solutivus.
Mel mercuriale.

Purgers of Phlegme. *Syrupus De Bryonia.*
Syrupus De Hermodactylis.
Oxymel Iuliani.
Oxymel Elleboratum.
Syrupus Diasereos.
Syrupus Diacnicu.

In the Head.

Digesters of Phlegme. Head. *Syrupus de Betonica compos.*
Syrupus de Stœcade.
Mel anacardinum.

De Hyssopo. De prassio.
Capillorum veneris.

In the breast. *De Betonica.*
Glycyrhizæ.

Syrupus. *De Calamentho.*
Scabiosæ, &c.

In the Heart.

Sirupus Bisantinus. — Heart.

In the Stomacke.

Aqua mulsa. — Stomacke.
Sirupus De absinthio.
Syrupus De mentha.
Mel Rosarum colatum.
Oxymel simplex.
Oxymel compositum.
Oximel scilliticum.

In the Liuer.

Syrupus Acetosus simplex. — Liuer.
De duabus radicibus.
De quinque radicibus.
De eupatorio.

The Matrix.

Syrupus De Artemesia. — Matrix.
Syrupus de calamentho, &c.

Syrurups concocting Melancholy in the heart: are

Syrupus De pomis. — Melancholy
Syrupus de succo Borraginis
Syrupus de succo Buglosse.

Digesters of Melancholy in the Liuer and Splene

Syrupus De Epithymo. — Liuer and Splene.
Syrupus Lupulorum.
Syrupus Splenicus.
Syrupus De fumo terræ.

Electuaries that do purge Choler.

Electuarium De succo rosarum. — Choler.
Electuarium rosatum Mesuæ.
Electuarium De psillio.
Diaprunum solutivum.

Phlegme. Purgers of phlegme.
Benedicta laxatiua.
Diaphanicon.
Electuarium Iudum maius, & minus.
Electuarium Elescoph.
Diaturbith maius.
Diaturbith minus.
Hiera piera.S.
Hiera piera Constantinis
With all the other kinds of *Hieros.*

Melancholy Purgers of Melancholy.
Diasena, confectio hamech.
Diapolipodion magistrale.
Hieralogodium.

Purgers of mixt humors.
Catharticum imperiale.
Diacarthamum.
Diaturbith cum Rhabarbaro.
Hiera ruffi
Hiera abatis.
Electuarium de cupatorio.
Vomitorium Andreæ.
Vomitiuum Nicolai.

Pilles purging Choler from the Head.

Head Pilles. *Pillulæ aureæ.*
Pillulæ Arabicæ, &c.

Liuer. From the Liuer.
Pilulæ ad bilem.
Pilulæ ad febres
Pilulæ ex Rhabarbaro.
Pilulæ Sabellicæ.
Pilulæ De cupatorio.

From the Head. Pilles purging phlegme.
Pilulæ cochiæ.
Pilulæ hiero cum Agarico.

Pilulæ

Pilulæ ex colocynthide.
Pilulæ alhandal.
Pilulæ ex sex rebus.
Pilulæ ex octo rebus.

Pilulæ hieræ cum Agarico.
Pilulæ ex Agarico. — From the
Pilulæ Bechichæ, &c. — Breast.

Pilulæ Alephanginæ
Pilulæ ante cibum. — From the
Pilulæ mastichina. — stomacke.
Pilulæ stomachicæ
Pilulæ ex turbith
Pilulæ communes.
Pilulæ contra pestem, &c.

Pilulæ De hermadactylis.
Pilulæ arthreticæ. — From the
Pilulæ fœtidæ — ioints.
Pilulæ ex sagapeno.
Pilulæ ex oppanace.
Pilulæ De sarcocolla.
Pilulæ benedictæ.
Pilulæ De nitro, &c.

Pills purging Melancholy from the Liuer and Spleene. — Melancholy

Pilulæ ex Fumaria.
Pilulæ Indæ.
Pilulæ De Lapide lazuli.
Pilulæ De lapide armeno, &c.

Pils purging serous and watrish Humours.

Pilulæ De mezereo. — Watrish hu-
Pilulæ De euphorbio, &c. — mours.

Pils purging mixt humors from the Head: as

Pilulæ ſine quibus.
Pilulæ Lucis maiores.
Pilulæ lucis minores.
Pilulæ cochæ, &c.

From the Stomacke.

Pil. de hiera ſimplici Gal.
Pil. Aſſaieret.
Pil. Ex turbith.
Pil. De aloe & maſtiec.
Pil. imperiales.
Pil. peſtilentiales.
Pil. Aureæ ex turbith, &c.

Liuer.

Pil. De tribus.

Pils purging all humours: are

Pilulæ aggregatiuæ.

A Table expreſſing the ſignification of the weights and meaſures contained in this Booke.

A Barley corne.	Gr.
A Scruple	℈
A Dragme	ʒ
An Ounce	℥
A Pound.	℔
A Halfe	ß
A Handfull	M
Of euery one a like	*ana.*

FINIS.

A PARTICVLAR PRACTISE OF PHISICKE, TEACHING THE TRVE CVRE OF ALL THOSE INWARD DISEASES THAT doe affect the bodie of Man.

Of Head-ache. CONFERENCE I.

Doctor. TEll me how many kindes of head-ache there are?

Student. There are three kinds of Head-ache, the first is called κεφαλαλγια, and is when the paine is but new, light, and tollerable. The second is, the olde and inueterate head-ache, which is stubborne and confirmed, which is called κεφαλια. The third is called ἡμικρανια, and doth occupie the halfe part of the

head, there is another kinde of head-ache which is called μονοσλυγια, and doth occupie one onely part of the head, and is of some called *clauus*.

Doct. What course must be taken for the remedie of these head-aches?

Stud. We must consider first whether the paine be *primarius*, or by consent: for the braine doth suffer with the Nerues of the sixt coniugation: oftentimes head-ache proceedeth from the stomacke, which is not continuall, but doth offend most chiefly after meales, by fumes and vapours, which doe ascend vp to the braine, but we must first succour the part which by it selfe is affected. Also we must dilligently consider vvhether the paine be outward, or inward, vvhich may be perceiued by hard friction of the head if it be inward, it reacheth to the roote & hollownesse of the eyes, and in their motion the reason is becausethe nerue Optick doth receiue his originall from the tunickles of the braine. Wee must also distinguish whether the paine proceede from an hot or colde cause, for it is an vnseemely part for any Physitian to vndertake to cure an hot distemperature for a colde.

Doct. But how shall wee discerne whether the cause be hot or colde?

Stud. That may be easily perceiued, for those paines that proceede of hot causes are alwayes most sharpe and painefull, but those that proceede of colde causes, are slow, dull, and not so painefull, and yet it doth not alwayes follow of necessitie, becaufe that those paines which wee call *Dolores tensiui*, are also most sharpe; for those *Membrans* which are called *Pia mater* and *Dura mater*, are sometimes extended and stretched forth with a certaine pituitous flegmaticke, and flatulent humour, but head-ache proceeding of an hot cause as I haue said, is sharpe, pulsatiue, and beating: and if it proceede from aboundance of bloud, the beating of the arterie doth declare the same, and if the paine be pricking, and felt inwards, as I haue said it doth demon-

demonstrate the inward membrans to be affected, but if the paine lie outwards then the *Pericranium*.

Doct. How is an hot cause remedied?

Stud. Head-ache proceeding of an hot cause, is speedily cured by phlebotomie, and opening of a veine: but colde causes doe require purgation, and such oyntments as are *anodin*, and ceasing paine, of which there are three kindes, the first kinde containeth such things as haue onely a propertie to remoue the cause of the griefe, and those properly are the *vera anodina*, because the griefe being once expulsed, doth not returne againe. Three kindes of *Anodins*.

These of the second kinde are temperate or meanely hot, as milke, the yolkes of egges, and the oyle of them, Camomell, and the distilled water thereof, greasie wooll, called *Lana succida*, and mans grease, all which things because they haue as it were an analogie to naturall heat, doe mitigate the paine. The third kinde of *anodins* are narcoticks, which doe stupifie and dull the sense, so that the paine cannot be felt, but the vse of these is often dangerous, and therefore are not to be reckoned amongst the former. *Hippocrates, sexto epidem*, rehearseth amongst the first kindes of *anodins* the opening of a veine, and purgation, not onely generall but particular also, in which is comprehended *errhines, Masticatoris*, cupping glasses, and scarification, with *Vesicatoris*, by which is made a sensible euacuation of the matter causing the griefe: also there is a sensible resolution made by the sutures, by application of topicall meanes, as by emplaisters, fomentations, caps, &c. which doe remoue the paine, because they discusse the humour which causeth the paine. 2. kinde.

And suppose some man to be vexed with exceeding head-ache, and we suspect the cause to be hot, which may appeare by the effects, as by pulsation, by things that doe hurt or helpe, the fumes are to be drawne backe by clysters, and the veine in the arme is not onely to be opened once or twice, but also the veine in the forehead and temples. 3. kinde.

In hot paines, *Galen* saith, that the most present remedie is bloud-letting. Cupping glasses applied vpon the shoulders vvith deepe scarification, the fore-part of the head is to be moystned with *Oxyrhodinum* prepared *ex nenupharino*, and a little vinegar, and apply it as a cooling frontall.

Doct. But vvhat if the paine proceede from a colde cause?

Student. If the paine proceede from some colde cause, vvee must purge often and vehemently, for vvee haue seene paines of the teeth and head proceeding of a colde cause, vvith one onely purgation to haue beene remoued, and so an hot cause vvith one onely bloud-letting. Next *errhines* are to be vsed, and *Masticatoris*, the head must be annoynted vvith the oyles of Lillies, and Camomell, or vvith oyle vvherein is boyled Veruin, and vvilde Time, also *Emplastrum de betonica*, a Cap, and a frontall heating, framed vvith some Cephalical conserues. Also apply *Vesicatorium*, a *Cautier* in the head and armes. We must altogether abstaine from Narcoticks, and things that stupifie, especially in a colde paine, least the distemperature be encreased, and so vvee induce *carus*, and foolishnesse: in hot paines vvee must take great care that vvee vse things according to the dignitie of the part vvhich is colde by nature, such things as may be able by their heat to encrease the animall facultie, for through colde it groweth grosse, and becommeth vnfit for motion. In an hot cause vvee may giue one dramme of *requies Nicolai*, vvith Betonie vvater, and in a colde cause so much of *Philonium*, vvith vvine diluted vvith Sage vvater. But in *Cephalea* and olde inueterate paine, proceeding of colde. I had rather vse vnguents, Emplaisters, and *Cerats*, and such oyles that haue a verie hot propertie, as oyle of *Euphorbium*, to annoynt the forehead and temples, of vvhich a drop or two may be distilled into the eares.

Verbena.
Serpillum.

R. *Olei*

℞. *Olei Camomeli* ℥ iij. *Cerot.*
Olei Euphorbij ℥ iij.
Cum Cera q. s. fiat cerotum.

This *cerot*, *Galen* vsed very much for an inueterate *Hemicrania*: and the Sciatica. *Æ tius* giueth counsell, that in an olde *Hemecraniæ*, that the temples on the contrarie side which is not payned to be annoynted & oyle to be instilled in the contrarie eare. Wee must note that as often as the head-ache is periodicall, such as the *Hemicrania* is wont to be, so often the sharpnesse thereof is to be preuented by purgation, and bloud-letting, if the disease doe so require.

Doct. Very good, for that is a generall rule in all diseases, which doe come *per circuitus*, and at certaine seasons, to preuent the *Paroxisme* and fit.

But what signes and remedies haue we when the head-ache doth proceede of the French Poxe?

Stud. The signes of the Poxe is, when the paine doth possesse the fore-part of the head, and temples, and sometimes also the hinder part, for the cure whereof wee must begin with an *emollient clyster*, to with-draw the aboundance of vapours, and humors, that doe ascend to the head, as for example:

℞. *Maluæ, Mercurialis, betæ, an. M.* i. *Clyster.*
Furfuris frumenti, Camomeli an. M. ß.
Calamenthæ Maioranæ an. partem tertiam M. i.
Decoquantur in q. s. aquæ ad lib. i. *Colaturæ adde cassiæ* ℥i. ß. *Sacchar. rub.* ℥ ij. *benedict. lax.* ℨ ij. *olei antiqui* ℥ij. *butiri veteris* ℥ i. *salis Com.* ℨ i. *misceantur omnia, et fiat clyster*, which must be giuen fasting: afterward to conquoct the humour.

℞. *Syrup. Conseruationis acori.* Prepratiue.
Syrup. Fumariæ.
Syrup. Buglossæ an. ℥ ij.
Stillatitiorum liquorum Chamæpit.
Melyssophylli, lupi Salictarij.
Buglossæ an. ℥ iii.

Let them be mixed and giuen to drinke in the morning fasting for foure dayes together. And where there is abundance of hearbs, there may be vsed this *Apozem.*

℞. *Radicis acori, glycyrrhizæ* ℥i.

Apozem.

Quinq; rad. com. macerat. in aceto, et vino albo an. ℥ß.
Melissophylli, betonicæ, Summitatum lupi salictarij, fumariæ, bugloss. integri, Cirsij, M. i.
Hermodact. ℥ß. *vuarum passarum detractis vinaceis* ℥ i.
Trium flor. com. florum rorismar. an. p. i.
Thymi ℥iij. *folior. sennæ* ℥ß.
Polypod. quer. ℥ i. ß.

Let all boyle in sufficient water vntill halfe be consumed, then let it be strained. Whereof take *lib.* j. ß. which make sweet with suger, adding thereunto of choise Cinamon ℥ ij, and *pulueris diarrhod. abb.* ℥ i. which will make it the more pleasant both for smell and tast. Whereof the Patient must take euery morning fasting ℥iiij. at a time, for fiue dayes together, then take this purging potion following.

℞. *Pruna damascen. xij. liquiritiæ expurgat. Oxyphæuicon, vuarum Passarum detractis vinaceis, violarum an.* ℥ß. *hordy p.* j. *sem. anisi et fœniculi an.* ℥ij, *polypod. quer.* ℥ß. *fol. sennæ* ℥j. ß. *hermodact.* ℥ij.

Let all boyle in sufficient fountaine vvater, to the consumption of the one halfe, then take of this *decoct.* ℥iiij. *Catholicon.* ℥vj. *confect. hamech, Diaphœnici an.* ℥. ij. *syrup. bugloss.* ℥i. ß.

All these being mixed together, make a purging potion, vvhich must be giuen in the morning at iiij. or v. of the clocke, keeping the house for that day.

Or the Patient may be purged with these pils.

℞. *Pil fœtidarum, pil indar. a* ℥ß. *Misce et fiant pil. v.*

Pils to purge the Head.

Which must be taken at midnight, or after the first sleepe, and then after three or foure dayes let him vse this Decoction following.

℞. *Scobis*

℞. *Scobis ligni sancti lib* i.

Let it be boyled in foure pints of fountaine water, vntill halfe be consumed, then vvhen the halfe part is almost consumed, adde *Melissophylli, betonicæ, chamæpi. bugloss. integri, fumariæ, lupulj salictarij Summitatum an. M.* i. then let the Patient drinke of this decoction ℥vi. at a time for iiij. dayes together, at fiue of the clocke in the morning, and prouoke the Patient to sweat, so that thereby the humours may be discussed that hinder the cicatriz of such vlcers as doe wander vp and downe the body, after vvhich sweating, the Patient must be very well dried from the sweat, if the Patient be also desirous of sleepe after the taking of the drinke, let him sleepe in the name of God, at his pleasure, also those hearbs which are to be mixed with the *lignum sanctum*, let them be bound in bundles, that they be not mixed with the wood, but may be more easily seperated from the same, after the taking away, vvhereof boyle with the vvood sixe pintes of running vvater, vntill two pintes be consumed. Which Decoction must be vsed for the common drinke as often as the Patient is thirstie, to which may be added a little white wine, if it be so that the Patient be very weake. These things being performed, vvee must proceede to topicall meanes. Dyet drinke for the Poxe.

℞. *Emplastri nobilis ab Ioanne de vigo Compositi lib.* ʃ8.
Emplast. filij Zachariæ.
Emplast. de meliloto.
Emplast. Diuini.
Emplast. Ceronei.
Emplast. Diachylæ cui iris adiecta sit ana ℥ iiij. *farinæ seminis lini, farinæ fænegræci an.* ℥ʃ8.
Bdellij, ammoniaci dissolutorum in olio de hl. an. ℥iij.
Croci ℥ʃ8. *adiecta terebinthina q. S. Commisceantur et ex omnibus fingatur Massa Emplastri, de qua Sumatur q. S. vt super alutam extendendo fingatur pileolus, qui capiti superponatur.*

And this is not onely to be applied to the head, but to the

the other parts of the body also, if they be any wayes infected with the same disease. *Rolanus* doth very much commend the oyle of Sauin, for those kinde of head-aches.

Doct. Giue me the description of that oyle.

Stud. R. *Sabinæ lib.* i. Let it be marcerated for three dayes in the oyle of Camomell, and the fourth day boyle it, to the consumption of the halfe part, taking heede that the oyle burne not in the boyling. And thus much of the diseases of the head.

Of forgetfulnesse and losse of Memorie.

Forgetfulnesse.

Doct. WE haue hitherto spoken of head-ache, now let vs speake somewhat of forgetfulnesse, how doth it happen that some men are so forgetfull?

Stud. The memorie is either cleane lost, or diminished, by some colde distemperature, and sometimes by a colde and moyst, and sometimes also by a colde and dry: if it happen by a colde and moyst, the partie is very drowsie and sleepie, and much moysture is auoyded at the nose. If it be a colde & dry distemperature, the Patient is watchfull, and the nose yeeldeth little or no moysture. *Gordonius* aduiseth to vse oyle of *Castoreum*, and of *Euphorbium*, also to giue inwards for certaine dayes *Confectio ex anacardis*, ʒii. with the decoction of Smallage, and Fenell roots, and it is sufficient to mixe one dramme with a little quantity of Mithridate, or Treacle, of which also a liniment is prepared: or if you please R. *Conseruæ acori* ʒi. *Mithridat. veteris* ʒʃ8. *Confect. ex anacardis* ʒii. *nucis muscat. Condit. vel Zinziberis, Conditi* ϑ. iiij. *Cum syrupo de stœchade fiat opiatæ.* Of which take morning and euening the quantity of an Acorne: also a spoonefull of the syrup of *Stœchad*, taken euery morning doth profit very much: also Cinamon taken any manner of wayes, is very good to preserue the memory, for which purpose Cinamon water is good to be taken, and the oyle of Cinamon is good to annoint the head.

To strengthen Memorie.

Cinamon good for the Memorie.

Of

Of the Epilepſia, or Falling-Sickneſſe.

Conference. II.

Student.

THe Epilepſia, or the Falling-ſickneſſe, is a convulſion of all the parts of the body, but not perpetually, and it doth bring with it hurt of minde and ſenſe. *Epilepſia deſcriptio.*

Doct. How many differences are there in the Falling-ſickneſſe?

Stud. There are three differences in this diſeaſe: for eyther it happeneth when the braine is affected by it ſelfe, which is, when the originall of the euill ſpringeth therehence: or elſe it ſpringeth through the conſent of the mouth of the ſtomacke, being euill affected: or elſe through the conſent of ſome other ſubiect part, from whence venomous vapours doe creepe into the braine, by hidden paſſages; for ſome ſay, that they labour before the fit doth come vpon them, and that they doe feele the cauſe of the euill, from that part of the body from whence it ſpringeth, as it were a vapour or cold ayre carryed into the braine by the continuitie of the parts. And this euill for the moſt part proceedeth from a venemous vapour, which is carryed from ſome lower part of the body to the braine, and then the Patient doth fall ſodainely with the convulſion.

Doct. What is the cauſe of this diſeaſe?

Stud. For the moſt part it hapneth, from the abundance of a melancholicke and flegmaticke humour, from whence corrupt vapours, venemous and virulent doe ariſe, from which hapneth obſtructions in the *meatus*, and paſſages of the braine, and by this meanes, the paſſage of the ſpirits is *Cauſa.*

let and hindred, from whence the braine, and the beginning of the nerues doe ſtriue to expell that which is hurtfull to it ſelfe, whether it be vapour, or ſome other humour.

Doct. What is your methode for the cure of this diſeaſe?

Cura.

Stud. The cure of this diſeaſe doth conſiſt in a fit and conuenient order of dyet: the Patient muſt abſtaine from all things that are vaporous and fuming, and from thoſe things that from a certaine propertie is wont to prouoke this Diſeaſe ſuch as Apium, Goates fleſh, Lettuce, Purſlane, and all cooling and fuming things. In the time of intermiſſion, in thoſe that are of yeeres, there may be adminiſtred Clyſters to auoid the matter: and if the body be full and plethoricke, a veyne may be opened, and withall, once a weeke the humours offending may be auoyded with purgation: afterwards thoſe humours that doe aſcend to the braine, may be drawne backe by ſtrong Clyſters and frictions. The way by which the vapours that are venemous doe aſcend, may be ſhut vp with ligatures and bands, if they ſeeme to aſcend from ſome extreame part, and ſo to creepe to the braine: and wee may apply the bands a little aboue the place from whence the vapours doe aſcend: afterwards, we muſt adminiſter ſuch things as haue power to ſtrengthen the head and the whole body. But if with taking all this courſe, wee finde little profit, wee may apply an actuall cautier, or in the place thereof a potentiall cautier, framed of Cantharides, ſower Leuen, and ſtrong vineger, which muſt be applyed to the Coronalſutur, if wee perceiue thoſe venomous vapours to be profuſed from the braine. But in children it is very profitable, if in the hinder part of the head we raiſe ſmall bliſters, and pricke them with a needle; they may be ſuffered to runne for the ſpace of threeſcore dayes. In like manner, for that purpoſe, the ſcull may be opened with the trepan, to the entent that the vapours, and the matter from whence they doe aſcend, may be auoided and conſumed. And the Cautiers aforeſaid may be applyed to the other ſubiect parts from whence thoſe vapours doe

ariſe. In the time of the fit, if it ſhall continue long, to make it the ſhorter, we may make ſome noyſe in his eares, plucke him by the noſtrils, or wring him by the fingers, alſo wee may prouoke him to neeſe, and open his mouth with ſome ſticke or piece of wood fit for that purpoſe; and to rubbe his tongue, and his iawes, with the other parts adioyning: the tongue may be rubbed with ſome piece of cloath, dipped in the iuyce of Rue, wherein is diſſolued ſome treacle: or the tongue may be rubbed with Rue and Caſtoreum, mingled with ſome ſeedes of Peony, and if ſome of the ſame be put into the noſtrils, it doth very much ſhorten the fit. If this diſeaſe doe happen by the conſent of the mouth of the ſtomacke, we may prouoke vomit and afterwards purge with Hiera. Vnguents alſo and Emplaſters which haue propertie to comfort the ſtomacke, may fitly be applyed to this purpoſe.

Doct. Giue me a Compoſition or two for this purpoſe.

Stud. You ſhall: and firſt I will ſet downe a Clyſter.

Clyſter.

℞. *Rad. Pæoniæ.* ℥j
Acori, Ariſtoloch. an. ℥ſſ.
Rutæ, centaurei, Abſinthij, ſaluiæ,
Hyſſopi, Betonicæ, an. M. ſſ.
Sem. Aniſi. ℥j.
Pulpæ Colocynth. ℥j.
Coquantur in aqua q. ſ. ad lib. j. ſſ. *colaturæ adde ſpec. Hieræ Logod.* ʒi. *Diacathol.* ʒi. ſſ. *Olei Camomelini* ʒiij. *mellis* ʒij. *ſalis communis* ʒi. *fiat Clyſter.* This Clyſter may be giuen an houre before dinner, as well in the fit if it continue long, as otherwiſe.

Potio digeſtiua.

℞. *Oxymellis ſimpl.* ℥i.
Mellis Roſ. colat. ℥ſſ.
Aquarum Betonicæ,
Saluiæ, Buglоſſiam ʒi. *Miſce.*

This Potion may be continued for ſeauen dayes together, and afterwads the matter may be purged from the head with theſe Pils following:

Pils. Rx. *Pil. de hiera Nicolai.*
Pil. Maſtichin.
Pil aureorum, an. ℈ i.
Miſce cum ſyrupo de Stœchade,
& fiant Pil. 5.

After the patient hath beene purged with this medicine, he muſt abſtaine for ſixe dayes together, from any other purgation, becauſe that daily purging in the Epilepſia, may bring hurt to the patient.

In like manner, if the Patient ſhall take euery night at his entrance into his bed, halfe an ounce of this mixture following, it ſhall be very profitable in this diſeaſe:

Mixtura. Rx. *Diacori.*
Conſeruæ Stœchados.
Conſer. Saluiæ an. ℥ i.
Rad. Peoniæ ſubt.
Pul. ʒ ij.
Mixe it with the ſyrup of
Stœchados.

Another for the Patient to take euery morning, ſeauen houres before meate.

Bolus. Rx. *Cranij humani.* ʒ i. ſ8.
Pulueris Peoniæ. ʒ ſ8.
Mithridati opt. ʒ ij.
Miſce, puluerizatis pulueriz.
And make a *Bolus.*

Maſticatorium. Rx. *Nucis muſcatæ, rad. Acori, Peoniæ. Zinziberis condit. an.* ʒ iiij. *Sinapi candidi Pirethri, an.* ʒ i. ſ8. *uuarum paſſarum, Maſtiches, an.* ʒ i. *Fiant paſtilli Maſticatorij.*

Doct. Let vs proſecute the affects of the head, and proceede forwards to the Apoplexi: tell me what is the Apoplexi.

Of

Of the Apoplexi.

CONFERENCE. III.

Student.

THe Apoplexi, is an absolute depriuation of sense and motion of the whole body, with hurt of the minde and vnderstanding, it taketh it name from the greatnes of the Symptom that happeneth in this euill. It may be called *morbus attonitus*, because that the minde is altogether astonished, with the body: this euil is most dangerous, and very few are deliuered or recouer the same; and if perchance they liue, they fall for the most part into the palsie, and so they may recouer the minde and vnderstanding. We measure the greatnesse of the affect and danger, from the greatnesse of the breathing, for the breath amongst all the animall functions is the most necessarie; for where the breath is wanting, there death doth presently follow. In the Apoplexi and in all like effects although sense and motion be lost, yet for the most part, breathing doth remaine; for where an Apoplecticke doth sodainly dye, it is because that the breath is sodainly lost with the sense and motion.

Doct. What part is there affected in the Apoplexi?

Stud. The part affected is the braine, which is the origi- *Pars affecta.*
nall of the nerues and sinewes, and this is manifest, because not onely the sensible and motiue faculties are not hurt alone, but the animall also, whose fountaine and originall is the braine, and therefore in all these hurt faculties, it must needes be the braine it selfe that is affected.

Doct. What is the cause of the Apoplexi?

Stud. The cause of the Apoplexi for the most part is a dull, slow, and grosse flegme, for from thence it hapneth

that the ventricles of the braine, and the arteries of the *rete mirabile*, being filled, the ſpirits cannot paſſe from the heart into the ventricles of the braine, ſo that the ſpirits themſelues, and the animall faculties, are letted and hindred, that they cannot be diffuſed into the inſtruments of ſenſe and motion, from which it hapneth a man to be depriued.

This euill alſo hapneth vnto men that are ſubiect to crudities to much drunkenneſſe, and to thoſe that drinke ſtore of thinne wines, and of ſuch as liue in a cold and moiſt ayre, and vſing too cooling a dyet. Againe, falling from an high, wounds of the head doe procure a fluxe of humours to the braine, which if they fill the chiefe ventricles of the braine, they cauſe an Apoplexi: ſometimes it hapneth that the quantitie of thoſe humous are too little to procure a ſtrong Apoplexi, and then there is ſome hope of recouerie, eſpecially where the obſtruction is but light, proceeding of ſome groſſe vapours, and from a few humours impacted in the ventricles of the braine.

Doct. Let me heare what cure you haue for this ſo mortall a diſeaſe?

Stud. It is altogether impoſſible to cure a ſtrong Apoplexi, therefore I wiſh alwayes that the gouernment and cure thereof might be committed to Prieſts and Diuines: but becauſe in a ſmall Apoplexi there may be ſome ſmall hope, and that the cure is not altogether impoſſible, I will ſet downe ſuch remedies, as I haue knowne to be good in that euill. Firſt therefore, the Phyſitian muſt conſider from whence the euill ſpringeth, whether from bloud, or from any of the cauſes aforeſaid: if bloud ſhall be the cauſe, the Patient muſt forthwith bleed, and that muſt be in the common veyne, prouided alwayes that there be had regard to the ſtrength and age of the patient, and that wee draw not at the firſt time aboue ſixe ounces of bloud, ſo that we may repeate the bleeding ſome foure or fiue houres after, from the *Cephalica* of the right arme, and draw there-hence at the moſt the quantitie of foure ounces, and in ſixe houres after

after to open the *vena recta* of the fore-head, and draw there-hence the quantitie of three ounces.

Doct. What course is to be taken afterwards?

Stud. Then this Clyster is to be administred.

℞. *Betonicæ, Saluiæ, Hissopi,*
Centaury, Aristolochiæ,
Florum stœchados arab.
Mercurialis an. M. i.
Florum Camomellæ, Anisi, an. M. ß.
Agarici, pulpæ Colocynthidis
in petia liyat. an. ʒ ij.

Clyster in Apoplexia.

Bulliant in sufficienti quantitate aquæ vsque ad consumptionem medietatis: & de Colatura recipe ℥ x. *hieræ Logodij, hieræ compositæ an.* ʒß. *Mellis rosati* ℥ ij. *Olei Rutæ* ℥ iij. *Sacchari Rubei* ℥ i. ß. *Salis communis* ʒ iij. *Vitellum oui num.* i. *misce, & fiat Clyster.*

And this must be noted, that Clysters which are giuen in the Apoplexi, must be of greater force then those that are giuen in the Epilepsi, because the faculties of euery member are dull, and are hardly stirred vp to expell that which is hurtfull.

Doct. How must we goe forwards after the administration of the Clyster?

Stud. Then without any further expectation to digest the matter (for the Apoplexi being an acute disease, and perperacute, for if it be not looked vnto, the same day the patient dyeth) wee giue these Pils following. Or if the patient cannot, by reason of the impediment in the Muscles, swallow these Pils, they may be dissolued in a sufficient quantitie of Sage-water, and so giuen in the forme of a Potion.

℞. *Pilularum cochiarum.*
Pil. fœtidarum an. ʒß.
Pil. Aurearum. ʒ i.
Misce cum syrupo de stœchade,
Fiant Pil. num. v.

Pils in the Apoplexi.

And

And I giue a greater *Dose* of the Pils to the Patient in the Apoplexi, to the entent they may the better ſtir vp the dull expulſiue facultie.

Doct. When this euacuation is performed with theſe pils, what doth then follow?

Stud. Then I doe aduiſe that cupping glaſſes may be applyed?

Doct. How would you haue them applyed?

Stud. I would haue them applyed in this manner: firſt, I would haue the calues of the legs throughly rubbed with the hands of men, then would I haue the cupping glaſſes applyed in the ſame place with ſcarification: afterwards I would haue the like rubbings and frictions vpon the thighs below the buttockes, and there alſo the cupping glaſſes applyed, with the like ſcarification: and ſo preciſely in the ſame manner vpon the buttockes, and aſcending vpwards vntill wee come to the ſhoulders after the ſame manner, where I would haue applyed foure glaſſes with ſcarification. And this I thinke to be the beſt and chiefeſt meanes to diuert and draw the matter of the Apoplexi from the head of the patient.

Doct. What afterwards?

Stud. Then euen in the ſame day of the ſickneſſe, I would apply an actuall cautier directly vpon the Coronal-futur, which place I would haue kept open for many weekes together.

Afterwards if the Patient cannot ſwallow ſyrups, put into his mouth a dragme or two of the beſt Mithridate, for it is very profitable in this diſeaſe both before and after euacuation of the matter. But if he can ſwallow liquide things we may giue him this digeſtiue following, three dayes together.

℞. *Syrupi de Iua, de Hiſſopo*
Oximellis compoſ. an. ℥ſ ß.
Aquarum Iuæ,
Saluiæ, Hyſſopi an. ℥ i.
Miſce, & fiat Hauſtus.

It

It is not to be wondred if I vse hot things, because for the most part, the matter being as it were the Coniunct cause of the *Apoplexi*, is a pituitous and phlegmaticke humour, which doth fill the hollowes and cauities of the braine, which is easily resolued by hot things: and besides, by hot things a Feauer may be easily accended, by which oftentimes the Apoplexi, Cramps, and their causes are remoued.

Doct. But what shall the Patient doe after the vse of this syrup?

Stud. After the vse of this syrup, the whole body shall be purged with these Pils following.

℞. *Pilularum cochiarum.*
Pil. Fætidarum an. ʒß.
Elebori nigri.
Castorei optimi an. ϑ i.
Misce et fiant pilulæ septem.

Which Pils must be giuen to the Patient at mid-night. In like manner if the Apoplexi doe proceede of colde, the Patient may vse this mixture foure or fiue times in the day.

℞. *Conseruæ iris.*
Conseruæ acori.
Diamusci amari an. ʒß.
Castorei optimi ʒi.

Make a mixture with the syrup of *Stæchados*, and if it be possible, let the Patient holde alwayes in his mouth a little quantity of the same.

And this I would should be noted that *Theriaca magna*, is exceeding good in the Apoplexi, if the Patient take a dramme about three or foure of the clocke in the morning, not giuing any thing in fiue or sixe houres after.

Doctor. Because the Apoplexi doth giue neither rest to the Patient nor Physitian, but doth end alwayes in death, or the Palsie, (for the palsie is the *Crisis* to the Apoplexi) we will therefore leaue this deadly disease, and proceede to the palsie: tell me therefore what is the palsie?

Of the Palsie.

Conference IIII.

Student.

THE Palsie, is a depriuation of sence and motion, but not of the whole body, as happeneth in the Apoplexi, but where one side, or all the parts of the body, besides the head, are affected, or some particular member, wanting sence and motion, as the iaw, the tongue, the eye, the foot, the hand, the arme, lip, &c. Sometimes it happeneth that some part is depriued of sense, and yet the facultie of motion safe, and so on the other side the sense may remaine whole, and the motion may be lost. Sometimes also it happeneth, that neither sense nor motion to be altogether lost, but onely to be slow and dull, and to be taken with a sleepinesse and stifnesse, which parts being so taken, we say to be affected with an imperfect palsie, which is the fore-runner of the true palsie. But when the motion and sense is distributed: but by one onely nerue it happeneth, that the motion may be lost, and the sense remaine safe, & the reason is, because the hard nerues being for the most part intermixt with the members, which suffer but little harme, the sense cannot be lost, for because a little portion of that facultie of feeling may suffice, but for motion it will require more of the Animall facultie, from whence it happeneth, that being but a little hurt, the motion is altogether lost, and yet the facultie of feeling may in some sort remaine.

Doct. But what is the cause that sometimes the sense is lost, and yet the motion to remaine?

Student. The reason is, because that some parts doe consist of a two-folde kinde of Nerues, vvhere the one may

may be resolued or affected, and the other remaine safe.

Doctor. Proceede.

Student. This disease oftentimes happeneth from a small Apoplexi, and then it is called *Paraplexia*, and by this meanes it doth differ from an Apoplexi, because that in the Apoplexi all the parts of the body ingenerall, doth loose sense and motion, yea and the head it selfe, but in the palsie it happeneth for the most part, that the head to retaine both sense, and motion, and the other parts of the bodie to loose both, for if the originall of the spinall marrow be affected, all the parts below the face doe loose both sense and motion. But if a halfe of the same be affected, all the parts adioyning of the same side, doe loose sense and motion. But if in those parts vnaffected, some particular nerue of some part be resolued, then the same part also to which the same Nerue is implanted, is depriued both of sense and motion.

Doct. What is the cause of this disease?

Stud. The cause of this disease for the most part doth proceede from a colde and moyst distemperature, sometimes also it happeneth from an Apostume, or some tumor, which doth compresse the Nerue, or spinall marrow: sometimes from an wound, from falling from aloft, from a fracture, by too hard binding, and from luxation, and percussion, of the Vertebres. And oftentimes it happeneth from thinne and watrish humors deriued from the braine, which doe easily insinuate themselues into the porositie and substance of the Nerues, and so by too much softning and moystning, they are resolued and relaxed, and so receiuing so much moysture, the beginnings of the Nerues are so obstructed, that the passage to the Animall facultie is altogether letted and hindred, vvhich facultie hath his originall from the braine, as it were its first beginning, and as a starre beame floweth from thence, and is diffused into the inferiour parts, to vvhich it doth impart sense and motion, of

Causa.

Paralisis.

which Animall spirit, when any part of the body doe want, presently it becommeth weake and feeble, and without motion: sometimes also this disease commeth by grosse humours, vvhich are impacted in the Nerues, doe cause obstruction, and so hindreth the passage of the Animall spirits. Sometimes also this disease doth happen from grosse spirits, &c.

Doct. Proceede now to the cure of the palsie?

Cura. Paralysis. *Stud.* If the palsie happen to a man that is of a plethorick body, and full of flesh, and of a sanguine temperature, and vvhich in times past, by much feeding and large Diet, hath heaped vp much bloud, and hot humors, I then cause (according to *Ætius*, *Trallianus*, and *Auicen*, their counsell) a veine to be opened in the arme of the sound side, and *Phlebotomia.* draw bloud by degrees, because that nature may thereby send the matter from the part that is hurt, vnto the part that is sound, for by that meanes the matter being dispersed, is made weaker, and so is the sooner resolued by the *Nota.* strong facultie of the sound part: and therefore those that doe imagine, that by opening the veine in the sound part, or by frictions or rubbings, the palsie may be brought thither also, are very much deceiued, because they doe not perceiue, that the vertue being dispersed, is of lesse force then when it is conioyned together. Wherefore with these frictions the matter is drawne, and dispersed to the sound part, which being the strongest, doth the more easily shift away the matter, and thereby cure the part affected.

Wherefore I doe aduise, that presently after bleeding, or if perhaps the Patient haue not bled, yet neuertheless frictions & rubbings must be made in the sound part, whereby the matter is diuerted; and also light rubbings, & frictions, must be vsed to the parts affected, whereby naturall heat may the better be excited, and stirred vp, to resolue the matter of the disease, that the passages being thereby made open, the spirits may haue way to the member, and to bring life vnto the same.

Doct.

Doct. What must be done after bloud-letting?

Stud. Then wee must giue to the Patient this purging medicine following, or such like.

Doct. But must not the matter be first digested before it be purged?

Stud. In all colde diseases, we must not expect or waite vntill the matter be digested, wherefore the most part of the humours doe offend by their abundance, and before they be digested the patient may dye, therefore wee may boldly in the beginning giue vnto the patient these Pils, which although they be not very strong, yet they are fittest to be administred at the first. *Nota.*

℞. *Pilularum de hiera simpl.* ʒ ij. Pils in the Palsie.
Agarici trochiscat. ʒ ß.
Misce cum Syrupo de Stœchade, & fiant pil. v. which must be giuen to the Patient at midnight.

This first euacuation being performed, the matter may be further digested with this syrup following, for the space of seauen dayes together.

℞. *Oximellis simplicis,* Syrup.
Mellis ros. colati,
Syrupi de Stœchade an. ʒ ß.
Aquarum Hyssopi, Betonicæ,
Bugloss æ, an, ʒ i. *Misce.*

I giue this medicine because the matter is flegmaticke and flowing from the head.

Doct. How when the matter is digested?

Stud. Then afterwards I giue vnto the patient these pils.

℞. *Pilularum Cochiarum.* Pils.
Pil. de hiera Nicol.
Agarici trochis. an. ʒ i.
Diagridij gran. i. ß.
Misce cum syrup. de Stœchade.
Fiant pil. numero quinque.
And giue them as before.

Doct. But may not the Palsie proceede sometimes of Choler?

Stud. It hapneth sometimes also, that the Palsie may proceede of choler, for it doth follow cholericke Feuers, as a *Crisis*, when the matter is sent to the originall of the nerues, but that is not vsuall. But to proceede, the body (as I haue said) must be purged more then once, for the disease is Cronicall and long, and therefore we must giue such things as haue propertie to purge flegme, as these Pils following.

℞. *Pilularum fœtidarum*, (for they draw away rotten and putrified humours.)

Pilularum de Sagapena.
Pilularum de Hiera,
cum agarico, an. ʒ ij. *cum*
Syrupo de Stœchade, fiat
Massa parua.

Of which the patient may take a dragme at a time, twise or thrise in a moneth. We must not forget also to apply to the parts affected, and to that side of the head, such things as haue propertie to strengthen and drye, eyther by bags, by vnctions, or caps. We must not neglect the Cautier to be applyed to the head for a *Fontanel*, in like manner, *Masticatoris* and *Errhinis*, &c. We apply also to the member resolued, *Drepax*, and some *Sinapismus*, to bring heate and strength to the part, beginning first with the gentler sort, as with oyle of Cinamon, Succinum, oyle of Nutmegs, of Coste, and *Oleum Vulpinum*, also your neruall oyntments, as chiefely *Vnguentum Martiatum*.

Sanilum.
Litus.
Cucufa.

Doct. Shew me a *Synapismus*.

Stud. I will.

℞. *Ficuum*, ʒ ij.
Macerentur vno die in aqua,
deinde terantur, addend. Sinapi, ʒ i. for strong bodyes and inueterate Palsies: but for women and children, a lesser quantitie of Muster-seede will serue, as *Sinapi* ʒ ß. and so

so make a *Sinapisme*, to bring heate to the member resolued.

But if you please, for that purpose we may affixe a Cupping glasse, first, to the originall of the mouing nerues, then to the parts that follow, and so descending by little and little to the part affected.

This water following is approued to be of great vertue in the Palsie, if the patient take euery morning a spoonefull or two thereof.

Aquæ theriacal.

℞. *Florum Anthos, lib.* i.
Theriacæ veteris, ℥ i.
Aquæ Saluiæ, lib. ij.

Let all be distilled in *Balneæ Mariæ*, and reserue it to your vse. Bathes of Sulphur are very much commended, so that they be prepared with proportion, as if for an hundred pints of water, you take sixe pounds of Sulphur. But I thinke that for the Palsie, the naturall Bathes of our owne Countrey, and especially the Kings Bath, in Sommersetshire, to be better then any artificiall bath. Wee must take heed that the patient drinke no wine before the foureteenth day, but let him in the place thereof, vse *Mulsa*, in which *Mulsa.* shall be boyled certaine bundles of Maioram, and so prepare it with proportion, as for one pint of water to take an ounce of honey, and so to boyle it till the honey be clarified, which will be by the consumption of the third part.

Doct. What dyet must the patient vse?

Stud. The patients dyet must be such: first, the ayre Dyet. must be hot and dry, and perfumes must be vsed of cloues, of Rosemary, and such like: his meate must be heating and drying, he may eate of Chickins roasted, Capons, Hens, Birds of the mountaine, new layed egges; hee must auoid Porke, fish, and all other meates that are phlegmaticke, and the Patients dyet must be very thinne, for the first tenne dayes, for hunger and thirst in this disease is a good remedie.

Doct. I meruaile that in all your cure of the Palsie, you make

make some mention of Clysters, when they are the safest and the readiest meanes of cure.

Stud. Surely I am perswaded that a Clyster is much auaileable in this disease, and therefore the Clyster vsed in the Apoplexi, may serue in the Palsie, so that we must consider that the one must be stronger in the Apoplexi then in the Palsie, as for example:

Clyster in the Palsie.

℞. *Saluiæ Maioranæ, Hyssopi, Calamenthæ,*
Centaurei minoris, an. M. i. ʃ8.
Agarici albi. ʒʃ8.
Florum Camomeli.
Meliloti, Stœchados, an. M. i.
Fiat decoction ad lib. i. *Colaturæ addatur benedict. Laxatiuæ, Electuarij, Elescoph, an.* ʒ vi.
Olei Liliorum, ℥ iij.
Vini Maluatici, ℥ iij. ʃ8.
Salis communis, ʒʃ8.
Misceantur, & fiat Enema.

Which may be administred twise a weeke vntill the patient be recouered.

Also *Gargarisms* haue some place in this cure, as:

Gargarism.

℞. *Seminis Sinapi, Staphisagriæ, an.* ʒ i.
Pyrethri, ʒ i. ʃ8. *Turbith.* ∋ iiij.
Rutæ, Saluiæ, Hyssopi, an. M. ij. ʃ8.
Fiat decoctio in aquæ ſ. q. ad lib i. ʃ8.
Addendo Oximellis simpl. Squillitici, mellis ros. an. ʒ i.
Fiat Gargarismus.

Also Sneesing is very auaileable.

Sternutamentum

℞. *Nigellæ romanæ.* ʒ i.
Cyclaminis, ʒʃ8.
Piperis albi, Castorei, an. ∋ i.

Let all be mixed with honey, and amoint the nostrils, and it will prouoke sneesing.

And thus much of the Palsie.

Doct. We will now proceede with Melancholy: shew me what disease that melancholy is.

Of

Of Melancholy.

Conference. V.

Student.

Melancholy, is a delirium or doltiſhneſſe, which ſpringeth of a melancholicke humour without a Feuer, which doth ſo perturbe the ſeate of the minde, that the ſpeech and actions are altogether voide of reaſon, and they are formed alſo with feare and griefe: and this diſeaſe is ſo called from the matter it ſelfe, and the cauſe from whence it is accuſtomed to grow.

Long vſe and cuſtome hath noted three differences of Melancholicks. The firſt ſpringeth from a groſſe, fœculent, and melancholicke bloud, congeſted and heaped vp together in the braine it ſelfe: for the melancholike iuyce is oftentimes more then dryed by the inward heat of the braine, and the reſt of the bloud remaining without hurt: the ſecond kinde hapneth when all the veynes of the body are perfuſed with melancholicke bloud, which for the moſt part hapneth by the fault of the liuer, whiles it doth engender ſuch groſſe, fœculent, and foule bloud: or elſe of the Splene, when by weakeneſſe or obſtruction, it cannot receiue thoſe dregs and feacies, from which the Lyuer ſhould purge it ſelfe: the third is called *Hypochondriaca Melancholia*, of which we will ſpeake elſe-where. Three differences of Melancholy.

Doct. Tell me the cauſe of this diſeaſe?

Stud. The cauſe doth oftentimes proceede from a cold and dry diſtemperature of the braine, eyther naturally, or from ſome Melancholicke humour, and the vapours thereof ingendred in ſome other parts, from whence thoſe black and filthy vapours doe creepe into the ſeate of the minde, from which the braine is likeaffected: and it hapneth from *Cauſe.*

the immoderate heate of the head, so that the bloud is become burnt, and by that meanes there are made Melancholike vapours. Much sorrow, too much watching, exceeding cares, with the stopping of menstrues and hemorads, may cause this sickenesse, for a maligne vapour sent from the vicious and corrupt bloud, doth by little and little hurt the minde. Also the vse of noughty meates and euill nourishment, and chiefely when they are not well digested, is oftentimes the cause of this euill. Widdowes, and such as burne with immoderate loue, are often affected with this euill, and the reason is, because the minde is too much oppressed with griefe & cares. Oftentimes also it doth happen through the fault of the Lyuer, when through some great distemperature it doth engender abundance of melancholicke bloud. Sometimes it hapneth by the fault of the Splene, when it draweth vnto it great abundance of melancholicke bloud and cannot expell it, from whence in time it doth perfuse the same into all the parts of the body.

Doct. Goe now to the cure of *Melancholy?*

Cura. *Stud.* The Physitian must consider first from what humour this disease hath its originall, whether from bloud adusted, whose signes shall appeare after this manner: there will be rednesse of the face, and eyes, heate appearing in the parts adioyning to the head, largenesse and fulnesse of the veynes, the Patient will laugh much, which is one of the chiefest signes that Melancholy doth happen by the adustion of bloud: but if none of these signes shall appeare, or if they doe appeare but smally, together with some furor, fiercenesse, and the minde troubled, then we may imagine that it doth proceede from adust choler. But if none of these doe appeare, but rather a coldnesse doth affect the whole body, together with feare, sorrow, and bewayling of the Patient, we may then iudge that it doth proceede from adustion of naturall Melancholy.

Doct. But how if it doth proceede from adusted bloud, what course must be taken?

Stud.

Stud. Then this course must be taken, we open the *vena nigra*, where we thinke to be abundance of bloud, but before, we giue this, or the like Clyster.

Clister in Melancholia ex sanguine aduſto.

℞. *Epithymi, Thimi, florum Stœchados,*
Violariæ, Mercurialis, fol. Maluæ, an. M. i.
Furfuris groſſi ligati in petia, M. i. ſ8.
bulliant in ſufficienti quantitate aquæ ad lib. i.
Colaturæ adde caſſiæ nouiter extract. ℥ i. ſ8.
Olei Violati, ℥ iij.
Sacchar. Rub. ℥ i. ſ8.
Salis communis, ℥ i.
Vitelli oui, N. i.
Et fiat Clyſter.

Doct. How for bloud-letting?

Stud. In bloud-letting we muſt obſerue the counſell of *Hippocrates*, and other antient Doctors: for if the bloud doe appeare cleare, pure and ſubtile, cloſe vp the veyne, becauſe that then the good bloud ſhall be auoyded, and the groſſe and foule remaine behinde: but if the bloud ſhall appeare groſſe, blacke, and turbulent, then we may draw bloud to the quantitie, of fiue or ſixe ounces at a time, hauing alwayes conſideration of the ſtrength and age of the Patient. *Nota.*

This bloud-letting being performed, we muſt proceede to digeſt the matter offending, and our digeſtiues muſt haue a propertie of heating and moyſtning, and more moyſtning then heating, becauſe the humour which doth offend in Melancholy, is made cold and dry by aduſtion, although for the moſt part it hapneth from hot humours, therefore our helps that we giue muſt be more moiſt then hot, for which purpoſe we may giue this Syrup.

℞. *Syrupi de Pomis ſimpl.* ℥ i.
Syrupi Violati. ℥ ſ8.
Aquar. Bugloſſ. Violarum.
Borraginis an. ℥ i.
Miſce.

Syrup. Violar. ad som. Concil.

And this must be noted, that in euery administration of Syrups against Melancholy, wee must giue the syrup of Violets, because those that are sicke of that disease, for the most part cannot sleepe, and therefore we must endeuour to prouoke sleepe, which is done by the administration of the syrup of Violets. After two dayes of the first bloud-letting, we may open the *Cephalicke* veyne of the right arme, and draw there-hence three or foure ounces of bloud. But we must continue our digestiue syrup for sixe dayes together, and in the seauenth day, when there doth appeare signes of concoction we giue this purgation following.

Purgation in Melancholy.

℞. *Diasenæ Lenitiui,* ʒ vi.
Specierum hieræ simpl. Gal. ʒ ij.
Confect. Ham. ʒ ij. ß.
Dissoluantur cum decoctione communi florum & fructuum, q. s.
Cum qua bulliant folliculorum semc.
Epithymi, Polypodij quer. an. ʒ ij.
Et fiat potus, which shall be giuen to the Patient two houres before day-light.

The next day after, let the Patient take in the morning this Bole.

℞. *Diabuglossati, Sacchari Violati, an.* ʒ ij.
Misce.

The euening of that day, before supper, let the extreame parts of the Patient be washed hot with this decoction following:

℞. *Ros. Rubrar. florum Violarum, florum Stæchados, Arab. Maioranæ, flor. Camomeli Anethe. an. M. i. ß bulliant in aqua fontis, ad consumptionem tertiæ partis, & reseruetur ad vsum.*

This order of washing must be continued for three daies together.

Doct. But what if the Patient in the meane time be depriued of sleepe, what must we doe?

Stud.

Stud. Then in the euening after ſupper, wee muſt vſe ſomniferous Lotions, firſt from the knees downwards, and afterwards from the ſhoulders to the hands, and vpon the noſtrils and temples, and the ſame muſt be applied hot.

℞. *Florum Camomillæ, Florum Violarum, Florum Anethi, Florum Nenupharis an. M.* i. ſ8. Prouokers of ſleepe.
Corticum radicum Mandragoræ M. ſ8.
Semmis Hyoſcyami albi ℥ſ8. *Miſce. Et bulliant in ſufficienti quantitate aqua, ad conſumptionem tertiæ partis*, and keepe it to your vſe.

Or after the firſt waſhing, you may annoynt the temples, and the pulſes of the hands, and the feet with this oyntment.

℞. *Olei Nenupharis, vnguenti Popul. an.* ℥ſ8. *Croci, opij an. gr.* iij. *Miſce pro linimento.*

Foure or fiue dayes being paſt, and the diſeaſe ſtill continuing, we may open the hæmorodiall veines, according to the counſell of *Hip.*

Nephriticis et Melancholicis Hæmorrhoides, bonum.

Wherefore either by inciſion, or elſe by leeches, we may draw away the quantity of three ounces of bloud.

And it is to be remembred, that continually once a weeke wee muſt purge the body, with this or the like medicine.

℞. *Hiæræ ſimpl. Gal.* ℥i. Purgat.
Confect. Hamech. ʒi. ſ8.
Miſce et deſoluantur cum aqua decoctionis Epithymi fol. ſennæ et Polypodij querc.

And thus much may ſuffice for Melancholy, proceeding of aduſted bloud.

Doct. But what if the diſeaſe proceede from the aduſtion of naturall Melancholy?

Stud. Then we proceede after this manner. And firſt in this Melancholy, it is not to be feared, although the Patient be exceeding ſorrowfull, with the expreſſing of much feare. Wherefore if you ſhall perceiue the ſicke to be full

of bloud, we may open a veine, and not otherwise, because that the cure of Melancholy doth consist much in the generation of good bloud: but if it be requisite that the Patient must bleede, wee must open the Basilica veine of the left arme, because the spleene doth consent much in this disease. But as concerning bloud-letting: if the bloud shall goe forth cleare and subtill, we must stay the bleeding, but if it be foule, grosse, and turbulent, then we may draw forth the quantity of foure ounces at the most, least wee should ouer coole and dry the body, and alwayes prouided that before bloud-letting, a Clyster must be administred.

Afterwards wee may giue for seauen dayes together this digestiue syrup:

℞. *Syrupi de pomis Compositi.*
Syrupi de fumo terræ.
Violati, de Epithymo an. ℥ß.
Aquarum Melissæ, Buglossæ, Borraginis an. ℥i.
Misce.

When the Patient hath taken this syrup foure times, we must open the Hæmorads vvith the Leeches, and draw there-hence the quantity of foure ounces of foule melancholicke bloud.

The seauenth day, vvhen there shall appeare signes of Concoction, vvee may prepare for the day following this Medicine:

℞. *Quatuor florum cordialium an. M.* ß.
Myrobalanorum indar. Chebul. ana ʒij. *Epithymi, thymi, fol. Sena, Polypody quer. an.* ʒi.
Bulliant in sufficienti quantitati lactis caprini, vsque ad Consumptionem medietatis, then let it be strayned, and in the strayning dissolue.
Diaseme lenitiui ʒ vi.
Confectionis Hamech ʒij.
Epithymi subt. pul.
Pulueris hieræ simpl.
Galeni an. ʒi ß. *et fiat potus.*

After-

Afterwards the Patient may take once a weeke in the morning, halfe an ounce of this following Medicine, dissolued in Goates milke:

℞. *Tryphera magnæ* ℥i.
Specierum hieræ simpl. Gal. ℥i. ß.
Epithymi —— ℥ß.
Puluerizentur puluerizanda.

And with as much Suger as shall suffice make a mixture, and this Medicine besides his purging quality doth prouoke sleepe, of which the Phisitian must be alwayes very carefull.

Besides, the Phisitian must remember to comfort the fountaine of life, with this Cordiall *Epithem*, morning and euening before meate.

℞. *Aquæ Melissæ, Buglossæ, Borraginis, Rosarum an. lib.* ß. A Cordiall Epithem.
Quatuor florum Cordialium ana ʒi. *ligni aloes, beben albi, et rubri, ossis de corde cerui an.* ℈ij. *Croci* ℈i. *aceti opt.* ʒiij.
Vini albi odoriferi ʒiiij.
Puluerizeritur puluerizanda, et misce pro Epithemate cordis.

And for that purpose the Phisitian may giue to the Patient of this mixture morning and euening, three houres before meate.

℞. *Diamusci dulcis.* } *an.* ʒij.
Diamusci amari. }
Diabuglossati.
Diaborraginati.
Sacchari Violati an. ʒi.
Misce cum syrupo de pomis, et fiat Electuarium.

In like manner, if this pouder following be giuen in a new laide egge or two, euery morning, the Patient so continuing, vntill he haue taken 101. egges, it shall be very profitable against absolute Melancholy.

℞. *Epithymi, thymi an.* ʒij.

Sacchari

Pouder against Melancholy.

Sacchari albiſ. ℥i.
Croci ſubt. pul. gran. iij.
Cinamoni electi ℥i.

Let all be made into fine pouder, and giue a little thereof in the fore-ſaid egges. And thus much for the cure of Melancholy.

Doct. The next is the *Vertigo*: proceede and tell mee what diſeaſe is that *Vertigo?*

Of Scotoma, or Vertigo.

Conference VI.

Student.

Vertigo or *Scotoma*, is a diſeaſe wherein the Patient doth imagine, that his head and all other things doth turne round, and the braine and ſenſe is ſo affected, that the eyes grow darke and dimme, that if the Patient be not ſtayed vp, he falleth to the ground. Wherefore this diſeaſe ſeemeth properly to be a Symtom, which doe appertaine to the hurt, action of the viſible and motiue faculty, which being hurt, the head and all things elſe ſeeme to be turned about (but corruptly) becauſe he ſeemeth to ſee that which naturally it cannot ſee. Some make a difference betweene *Vertigo* aud *Scotoma*, but howſoeuer, they proceede both from the like cauſes, which is from aboundance of hot bloud, and oftentimes alſo from crude humours, and ſuch as are maligne, which are either ingendred in the head, or in ſome ſubiect part of the body: but for the moſt part from the ſtomacke, when as many crudities are ingendred in the ſame. In like manner ſometimes it is cauſed from the mother and wombe, by reaſon of the communitie and colligance thoſe parts doe obtaine with the braine. In like manner accuſtomed excretions ſuppreſſed,

suppressed: all humours from whence are ingendred and eleuated many spirits that are windy and vaporous, hot and grosse, turbulent and maligne, may be the cause of this disease. This sicknesse is very neere to the *Epilepsia*, and as *Galen* writeth, it doth oftentimes end in the Apoplexi.

Doct. Goe to the cure of this disease.

Stud. I vvill first set downe a generall cure, and afterwards a particular. First, we administer a sharpe Clyster, to draw away such excrements as doe obhære in the bowels, and intestines, from whence sharpe vapours and fumes doe ascend vnto the head. Next, wee open a veine, if nothing forbid the contrary. Afterwards we giue such purging medicines, as may auoid the humours offending and ingendring aboundance of vapours. Afterwards by frictions, Cupping glasses, scarifications, and such like, we draw backe the vapours offending into the part that is opposite. Yea, and almost from the very beginning, we apply such things as are astringent to hinder the ascension of vapours vnto the head. Afterwards wee strengthen the stomack, and the head, and discusse the reliques and remainder by *Masticatoris*, *Sternutamenti*, *Nasipurgijs*, and such like ingines. But if this disease hath his originall from the stomacke, as for the most part it happeneth, then we prouoke vomit: but if it spring from the Matrix or other parts, wee must cure it as shall be after declared, if it happen by long fasting, we may giue a crust of bread dipped in wine. *Cura.*

Doct. Set me downe some particular remedies.

Stud. I will: and first a Clyster.

℞. *Rad. acori, Galangæ, angelicæ an.* ʒiiij. *Saluiæ, origani, Menthæ an. M.* i. ſ8. *Florum Betonicæ, Stæchados, Centaurei minor. an. M.* i. *Seminum aniſi, fæniculi, carui an.* ʒi. *agarici* ʒij. *Sem. Carthami* ʒſ8. *Plypodij, Senæ alex. an.* ʒvi. *coquantur in aqua. q. ſ. ad lib.* i. ſ8. *Colaturæ adde pulueris Diaſenæ* ʒij. *hieræ Diacolocynth* ʒi. *Diacathol.* ʒi. and make a Clyster. *Clyster in Vertigine.*

Potio purgans. ℞. *Rad. gram.* ℥ i. *foliorum Endiuiæ, Cichoriæ an. M.* i. ʃ8, *seminum aniſi, fæniculi an.* ʒ iij. *liquiritiæ* ℥ʃ8. *Polypodij quere.* ℥ i. *Rhubarb. electi.* ʒ iij. *coquantur in aquæ q. ſ. ad lib.* ʃ8. *Colaturæ adde ſyrup roſarum ſolutiuar.* ℥ iij. *fiat potio.*

Potio purgans. ℞. *Syrup. Roſ. Laxat.* ℥ ij. *Rhubarb. infuſ. in aqua Endiuiæ non expreſſ.* ℥ i. *flor. anthos, et Cinamomi an.* ϑ ʃ8. *Miſce et fiat potio cum decoctione prunorum et Sebeſten.*

Pils. ℞. *Specierum hieræ ſimpl.* ℥ i.
Agarici trochiſ. ϑ i.
Fiant pil. v. *cum aqua abſinthij*, which muſt be taken an houre before ſupper.

Pils. ℞. *Pil hieræ picræ Gal.*
Pil. aggregat. an. ϑ i. ʃ8.
Syrupi menthæ q. ſ. fiant pil. v.

Mixture to hinder the aſcenſion of vapours. ℞. *Carnis Cidoniorum* ℥ ij.
Conſeruæ Roſ. ℥ i.
Anthos ——— ℥ʃ8.
Aromatici Roſ. ℥ i. ʃ8.
Syrup. Roſ. ℥ i. ʃ8. *Miſceantur*, And make a mixture, of which the Patient may take a dramme after Dinner, and ſo likewiſe after Supper: for it hindereth the Aſcenſion of vapours.

Electuarium. ℞. *Rad. Galanga, Zedariæ an.* ϑ. iiij.
Saluiæ ʒ ij. *Zinziberis condit.* ℥ i.
Nucis muſcat. Cinamomi an. ʒ i.
Sem. pæoniæ ʒ i. ʃ8. *Iuniperi* ʒ i.
Menthæ ϑ i. ʃ8. *ſyrup. roſ. ſimpl. q. ſ. fiat Electuarium molle.*

Lozenges. ℞. *Aromatici roſ. Diarhod. Abbat. ſine Moſcho an.* ʒ i. *Sacchar. albiſ. et aquar. abſinthij q. ſ. fiant tabulæ.*

Naſi purgium. ℞. *Succi betæ, Maioranæ an.* ℥ i. ʃ8. *Succi fol. Cucumeris ſilueſt.* ʒ iij. *Nigellæ Rom.* ʒ i. Mixe them together, and let the Patient draw a little of this vp into the noſtrils: for this will draw from the head.

℞. *Vuarum*

℞. *Vuarum paſſarum enucleatarum* ℥ ij. *Maſticatorum.*
Hyſſopi Origani an. ʒ i.
Acori conditi, ſem. ſynapi an. ʒ i. ſ8.
Piperis, Maſtichis an. ℈ i.
Mellis q.ſ. fiat Maſticatorium.

℞. *Radicum Aſari* ℥ ſ8. *foliorum Betonicæ. Salviæ an.* Gargariſme.
M. i. *Pyrethri, ſeminum ſinapi an.* ʒ ſ8. *Coquantur in q.ſ. aqua ad tertias. Colaturæ adde Oximellis ſquilitici* ℥ ij. and make a Gargariſme.

Of theſe helpes the Phiſitian may make his choyſe at his pleaſure.

Doct. The next is the Phrenſie, let mee heare of your Definition of that diſeaſe.

Of the Phrenſie.

CONFERENCE VII.

Student.

THE Phrenſie is a diſeaſe proceeding from an hot Apoſtume of the braine, and therefore by the opinion of all Phiſitians, it is in vaine to vndertake the cure, and the reaſon is, becauſe it is confirmed in a principall member, wherefore the intention of the Phiſitian muſt be to hinder, that it may not happen, for hauing once taken any man, it is in vaine to enterpriſe any cure.

Doct. What ſignes ſhall the Phiſitian haue to know, when the Patient is enclined to the Phrenſie?

Stud. The ſignes of a Phrenſie to come, are the ſignes of a preſent *Paraphreniſis*, as continuall Head-ach, redneſſe of the face, ouer-much heate, redneſſe of the eyes, with too much appearance of their veynes, ſtating, thirſt, dryneſſe of the tongue, vnquietneſſe, different from wonted *Signa.* *Fixio in tuitus.*

actions, and ſome alienation of the minde, whether theſe things happen by the force of ſome acute Feauer, or from ſome other cauſe, by theſe you ſhall iudge a preſent *Paraphreniſis*, and a feare of a Phrenſie to come.

Wherefore if theſe ſignes ſhall appeare, from the beginning, we muſt vſe all our indeuour to diuert and retract the euill vapours aſcending to the braine, or of any other matter inclining to the head, and therefore firſt, wee may iniect this Clyſter.

Clyſter in Phrenitide.

℞. *Florum Camomillæ, flor. Stachad.*
Roſ. Rub. an. M. i. ſ8.
Fol. Malue, Violarum, Mercurialis, an. M. i.
Furfuris groſſi ligati in petia. M. ij.

Let all boyle in a ſufficient quantitie of water, to the conſumption of the halfe, then ſtraine it, and take x. ℥. of the ſtraining, *Olei Violati*, ℥ iij. and this is to be conſidered, that the Oyle of Violets is moſt requiſite in the Phrenſie; becauſe the patient is ſubiect to watchfulneſſe, and Violets doe prouoke ſleepe, but in ſleepie diſeaſes it muſt be auoyded, as in *Subeth*, *Litargia*, and ſuch like: take alſo *Caſſiæ nouiter tracta, hiare ſimpl. Galeni an.* ℥ſ8. *vitellum oui, N.* i. *Sacchari Rubei*, ℥ i. ſ8. *Salis communis*, ʒ ij. *Miſce*, and iniect a Clyſter.

The Clyſter being adminiſtred we muſt conſider whether there be a fulneſſe of the whole body or no: if there be, we may open the Common veyne, or the *vena nigra*, of the right arme, and draw out fiue ℥. of bloud.

Doct. What after bloud-letting?

Stud. Then an houre after the patient may take this Bole following.

Bolus.

℞. *Sacchari roſati*,
Conſeruæ acetoſitatis citri,
Diabuglaſſati an. ℥ ij. *Miſce*,
And giue it to the patient.

The next day following the ſtomacke being faſting, wee may open the *Cephalica* veine in the right arme, and draw forth

forth the quantitie of iiij. ℥ of bloud, which being done, foure houres after let him take the fore-ſaid Clyſter: And about the euening following let there be vſed frications, a little before ſupper, beginning from the necke and ſhoulders, and ſo deſcend downewards by the buttockes and thighes, and to the calues of the legges.

The day following, which is the third day from the firſt bloud-letting, we may giue the patient in the morning to auoid Choler moued vpwards, this *Bolus*.

Bolus againſt Choler.

℞. *Floris Caſſiæ nouiter extractæ*, ℥ vi.
Rubarb. electi. ℥ i.
Spicæ, gran. vij. *Electuarij roſ.*
Meſue, electuarij de ſucco Roſarum, an. ℈ iiij.
Mixe it, and giue it to the patient.

This euacuation being performed, let the Patient reſt all that day from any other medicines, except you caſt in ſome waſhing Clyſter, after this or the like manner:

Cliſtere ablueus.

℞. *Aqua Hordij, lib.* i.
Sacchar. rub. ℥ i. ſ.
Vitelli oui. N. i.

The fourth day, if the diſeaſe doe as yet perſeuer, the *Hœmorodial* veynes muſt be opened, out of which muſt be drawne three ounces of bloud.

Doct. But what if for all this buſineſſe, the diſeaſe doe ſtill remaine, what muſt we doe?

Stud. If the diſeaſe doe ſtill remaine, then wee are to doubt of an *Apoſtum* ingendred, wherefore we muſt be bold to cut the *vena recta* of the fore-head, and to draw out ther- *Vena recta frontis.*
hence the quantitie of ℥ iij. of bloud, for by this bloud-letting all euill affects of the head (for the moſt part) are remoued.

Doct. But how ſhall we doe to procure ſleepe to the patient?

Stud. Then let him vſe the courſe to prouoke it, as we haue deſcribed in the cure of Melancholy, for aboue all things, if it be poſſible, the patient muſt be brought to ſleep.

But if those things faile, we must at his entrance into bed, foment his eares and nostrils with this wine following, being warme.

℞, *Vini albi Dulcis, lib.* ß.
Sem. Hyoscyanni. alb. ʒ ij.

Boyle it to the consumption of the halfe, and being strained, reserue it to your vse.

But if with these remedies the Patient cannot sleepe, let him take this drinke following, which doth not vsually faile in that purpose.

℞. *Syrupi de Papauere,*
Aquæ lactucæ, an. ℥ ij.
Misce pro vna vice.

But if all these courses taken, will not serue the turne, commend the sicke patient vnto God, and to the Priest. And so much of the Phrensie.

Doct. The next is the *Lethargie*: tell me what disease the *Lethargie* is.

Of the Lethargie.

CONFERENCE. VIII.

Student.

LEthargia, or *Veternus*, is a disease which doth prouoke the Patient to sleepe without resistance, and it bringeth with it forgetfulnesse, and for the most part depriuation of all the senses. I haue knowne some, that being demanded their names, could not remember them.

Doct. But why should the Patient be depriued of sense?

Stud. The reason is, because not onely the hinder-part of the head is affected, and therefore principally the memorie

morie, is hurt; but also the fore-part of the head, by which it hapneth that the sicke doth not perfectly feele. This Disease hath a great affinitie with *Caros* and *Subeth*, but that it doth differ onely in this, that the sicke that doth labour with *Caros*, is void of Feauer, but indeede a more profound necessitie of sleeping doth possesse him, for being pricked he is scarce stirred, and being asked any question, hee doth not answere. In like manner the Lethargie doth differ from the Phrensie, in that the Phrenticke cannot sleepe, but the affected with the Lithargie, doth alwayes sleepe. *Caros* or deepe sleepe, is scarce discerned from the Apoplexi, for herein also not onely sense and motion is lost, but also the function of the minde. Yet neuertheless in this it doth differ, that he that is affected with Caros doth breath freely and easily, but the contrary doth happen in the Apoplexi.

Doct. Proceede to the cure.

Stud. First of all, I cause the Patient to be purged with this or the like Clyster, and afterwards if bloud doe abound I open the Cephalicke veyne: the Clyster is this.

Clyster in Lithargia.

℞. *Radicis Lilij albi*, ℥ i.
Foliorum Rutæ, Saluiæ,
Maioranæ, Maluæ, an. M. i.
Florum Roris marini, Camomillæ, Meliloti,
Centaurei minoris, Betonicæ, an. M. ʃ8.
Seminum Lini Anisi, an. ℥ʃ8.
Agarici albi & leuis, ʒ iij.
Polypodij quer. ℥ i.
Colocynthid. ʒ i. ʃ8.

Coquantur in aqua q. s. ad lib. i. ʃ8. *Colaturæ adde hierę Logod.* ℥ ʃ8. *Electuarij indi*, ʒ v. *mellis ros.* ℥ i. ʃ8. *Olei Rutacei*, ℥ iij. *Castorei*, ʒ i. ʃ8. *fiat Clyster.*

Suppositorum.

Or for present want in the place thereof, we may make a Suppositorie in this manner.

℞. *Mellis*, ℥ i. ʃ8.
Hierę Logodij, ʒ ʃ8.
Salis communis, ʒ i.

The

The matter is also to be drawne away by vomit.

Vomitorium. ℞. *Decocti Raphani*, ℥ v.
Oximellis simpl. Squillitici, an. ℥ ß.
Olei communis, ℥ ij.
Misceantur, & fiat vomitorium.

Or by purgation by stoole, after this manner:

℞. *Pil. Hieræ picræ Gal.* ϑ ij.
Hieræ Diacolocynthides.
Pil. Cochiarum, Castorei, an. ϑ ß.
Cum syrupi Stœchad. q. s. fiant pil. viij.

Doct. But what if the patient cannot swallow them?

Stud. Then wee dissolue them in ℥ iij. *aquæ Betonicæ, mellis rosati*, ℥ i. and so giue it to the Patient to drinke, for the facultie sensitiue is now so stupified, that the patient doth scarce taste the bitternesse: or,

Potio purgans. ℞. *Hieræ Logod.* ϑ i. ß.
Hieræ Diacolocynthides ϑ ij.
Decocti Serpylli, Pulegij,
Betonicæ, Calendulæ, ℥ iij.
Syrupi Stœchados, ℥ i.
fiat Haustus.

Also wee may vse diuersions with frications, and painefull ligatures, so that wee must begin first at the *Nucha*, and downe the shoulders, and so descending to the extremities: Also we may apply to both the shoulders cupping-glasses, with scarifications, and especially in the beginning. And also we must prouoke accustomed euacuations, if they be retained, such as are the Hemorhods and menstrues. In this disease the Physitian must be exceeding carefull and diligent, for this disease being acute, doth quickly kill. There must also care be had of the patients dyet: the ayre must be cleare, hot and dry, it must be rectified with Iuniper, with Rosemary, and Bay leaues: the sicke must be lodged in a light chamber, in which there is noise and tumult, and much speaking, that if it be possible he may be kept from deepe sleepe: also Tyme, Organum, and Penniryoll boyled in vineger

vineger, and put into his noſtrils doth draw away the matter: we may alſo giue him things to neeſe, and to gargariſe, as for example:

℞. *Nucis Muſcatæ, Piperis, an.* ℈ ij.
Ellebori albi, ana gran. vi.
Caſtorei, Pyrethri, Nigellæ, an. ℈ ß.
Fiat ſternutatorium medicamentum.

Of which caſt a little quantitie into his noſtrils, to procure him to ſneeſe, which muſt be done after the body is well purged, and not in the beginning, for then it may be dangerous to ſtirre vp too much the hurtfull matter. Alſo the Gargariſme preſcribed in the *Vertigo*, may be vſed in this diſeaſe.

Mixtura.

℞. *Confectionis Anacardinæ,*
Mithridati, an. ʒ i.
Aureæ Alexandrinæ, ℈ ij.
Sinapi, Radicum Pyrethri, an. ℈ i.
Hieræ picræ Gal. ʒ i.
Mellis parum, fiat mixtura.

With which the tongue and the palate of the patient muſt be annointed and rubbed.

In like manner it may be done onely with muſter-ſeede bruſed, and mixed with honey and vineger.

Alſo an oyntment may be framed.

Vomitorium.

℞. *Olei de Lateribus,* ℥ i.
Olei de Euphorby, ʒ iij.
Ol. Irini, Laurini, an. ʒ vi.
Caſtorei, ℈ i. ß.
Euphorbij gran. x.
Nucis muſcatæ, ℈ ij.
fiat Vnguentum, and annoint the head.

And thus much of the *Lethargie.*

Doct. The next is *Catalepſis*: tell me what diſeaſe that is?

Of Catelepsis or Congelation.

Conference. IX.

Student.

Catalepsis, or congelation is a certaine sodaine detention both of the minde and of the body, with the which whosoeuer is taken, doth retaine the same figure of the parts of the body, which he had when he was taken, whether hee were sitting or lying: from whence it is called of some, *Stupor vigilans*, because the sicke is become senseless, and altogether without motion. This Disease doth agree with the Apoplexi in this, that as in the Apoplexi, so in this disease, the patient doth lose both sense and motion: But herein it differeth, because here the spirits themselues are also affected, for they are congealed, and doe remaine as it were still and quiet: and in whatsoeuer part of the body they are taken, the parts doe remaine cold, stiffe and hard; but this hapneth contrary in the Apoplexi, which is onely because they are hindred through obstruction, by which cause they are lesse diffused to the parts of the body, and so they leaue those parts as it were laxe and resolued, and not cold or stiffe as hapneth in this *Catalepsis*. Also in the Apoplexi, the members themselues may chauge the first figure, when the spirits may be safe. The eyes also in those that are Apoplecticke, are closed vp.

Doct. What is the cause of this disease?

Causa. *Stud.* The cause of this disease is an exceeding cold and dry distemperature of the braine, by which it hapneth, as well the braine as the animall spirits to be both congealed and dryed, and not alone to be cooled. And Melancholy which is cold and dry, is oftentimes the cause of this euill.

Also

Also an exceeding cold and dry ayre: a commixion also of phlegme with yealow choler, when together they doe immoderately abound, doe bring this disease, these fore-said causes doe not onely coole the braine and animall spirits, but they doe dry, and as it were congeale them. This disease if it be not speedily cured, doth kill the patient.

Doct. Now goe to the cure.

Stud. For the cure of this most grieuous euill, wee must administer those things that doe moderately heate and moisten: and aboue all, wee must at the beginning administer this, or the like Clyster:

℞. *Florum Camomeli, Meliloti, an. M.* ij. *Clyster.*
Mercurialis, M. i. ſ8.
Saluiæ, Thymi, Pulegij, Epithymi, an. M. i.
Polypodij querc. Senæ Alex. an. ʒ v.
Epithymi, ʒ ij. *Elleberi nigri,* ʒ i.
Coquantur in aquæ q. ſ. ad lib. i. ſ8.
Colaturæ addantur confect. hamech, ʒ iij.
Hieræ Logodij, ʒ vij. ſ8.
Mellis roſ. olei com. an. ʒ ij.
Salis com. ʒ i. ſ8. *Miſceantur,*
fiat Clyſter.

Afterwards we vse great clamours and noyse, with painefull bindings and rubbings of the extreame parts, the better to excite and stirre vp the sicke: for that purpose also we administer neesings and sternutaments. Also if this disease proceede of abundance of bloud, and if that wee finde strength, we open the *Cephalica* veyne, and draw forth bloud in abundance: next, we mittigate the euill with comfortable oyntments, and such as doe resolue, as:

℞. *Olei Anethi, Camomeli, Liliorum an.* ʒ i. ſ8. *Vnguentum.*
*Coquantur in ij*s. *Hyſſopi, Thymi, & Serpylli, aliquid*
poſtea addatur Colaturæ Caſtorei, ∋ i. ſ8.
fiat vnguentum.

With the which annoint the hinder part of the head from the beginning.

Vnguentum. Or Rx. *Olei liliacei, sambucini, an.* ℥ i.
Castorei ʒ ij. *Euphorbij,* ϑ i. *aquæ vitæ* ℥ ß. *fiat vnguentum molle cum cera.*

Sometime also a Bath being indifferently hot, framed of common oyle, is prescribed for this purpose.

Doct. What must be done afterwards?

Stud. Then if we perceiue that the Patient be somewhat altered to the better, we administer things that may prepare the humours, to make them more obedient to nature, and those doe wee giue for foure or fiue dayes together.

Doct. Shew me a medicine for that purpose?

Stud. Rx. *Radicum Buglossæ, boraginis an.* ℥ i. ß.
Florum stæchados, buglossæ, Cardui benedict. Epithymi an. M. i. *Seminum feniculi* ʒ v. *hordij mundati,* ℥ ij. *vuarum pass. enucleat.* ℥ i. ß.
Coquantur in aqua buglossæ et betonicæ q. s. ad. lib. i. *addatur sub. finem Coctura vini albi et tenuis parum in quo nux muscata* 12. *hor. spatio infusa fuerit Colaturæ expressæ permisceantur Syrupi stæchados,* ℥ iij.
Syrupi de Epithymo ℥ i. ß. *et fiat Potio.*

Doct. Let me know your purge for that purpose.

Stud. Rx. *Diasenæ* ʒ iij *confect. hamech.* ʒ ij. *Syrupi de Epithymo* ℥ i.
Aquarum betonicæ, Cardui Benedict. an. ℥ i. ß. *et fiat hausius. Detur. in aurora.* Or
Rx. *Foliorum senæ* ℥ ß. *Rhubarbari elect.* ʒ i. *Polypodij quercini* ʒ iiij. *Florum stæchad. M.* ß.
Nucis muscatæ ʒ ij. ß. *Infundantur in prædict. decocti lib.* i. *horis duodecem Colaturæ addantur Syrupi stæchados* ℥ iij. *fiat potio.*

Afterwards we giue such things as are comfortable, and haue property to comfort the braine and the heart.

Cordial. Elect. Rx. *Diamusci dulcis lætificantis Gal.* ϑ. ij.
Radicum angelicæ ϑ ß. *Aquarum Cardui benedict. angelicæ et Sacchari albissimi q. s. fiat Electuarium in tabulis.*

tabulis. Sumat morsellum vnum donec Conualuerit mane et vesperi. Or

℞. *Theriacæ* ʒ i. *Diamusci dulc. Latificantis Gal. an.* ʒ ij. ʃ8. *Cordial. Elect.*
Conservæ buglossæ anthos an. ʒ ʃ8.
Syrupi Buglossati q. s. ad Electuarij mollis consistentiam.

And thus much briefly of *Catalepsis.*

Doct. Goe forwards to *Spasmus* or the Crampe: tell me what disease is the Crampe?

Of Spasmus, or the Crampe.

Conference X.

Student.

Spasmus, conuulsion, or distension of the Nerues and sinewes, is a disease, when the whole body is plucked and drawne together towards the braine, vvhich is the beginning of the Nerues and sinewes, and of voluntary motion. This disease is threefolde, the one is when the necke together with the rest of the body, is intended forward and backward, so that it doth remaine immoueable, and cannot bend into neither part, and this Crampe is called *Distentio.* Another is, when the head and body is drawne forwards, and is called *Tensio ad anteriora.* The third is, vvhen the head is drawne backwards vpon the shoulders, and that is called *Tensio ad posteriora.* Sometimes the Crampe doth happen particularly in some member. It is manifest therefore that the Crampe as well generall as particular, doth pertaine to the symptom of the motion hurt, for it is a corrupt action of the vertue of voluntary motion, for the vertue is corrupted in the action, not for becauſe it selfe may not moue, but becauſe the

member cannot containe from euill motion, that is, *non contrahatur ad suum principium.*

Doct. What is the cause of this disease?

Causa. *Stud.* The cause is, either of repletion or of emptinesse, repletion proceedeth either from bloud, and then the Crampe doth also happen, and that sodainly in a sound bodies, and there doth proceede an idle life, gluttonie, and drunkennesse; also by the like meanes it happeneth from a phlegmaticke humor, which doth insinuate it selfe, euen as bloud, into the substance of the sinewes and muscles, for so it happeneth, that sometimes they tumefie and are dilated according to their depth, breadth, and length, and thereby necessarily are drawne together, which causeth the Crampe: also labour, immoderate vvatching, a burning Feauer, hunger, care, immoderate sweating, vomit, fluxe of belly, losse of much bloud, too much venerie, inflamation, or great heat of the neruous parts, doe cause this disease.

Doct. Proceede to the Cure.

Stud. If the Crampe proceede from a fulnesse of colde humors, wee first of all giue a Clyster, such as here is set downe, or the like.

Clyster. R. *Radicum liliorum alborum* ℥ i.
Aristolochiæ rotundæ ℥ iij.
Fol. Saluiæ. Betonicæ an. M. i. ʃ8.
Florum Cardui benedicti. Camomeli. Mercurialis, Centaurei minor. an. M. i. *Furfuris M.* ij. *agarici albi et leuis* ℥ ʃ8.
Coquantur in aqua q. s. ad lib. i. ʃ8. *Colaturæ addantur spec. hieræ picræ simpl.* ℥ i ʃ8. *benedictæ lax.* ℥ i. *Mellis ros.* ℥ i. *Olei liliorum alborum* ℥ iij. *salis parum, fiat Clyster.* Notwithstanding, first of all we may frame an emollient Clyster, *ex Decocto hordei, liliorum, foliorum maluæ, altheæ, seminum lini, fænugræci, oleo liliaceo vel Communi &c.*

Afterwards, we prepare the humors with gentler medicines, if the euill giue vs time: after which wee purge them away.

away. In like manner we vse such things as haue property to auert and euacuate from the part affected, such as are frictions, legatures, Cupping glasses, neesings, Gargarismes, Clysters, and Apophlegmatismes. Lastly, wee administer such things as may dissolue and strengthen the neruous parts, whether they be giuen inwards, or applied outwards. We must obserue also that in this disease such things as are applied outwards, as vnguents, Emplaisters, Cataplasmes, and such like, must be moderatly hot in the beginning: but afterwards we may apply by little and little, things more warmer, such as *Castoreum*, and such as haue property to mollifie, digest, and resolue.

Doct. But what if the Crampe proceede from a flatus and windy cause?

Stud. Then we cause the parts to be gently rubbed with hot linnen cloathes.

Doct. But what if it grow through the bitings of some venomous beast, how shall we doe then?

Stud. Then we bruse Scabios, to which wee mixe a little Treakle, with the yolke of an egge, and so apply it vpon the affected part.

Doct. But sometimes it happeneth through the pricking of a sinew with some kinde of weapon, how then?

Stud. Then we mixe oyle of Roses, and Terebinthin together, and apply it to the sinew that is wounded, vvhich bringeth great ease: or else we boyle Earth-wormes in oyle of Terebinthin, and there-with foment the place, &c.

Doct. Let me haue some other supply?

Stud. You shall.

℞. *Cassiæ recenter extractæ* ʒ i. *Bolus.*
Terebinthinæ ʒ ß.
Nucis muscatæ ϑ i. *fiat bolus.*

℞. *Conseruæ acori* ʒ iij. *Electuarium.*
Granorum Iuniperi ʒ i. ß.
Castorei.
Assæ fœtidæ an. ϑ i. ß.

Syrupi

Syrupi de Calamentha.
Syrup. Stœchados an. q. s. fiat Electuarium.

Vomitus. ℞ *Betonicæ* ℥ i. *Seminis nasturtij, erucæ, an.* ℥ ij. *Seminis rnphani* ℥ i. ʃ8. *coquantur ad tertias. Decocti sumantur* ℥ v.
Oximellis squillitici, olei liliorum alborum an. ℥ i. ʃ8.
Misceantur fiat potus vomitarius, detur a comestione.

Vnguentum. ℞. *Olei nucis muscatæ* ʒ ij.
Terebinthinæ, liliorum nardini an. ℥ ʃ8.
Castorei, vermium terrestrium, hypericonis an. ʒ ij.
fiat vnguentum.

Vnguentum. ℞. *Florum roriſmarrinæ, ſtœchados, ſerpilli, Sampſuchi, hyſſopi an. M.* i.
Maceris, Cinamomi, nucis muſcatæ Caryophylorum an. ℥ ʃ8. *Castorei* ℈ i.
Coquantur in oleo liliorum irino fiat vnguentum.

With which annoynt the hinder part of the head, the *Nucha*, and all the ſpine of the backe warme.

Sacculus. ℞. *Salis torrefacti adhuc calentis fumfuris frixi, florum Comomillæ an. M.* i.
Seminum lini ʒ iij. *Misceantur et fiat saunlus.*

Doct. But how muſt wee doe if it proceede of inanition or emptinetſe.

Electuarl. *Stu.* Then ℞. *Conſeruæ bugloſſæ, Violarum an.* ℥ i.
Manus criſti ℥ ʃ8.
Diamargariti frigidi ʒ v.
Nucleorum pini ℥ ʃ8.
Syrupi Stœchados q. ſ. Fiat Electuarium molle.

In like manner we may make a Clyſter of the decoction of a Capon, Violet leaues, Mallowes, barly, Lambs heads, or Sheepes heads, adding thereunto iij. ʒ. of the oyle of Violets. And thus much of the Crampe.

Doct. So, wee will goe forwards with our diſcourſe in diſeaſes that proceede from affects of the head, the next that doth follow is the Catarrh or Rhume: define me that diſeaſe.

Of

Of Catarrhe, Rhume, or Distillation.

Conference. XI.

Student.

THE Catarrhe, Rhume, or Distillation, is a defluxion, of humors, or excrements, from the head or braine, into the subiect parts of the body: for the braine which is of nature colde, and moyst, and vvanting much nourishment, by reason of the greatnesse of its heape, doth procreate much excrement: which thing also is procured by reason of the colde and moyst distemperature of the same: also through the scituation thereof, vapours doe so much the more easily ascend, and are there made thicke & engrossed, and through the raritie of the substance thereof they are easily receiued. And so euen as such superfluous excrements are driuen into this, or into that part, of the body, euen so this disease doth change his name: for sometimes it happeneth that these kindes of excrements doe lurke quietly in the inward receptacles of the braine, and often also in the former ventricles of the braine, and so long as they doe not offend much in quantitie, they are easily purged and auoyded by the pallat. But contrariwise it hapneth when they are diffused by diuers places of the braine, that when they doe immoderately abound, they are auoyded partly by the nostrils, partly by the pallat, & sometimes by the eares & the eyes. Oftentimes also they slip downe into the inward seates of the body, as vpon the breast, the lungs, from whence springeth *Peripneumonia*, and *Asthma*: sometimes they fall into the throat, and vpon the sharpe arterie, from whence springeth hoarsenesse. In like manner they deuolue into the stomacke, and then they corrupt the

nourishment that is receiued, and the appetite and concoction is ouerthrowne. Sometimes also it doth excite the *Lyenteria*, when as it doth slip downe into the intestines, and there-hence springeth the fluxe of the belly. Sometimes these excrements are gathered together without the scull, betweene the outward skinne and the *pericranium*, and that is perceiued oftentimes in the top of the head, where the extremities of the veines that creepe to the face and temples doe end: for oftentimes whiles these vessels be ouerburthened vvith an aboundance of excrements, they doe vnburthen themselues in these places for many dayes together, from whence they doe prepare themselues by their thinnesse, away by little and little into the outward subiect parts of the body, which by degrees doe grow thicke, by the heat of that part wherein they are receiued: from whence oftentimes there doth proceede *Dolor lateris*, paine of the sides, of the loynes, of the armes, of the shoulders, the eyes, the teeth, flancks, hips, legges, and ioynt-ache, &c.

Doct. Proceede to the cure.

Stud. Euery Catarrhe, or Distillation, is either hot or colde, for the cure whereof, we must in the beginning purge the body, as well generally as particularly, and vse diuersions, and such things as may comfort the braine, next to stop the same fluxe, and lastly, to comfort the breast.

When the Catarrhe doth proceede from an hot cause, the Diet must be thinne, the Patient must drinke no vvine, but onely barly water, and he must abstaine from meat and drinke as much as may be.

When to open a veine.

Moreouer, we must not delay the opening of a veine, if it proceede of an hot cause, and that the veines doe appeare full and distended, or if it flow to the eyes, vpon the palat, or vpon the lungs, or if it be ingendred with a Feauer: but if it proceede from a colde cause, we must not at any hand attempt the cutting of a veine.

Moreouer, we must vse diuersions both with Clyster and Purgation, or with the Decoction of *Tamarinds*, and other purging

purging medicines that may thicken and engrosse the humours: and the humours must be but lightly purged, least the matter flowing, should be more exasperated and stirred vp, but the fluxe is rather to be stayed by other meanes.

Doct. Let mee heare your order you vse in an hot cause?

Stud. These things are good in an hot cause. *Catar. cal.*

℞. *Ros. rub. Coriandri præpar. an.* ℥ i.
Gummi hederæ, sandaracha Mastichis, olibani, an. ℥ ij. *Cura.*
Trochisc. De Camphora ʒ ß.
Seminis papaueris albi ℈ ij.

Let all be beaten together, and brought into pouder, and there-with make fumes, where-with the couerings of the head may be fumigated, and the Patient may receiue some of the smoake into the mouth and nostrils. In like manner Rose vinegar being poured vpon some burning stones, or iron, and the fume there-hence receiued, is very profitable. But the best thing for an hot and subtill Catarrh, is a Gargarisme framed of such things as doe engrosse & are astringent, as to make a Gargarisme with the syrup of Poppy, Rose-water, or Plantane-water: or else to make a Gargarisme of the Decoction of Quinces, *malorum granatorum*, and Roses, of either ℥ i.

Seminis pap. albi ℥ i. *fiat Decoctum.* *Gargarism.*

To which shall be added syrup of Iuiubes, of Violets, or of Poppy, q. s. The syrup is put in onely to sweeten the rest: as if there be one pound of Decoction, we adde ℥ iij. of syrup. Also it is good to holde in the mouth some things framed *de bolo*, or Pils *de Arnoglosso*, or a table of *Diapapaueris albi*, or we may frame a medicine that doth both engrosse and restraine in this manner.

℞. *Mastichis, thuris an.* ʒ ß.
Opij ℈ ij.
Penidiarum ʒ iij.
Cum syrup. Iuiubarum fiant formulæ, which the Patient must holde in his mouth: Or

℞. *Pul. Diapapaueris albi* ʒ i.
Seminis papaueris albi.
Leuiter conquassati ʒ ß.
Boli armeni.
Terræ sigillatæ an. ʒ ij.
Sacchari candi.
Penidiarum an. ʒ ij.
Succi glyz. ϑ i. *Fiant formula*, vvith the syrup of Iuiubes, or with water of the infusion of gumme Dragagant, and let the Patient holde them in his mouth.

Doct. But what must be done when the fluxe is retained, and held in some part?

Stud. If the fluxe be retained in any part, the matter must be concocted with syrups engrossing and thickning, because alwayes somewhat doth flow to the throat, or vpon the lungs, therefore such syrups as doe alter the hot matter, with a kinde of apertion or great detersion, must be reiected, as the syrup of Cichorie, and such like of that kinde. Wherefore we must make choise of such things as are cooling and engrossing, and that haue a property to smooth, and ease the parts exasperated, such as are syrups of Violets, of Iuiubes, *De Neunphar. De papauere*, and such like, which must be mixed vvith the pectorall Decoction, or some other remedie more appropriate. And sometimes vvith these syrups are mixed *Syrupus de Rosis siccis*, (but that is onely when the matter is mixt) or the syrups of Violets or Roses, with other syrups.

Waters are also commended, as water of Violets, of Roses, of Mayden-haire, of Scabios, and such like.

Also Decoctions may be made of such things that are astringent, and lenifying, as neede shall require: as for example.

Decoctio. ℞. *Olibani, Mastichis an.* ʒ ij.
Coquantur leuiter in aqua, in lib. i. *Colat. Dissolue syrup. de papauere et Iuiubes, an.* ʒ ij.

And

And this medicine must be in the beginning, when the matter is yet flowing. Or

℞. *Syrup. de papauere* ℥ i.
Syrup. Iuiubar. et Violarum an. ℥ ij.
Let it be giuen in barly water.

℞. *Glyseriscæ* ʒ iij. *Ros. rub. Violarum an. p.* i. Barly water.
Quatuor sem. frigid. maior an. ʒ ij.
Seminis papaueris albi ʒ i.
Passularum Contritarum cum granis (because the intention is of restraining) *Sebesten an. N.* x. *Hordij integri. p.* i. *Fiat Decoctio.*
In colatura dissolue syrup. Violarum et Iuiubarum ana ℥ iij. *Misce pro* iij. *Dosibus.* Or ℞. *Electuar. Diatrag. frigid. tabellam vnam pro dosi.*

But this must be obserued, that vvhen the matter doth flow to the cheekes, the iawes and the throat, vvee must abstaine from such things as doe lenifie, engrosse, and concoct, as vvee vvill declare anone. And the matter must be auoyded vvith Pils, as *pil. fine quibus de Cochijs*, and other such like, vvhich doe euacuate from the head: but your pil. *fine quibus*, vvith a third part of *Cochie*: or wee may purge vvith some laxatiue Electuarie, as *Elect. de citro sol. Elect. inde, Diaphænicon*, vvith some part of *Diacarthamum, syr. ros: lax.* vvith some part of syrup of Violets, and with the pectorall Decoction, or else syrup of Violets, with the Decoction of *Myrobalans*, to which may be sometimes added a few graynes of *Diagridium*, chiefly when we vse syrups and decoction.

Doct. This is your course in an hot Rheume, how vvill you proceede in a colde? *Catarrhus frigidus.*

Student: A colde Catarrhe must be dealt vvith, vvith hote astringents, or such as doe meanely engrosse, as for example, a Gargarisme may be framed in this manner.

℞. *Cyperi, Calami Aromat. glyz. an.* ʒ ij. *Gargarism.*
Fol. Myrtilli M. ß.

Corticis thuris ℥ ß. *Fiat decoctio in Colatura dissolue Diameri* ℥ ij.

Mellis ros. ℥ ß. *Fiat Gargarisma.*

The liquorice is put in, the rather to smooth the parts exulcerated, and to sweeten, for alwayes the indication must be, to mixe those things that may smooth and mittigate the sharpnesse of the part. And a fume in a colde Rheume may be framed after this manner.

℞. *Rosarum rub. Nigellæ torrefact. Gummi hederæ, boracis facti an.* ℥ i.

Fumigatio. *Coriandri* ℥ ij. *Auripigmenti cuiuslibet* ʒ i. Let all be beaten together, and make a fume, wherewith the cloathes and caps for the head may be fumigated.

And if the Patient haue no cough, he may receiue a little of the fume at his mouth. And for the richer sort, there may be added *ligni aloes* ʒ iij. *Gallię et Aliptæ Muscatæ, styracis calam. ana* ℈ iiij. Also the matter is to be diminished with a sharpe Clyster, and to be concocted with hot syrups, which if the matter doe still flow, we may mixe with them some light Astringents, or some colde things that haue a property to engrosse and thicken the matter.

The matter is also to be euacuated with Pils of *Cochiæ*, in a greater Dose then before, *Cum pilulis de Sarcocolla, de agarico, assaieret, de hiera Composita, de Mastiche*, but not with *Aureæ*, or others that are stronger. In a colde cause may be giuen Treakle or Mythridate, as also in an hot cause new Treakle may be giuen. The Patient may holde in his mouth *Thus*, or *oriental bole*, to stay the defluxion: or else small Pils for that purpose may be framed.

Pils to be held in the mouth to stop the Rheume.

℞. *Thuris, Mastichis, Cyperi an.* ʒ i.

Succi glyzer. boli orient. præp. an. ʒ ij.

Sacchari Candi, Penidiarum an. ʒ iij.

Gummi trag. Arabici an. ℈ ij.

Camis passarum cum alijs Contus. ℥ ß.

Frame little Pils of the bignesse of French Peason, with the syrup of Violets or Iuiubes, and let the Patient hold them in his mouth. *Doct.*

Doct. But vvhat if the Rheume doe still continue and perseuer, what other course is there?

Stud. Then may be giuen your *Pilulæ de styrace*, to stay the fluxe: which although there be *opium* in the composition, yet they are not to be refused, for the storax and other things, doth represse the coldnesse of the *opium*. Also *pil. Mes. vel de arno glossa*, commonly called *Cyno glossa*, which are vsed in all Rheumes, are fitter in an hot cause then in a colde: for because of abounding with the *opium* and Henbane.

Also in a colde cause may be vsed this Cephalick pouder to comfort the braine.

℞. *Cyperi, Corticis citri Sicci an.* ʒ i.
Garyophel. Cardomomi an. ʒ i. ß.
Nigellæ torrefact. granorum tinctorum, Coriand. præp. an. ϑ. iiij.
Macis ʒ i. *Melissæ, siccæ. Sampsuchi an.* ϑ ij. ß. *Stæchados. Rosarum rub. an.* ϑ ij. *Fiat puluis.*

Wherewith let the fore-part of the head be fumed in the euening, at the entrance into bed: and in the morning apply this cap or quilt.

℞. *Melissæ, beton. ocymi, sampsuchi an. M.* ß. Cappe.
Salis torrefacti, thuris, Mastichis an ʒ iij.
Rad. acori an. ʒ ij. *Nucis Muscatæ, Caryoph. Styracis cal. ladani an.* ʒ i. ß.
Ros. rub. p. ß. Make it into pouder, and with red sarcenet make a quilt or cap.

Or there may be framed a Pomaunder to stay the Rheume after purging.

℞. *Nigellæ torrefactæ,* ʒ ij.
Nucis Cupressæ, Garyophil. Sampsuci, sicci an. ʒ i.
Ligni aloes, gallæ Muscatæ an. ϑ ij.
Ladani ʒ iij. *Cum cera fiat pomum odorifferum.*

If the defluxion happen to some one part, either to the breast or to the necke, it may be cured by the application of such oyntments and emplaysters, as doe resolue

solue such as we will set downe hereafter in the Squinancie, or Angina.

And this may suffice for the Catarrhe or Rheume.

Doct. The next is Angina or the Squinancie, proceede forwards with that disease.

Of Angina, or the Squinancie.

Conference XII.

Student.

Angina is an inflamation of the Larinx, and wesand, and of the rest of the parts of the throat, which doth hinder both breathing and swallowing. This disease is very dangerous, for if it be not presently lookt vnto, the Patient is strangled, and suffocated, by reason that the chiefe parts of the throat are in a manner occluded and shut vp, so that a man can neither draw breath, nor receiue nourishment.

Doct. What is the cause of this disease?

Stud. This disease for the most part, proceedeth from bloud, flowing from the Iuguler veines, in which there is great store, or else from a bilous or cholericke bloud, or else from some defluxion of a colde humor, and then it is *Angina notha*, a bastard Squinancie. If it proceede onely from bloud, there is a full pulse, and great difficultie of swallowing and breathing, rednesse in the tongue and face, with a troublesome Feauer. If it proceede of cholericke bloud, then there is a very sharpe and acute Feauer, with intollerable burning, with a like difficultie of breathing, and swallowing, and vvith all bitternesse of the mouth. If it proceede from a colde humour, then there is much moysture, and viscositie in the mouth, little or no Feauer, the paine is lesse, and the tumor & swelling more laxe, and lesse rednesse in the face.

Doct.

Doct. Shew me the Cure of this diſeaſe.

Stud. At the firſt, wee muſt open the *Cephalica* veine, becauſe there is neede of preſent helpe: Alſo the greatneſſe of the diſeaſe will require a repetition of bloud letting, ſo that in the meane while we iniect ſharpe Clyſters, ſuch as are deſcribed in the Apoplexi. Next the *ranulæ* are to be opened: for *Galen* hath noted often, that the opening of thoſe veines haue cured the Squinancie. If the Patient can ſwallow, there may be giuen this purging potion.

℞. *Expreſſionem* ℥ ij. *Rhubarbari infuſi in aqua Cichorij* ʒ i. *Santali citrini in qua diſſolue ſyrupi Roſ. pallidarum vel de Cichorio* ℥ i. *Diapruni ſolut.* ʒ iij. *Fiat potio.* *Potio purgans bilem.*

As concerning outward applications, looke what Indications are in other inflamations of the mouth, the ſame are here alſo to be obſerued. In the beginning wee vſe repellents, that we may hinder the generation of phlegme if it may be, but if it cannot be, then wee muſt vſe reſolutiues.

Doct. But what if it come to ſuppuration?

Stud. Then if it be poſſible, it muſt be opened vvith a pen-knife, or otherwiſe, a little piece of fleſh may be tyed with a threed, and giuen to ſwallow downe, and preſently drawne backe againe, and ſo may a piece of Sponge be vſed, being tyed with a threed for that purpoſe.

Doct. Shew me a repelling Gargariſme.

Stud. ℞. *Aqua roſarum et plantaginis an.* ʒ iiij. *Diſſolue ſyrupi granatorum, roſarum ſiccarum, Cydoniorum, Myrtillorum ſingulorum* ℥ ij, *Fiat Gargariſmus.* *Gargariſ. repellens.*

Or if you will haue one more aſtringent, vſe this.

℞. *Malicorij* ʒ iij. *Balauſtiorum et glicyriſæ an.* ʒ ij. *Paſſulas x. Ficus et Iuiubas an. Num. quatuor, fiat decoctio, in colatura lib.* i. *Diſſolue Diamorun vel dianucum* ℥ ij. *et fiat Gargariſmus.*

But to the intent that the intollerable paine may be

ſomething aſſwaged, the Patient may betweene while gargariſe with Aſſes or Goates-milke, or with Cow-milke or Whey, in which may be diſſolued a little Caſſia to ſmooth and lenifie.

Furthermore, becauſe *Hippocrates* hath written, *In Angina, ſi tumor in collo appareat, bonum:* therefore we muſt endeuour by all the meanes we can, to procure that the matter may be drawne outwards; for which purpoſe, wee apply Cupping-glaſſes vnder the chinne, and about the iawes. According to the counſell of *Celſus*; alſo may be applied to the necke the excrements of a Lyon, in the forme of a Cataplaſme, vvith wonderfull profit: or in the place thereof, we may vſe a *Synapiſme*, or a *Veſiccatori:* the necke may be wrapped with greaſie Wooll dipt in ſome Calaſtick or relaxing oyle, ſuch as is of Camomil, Lillies, and ſuch like. There are ſome remedies that are called *Cynancyk*, which being applied either outwardly or inwardly, doe by an hidden property cure that diſeaſe, ſuch are *ſtercus canis album ſiccum teritur; Cribro traijcitur deinde mellis ſyrupo vel Diamoro permiſcetur.* So alſo doth the pouder of Swallowes burnt, of Snayles, or the pouder of Crabs burnt, ſerue for that purpoſe. Young Swallowes being eaten are good for that purpoſe, or being burnt to pouder, which pouder may be giuen with *Mulſa.* Or take the neſts of Swallowes, and let them be well wrought together with honey, and then applyed to the necke in the forme of a Cataplaſme, all theſe things are allowed of, by the Authoritie of *Galen*, and ſince his time approued by the teſtimonies of *Aetius*, *Paulus*, and *Celſus*.

Diaſcorides doth burne your *Millepedes*, which I take to be loopes or Hog-lice, and mixing the pouder with honey, doth apply it to the necke. Some there are that for an extreame remedie (as in the Apoplexi) doth cut the Iugulers, from whence the bloud doth flow that cauſeth the *Angina*.

Hitherto of a true and exquiſite *Angina*, vvhich proceedeth

ceedeth according to the opinion of most men, from a bilous and cholericke bloud, which is thinne and hot.

Doct. Is not the *Angina* proceeding from pituitous bloud, a true and exquisite *Angina*?

Stud. That which proceedeth from bloud, mixed with phlegme, is a true *Angina*, but not exquisite; as that which proceedeth from phlegme onely, is but a bastard Squinancy, and may be referred rather to *Oedema* then *Phlegmon*: But neuertheless, it hath many things common with that, which is true, as feeling of straitnesse, and compression of that part, difficultie of breathing, and swallowing, but indeede there is no Feauer nor any great paine, and therefore not so great danger. If the Patient can swallow, a Purgation may be appointed *ex senna, turbith*, and *Agarico*, which shall be boyled in some *Cephalical* Decoction. Also sharpe Clysters, a resoluing Cataplasme shall be applied to the necke after this manner.

℞. *Radicis Liliorum* ℥ i.
Althea cum radice, M. i.
Florum Camomeli et meliloti an, p. i. *Fiat decoctio.*
Residentia teratur, Coletur, Adde Colaturæ, farinæ fab. et Nidi hirundinis an. ℥ i. Or

℞. *Pul. Cancrorum Ostorum. Stercoris Canini an.* ʒ vi.
Cum oleo Camomeli. Fiat Cataplasma applicandum Collo.

Or let the Patient Gargarise with the Decoction of Hyssop, Tyme, Pennyryoll, but chiefly with Calament, wherein is dissolued Oxymel: as for example,

℞. *Calamenthæ fiat Decoctio in Colatura lib.* i.
Dissolue Cochlearum vstarum ℈ iiij.
Oxymelitis Gulonij ℥ i. *Fiat Gargarismus.*

Doct. But what must be done if the Patient cannot swallow at all?

Stud. Then we power in some thinne supping, or nourishing liquor, with some hollow instrument or spout, or else we apply a Cupping-glasse to the first Vertebres of the

necke that the throat may open so much the better, and so in the meane time poure in the meate that is liquid.

Doct. What after the Apostume be broken, and the place be vlcerated?

Stud. Then we cleanse the place at the first with *Hydromel*, or with waters or Decoctions of barly, *Legastrum*, *Caprifolium*, *Agrimonia*, afterwards we adde *Diamoron*, and if the vlcers proue maligne in the throat or other where, they may be toucht *cum aqua forti*, *a luminosa*, *oleo de vitriolo*, and such like. And after the Apostume be opened, great heede must be taken, that the matter fall not downe vpon the stomacke or lungs. And thus much of the Squinancie.

Doct. The next is *Asthma*: what is *Asthma*?

Of Asthma, or shortnesse of winde.

Conference. XIII.

Student.

Asthma is a certaine difficill, thicke, and hard inspiration without a Feauer. The cause is to be sought from no other place, but from the lungs themselues, vvhich by reason of the pipes and passages thereof obstructed, nature cannot in aboundance at one inspiration coole the heart, nor supply matter to it selfe of the vitall spirit, neither is able to exclude grosse vapours through breathing, and therefore it is constrained to recompence that defect with a thicke and more often breathing. From whence they are called *Asthmatici*, *Suspirioſi et Anhelatores*. And a man that hath sound lungs and free from obstruction, will doe as much with one onely respiration, as the affected can doe at many.

Wheezers, short-winded, pursinesse.

Doct. But is this all the cause of this disease?

Stud. No, sometimes the fumes of Quicksiluer doth ingender

ingender this euill, and the mines from whence mettals are digged, doth oftentimes by their vapours too much dry the lungs. Also intemperate Diet, idlenesse, and grosnesse of body, may cause hardnesse of breathing, but chiefly it happeneth from a grosse, clammie, and viscous phlegme, which doth sticke in the passages of the sharpe arterie. Oftentimes also the instruments of breathing hath in themselues the beginning of this euill, that is, when many superfluities are ingendred in them, which in time by the force of heat are changed into a kinde of vitreous and gypseous phlegme, from whence in time also they doe degenerate into grauell and to stones.

The Catarrhe is oftentimes the cause of the *Asthma.*

Doct. Well, now proceede to the cure.

Stud. To cure this disease there is required a due and fit order of Diet, which is in the true vse of the sixe things not naturall, the Patient must be purged, and if neede be a veine must be opened, especially if the Menstrues or Hæmarhods be stopt, they must be prouoked, the *Saphena* must be cut, and sharpe Clysters must be iniected, the breast must be annoynted vvith oyle of sweet Almonds, or vvith some other fit ovntment that it may be relaxed, the sicke must sit downe, for by that meanes the grisles of the windepipe are more better and easier dilated, the Patient may draw his breath with his breast open, because a little ayre is taken in, to coole the heart, and the retayning of that fuliginous matter, doth ouerthrow the heart. *Cura.*

Galen doth then in that case giue *Diasulphure* (I meane in the paroxisme) others haue giuen in the place of Niter or of *Aphronitre*, halfe an ounce of common salt, or of any of them the quantity of three drammes in *Malsa*, but then the sicke must vse a thinne Diet.

Doct. This is at the time of the fit, but afterwards how must we proceede?

Stud. The fit being past, then we consider the cause that is to remoue the obstruction. *Mathiolus* doth perswade that euery day in the morning the stomacke being fasting,

the sicke should eate three Figges, which for an whole night should be madufied in *Aqua vitæ*. *Rhasis* in the C hapter of his experiments doth giue the Decoction of both the *Aristolochias*. *Valescus* giueth for certaine dayes together, a dramme of the pouder of *Aristolochia*, vvith *Hydromel*. *Ætius* saith, that for *Asthmaticks*, and those that haue the Cough, Pluriſie, and *Empiema*, that this is a singular remedie. ℞. *Styracis*, *Terebinthinæ*, *Sandarachæ*, *et Mastichis an.* ʒ i. with which make a fume. *Galen* in that onely affect of the breast doth prescribe strong Purgations, whose authoritie *Paulus* and *Auicenna* doth follow, for they prescribe *Coloquintida*: and *Rhasis* prescribeth *Trochiscorum Alhandal* ʒ ſ8, with which he doth mixe some conuenient Conserue, as of *Enula Campana*, *Irios*, *Capilli veneris*, *fiat bolus*. Which must be taken out of a spoone, with the syrup of Maydenhaire, & afterwards let him take halfe a pinte of *Hydromel*, this must be iterated twise euery weeke. *Galen* frameth Trochisks after this manner. ℞. *Synapi* ʒ i. *Salis communis* ʒ ſ8. *elaterij grana xv. terantur cum aqua et fiant octo Pastilli*, of which the Patient shal take one of them euery other day, and drinke after halfe a pinte of *Mulsa*. But we may content our selues with *pilulæ Cochiæ*, or *de Agarico* giuen once a moneth in the decreasing of the Moone, or a Potion of Turbith, or of Agarick.

Doct. It seemeth that the ancient Phisitians were more bolde in giuing stronger and more violent medicines, to roote out rebellious diseases.

Stud. It is most true, and that hath made some of our Empericks famous, desperatenesse, and boldnesse: for they haue giuen some fiue or sixe graines of *Antimonie*, in some little Conserue, nay some hath beene more desperate to deale with mercuriall medicines, which in Cronical diseases hath sometime proued well by chaunce, and some hath giuen this medicine:

Empericks. Let them take heede of too much boldnes.

℞. *Diaphœnici* ʒ ij. *Trochiscor. Alhandal* ℈. ij. *Fiat bolus*.

But

But *Alexander Trallianus* reprehendeth *Galen*, because that onely with hot things he doth seeme to cure the *Asthma*, and the reason is, because hot things doe encrease the hot distemperature: but here I will set downe an excellent remedy for *Asthmaticks*, and it is called *electuarium Diabutirum*.

℞. *Butiri recentis perlucida aqua fontis decies eloti* ℥ iiij. *Caricarum, Nuclearum Pini, Dactylorum, Amigdalarum Amararum an.* ℥ ij. *Succi glycyrrhizæ, tragacanthæ an.* ℥ ß. *Hyssopi, Ireos, Thymi, Saturiæ, Prassij, Pulegij, Seminum vrticæ an.* ℥ ß. *Ciniamomi, Zinziberis, Pyrethri an.* ʒ iij *Gariophillorum, Galangæ, Piperis nigri, anisi, Carui, Cardamomi an.* ʒ ij. *Ligni Aloes, Nucis Muscatæ an.* ʒ i. *Aquæ mellis lib.* iiij. *Electuarium in Asthmate Diabutirum.*

Which must be made in this manner, the Figges, Rayzins, and Dates, being well beaten, must be infused in your *Aqua mellis* for three dayes together, then let it boyle at a gentle fire, and then straine out the Iuice very strongly, to which iuice adde the Butter, and seauen pints of clarified honey, and so let it be boyled againe at a gentle fire with one onely boyling, and then straine it againe, to which adde of Pyne kernels and Almonds, all which being well bruised in a morter, and well wrought together, adde to all the other things made into fine pouder, with two ℥. of the lungs of a Foxe, and being well mixed together at the fire, make an Electuary. Of this Electuary the Patient must take three times a day, halfe an ounce at a time, that is in the morning, at noone, and at the entrance into bed.

Doct. Goe now to the Pleurisie.

Of

Of the Pleurisie.

CONFERENCE XIIII.

Student.

THE Pleurisie is an inward inflamation or apostumation of the vpper skinne, girding the ribs or sides within, and is caused of aboundance of hot bloud, flowing vnnaturally to that part: and this is *Pleuritis vera*, and hath alwayes adioyned vvith it difficultie of fetching breath, a cough, a continuall Feauer, vehement and pricking paine, with a high and hard pulse. The cure must be performed by sixe principall intentions, that is, by a fit Diet, by diuersion of the matter that floweth, by digestion, by euacuation, by procuring of spetting, and by resolution.

Signes of the Pleurisie.

Doct. Goe to the cure.

Stud. When the Phisitian doth perceiue that the sicke hath an exquisite Pleurisie, the liuer veine must be opened of the same side where the Patient is grieued, for thereby shall the matter be presently drawne forth and auoyded, which is chiefly to be required in the Pleurisie and other inflamations.

Doct. But must not the belly be emptied vvith some Clyster or other meanes before bloud-letting?

Stud. It is very requisite that the body should be purged with some fit and gentle medicine, if wee perceiue the paine be not too violent, otherwise without further adoe we goe to bloud-letting, because that delay might breede a greater danger.

Doct. What Clyster is fit for that businesse?

Stud. Rx. *Hordij mundi M.* i.

Fol. Malua, Mercurialis.

Violarum

Violarum an. M. i. ſ8.
Pruna Damaſcena N. xij.
Coquantur ad lib. i. ſ8.
Colatura ad datur Caſſia nouiter tractæ, Sacchar. rub. an. ℥i. ſ8.
Vitellum oui, fiat Clyſter emolliens, vvhich muſt be iniected euery other day.

The Patient muſt alſo vſe this Iuleb.

℞. *Syrupi de Iuiubis, Glyzirizæ an.* ℥i. ſ8. *Iuleb.*
Syrupi violati ℥i.
Aquarum vngulæ Cabal. ℥v.
Decoctionis hordij Ficuum, Capillorum veneris ℥vi.
Fiat Iuleb.

Alſo to procure to ſpet, the Patient may vſe this *Lohoch.*

℞. *Syrupi Glyzerhizæ*
Syrup. de Hyſſopo } *an.* ℥i.
Syrupi acetoſ. ſimpl
Oxymellis Squillitici ℥vi.
Fiat Lohoch. Of which, the Patient muſt take oftentimes in the day.

Doct. But may not the Patient be purged by the mouth as well as by Clyſter?

Stud. You may as occaſion ſhall offer miniſter this purging Medicine, or the like.

℞. *Caſſiæ recenter extractæ* ℥vi. Purge.
Diapruni ſolutiui ℥ij.
℞ *habarbari Electi.* ℈ ſ8.
Syrupi violati ℥i
Decocti hordij ℥iij.
Fiat hauſtus.

Doct. What oyntment is good in this diſeaſe?

Stud. This oyntment is good.

℞. *Olei Violarum,* Vnguent.
Olei Amigdalarum dulc. an. ℥i.
Ceræ, et Croci Parum,
Fiat vnguentum.

And if we would haue it more resoluing, wee may adde thereunto the rootes of white Lillies, Hyssop, oyle of Camomell, and such like. Also for that purpose *vnguentum de Althea*, to which may be added a little of the pouder of *Ireos*: the oyles of Violets may be vsed vntill the fourth day, but afterwards we may adde oyle of sweet Almonds, of Lillies, of Camomell, or wee may vse alone oyle of sweet Almonds, with *vnguentum resumptiuum*.

Doct. What Diet must the Patient vse?

Dyet. *Stud.* The first two dayes the Patient must eate very little, but content himselfe with Ptisand drinke, such as this:

Ptisand. ℞. *Hordij mundi M.* iij. *Passularum Mundat.* ℥ ij.
Glycyrrhisæ ℥ i.
Hyssopi, vngulæ Caballinæ an. M. i.
Seminis anisi, lini, Melonum an. ℥ i.
Florum Cordialium p. i. *Fiat decoctio in aqua q.s. ad lib.* ij. *Colaturæ addantur syrupi Violati* ℥ iiij.
Fiat ptisana.

Or if the Patient be weake, hee may haue Almond-milke made for him with the former Decoction, or hee may vse the thinne broath of a Chicken or Cocke. All things that are sharpe, sower, and restrictiue must be auoyded, he must also auoide wine, anger, sorrow, and all other perturbations of the minde.

And thus much of a true Pleurisie.

Doct. How must we handle a bastard Pleurisie?

Stud. For as much as that proceedeth for the most part from winde, the cure must be with such things as are heating: but if there be matter impacted betweene the ribs and the skinne, it must be cured with resolutiues, or such things as bring to suppuration.

Doct. It happeneth that sometimes the Patient hauing an Apostume in the liuer, it is thought to be the Pleurisie: how may that be distinguished?

Stud. It may be distinguished after this manner: first, in an Apostume of the liuer, there is *pulsus vndosus*, an high

wauing

wauing pulse, but in a true Pleurisie the pulse is hard, and like vnto a sawe. Secondly, the paine in the Pleurisie is *pungetiue* and pricking, but in the Apostume of the liuer it is dull and heauie. Besides in the Pleurisie there is a moyst cough with spetting, but in the Apostume of the liuer there is a drie cough without spettle, the colour of the face is enclining to a yellow, and there is blacknesse of the tongue, and paine vnder the false ribs, which is encreased by yeelding forth the breath, and in the attraction the contrarie, which is cleane contrarie in the Pleurisie.

Doct. The next is *Peripneumonia.*

Of Peripneumonia.

Conference XV.

Student.

Peripneumonia, is an hot Apostume, or inflamation of the lungs, with a sharpe Feauer, difficultie of breathing, and distention of the breast, without paine, which may happen by a Pleurisie, being not well purged, but for the most part it proceedeth from strong Rhumes and Distillations falling vpon the lungs, or it may be through the Squinancy or Asthma. Cause.

Doct. What is the difference betweene the *Peripneumonia* and the Pleurisie?

Stud. This is the difference: because this disease is in the lungs, and the Pleurisie in the Membram that couereth the ribs, called *pleura*: againe in *Peripneumonia* the pulse is wauing & full of surges, the paine is greeuous, and pressing, breath vehement, and very great, and withall exceeding hot: all which is not in the Pleurisie. *Galen* saith, that this disease doth more speedily kill then the Pleurisie for two causes: the first is, because the solution of the continuity in Note.

the lungs is ſeldome or neuer conſolidated. The ſecond is, becauſe the ſtrength of the heart cannot endure, but doth faile by reaſon of the inflamation thereof, becauſe the lungs being apoſtumated, they cannot performe the office of euentation to the heart.

Doct. What is your cure in that diſeaſe?

Stud. Looke what cure is vſed in the Pleuriſie, the ſame is required in this diſeaſe.

Doct. Proceede with diſeaſes of the lungs, and let mee heare your remedies for ſpetting of bloud.

Of ſpetting of bloud.

CONFERENCE. XVI.

Student.

SPetting of bloud proceedeth of diuers cauſes, as fulneſſe and aboundance of naughty bloud, which by its ſharpneſſe doth gnaw and erode aſunder the veines, and ſo doth breake open the heads of them. Sometimes it proceedeth of ſharpe humors, which doe diſtill from the head to the lungs, or elſe are ingendred in the lungs themſelues, ſometimes the ſtopping of the Menſtrues may cauſe the ſame: exceeding labour, or exceeding clamour may cauſe eruption of a veine: alſo immoderate vſe of wine may cauſe a ſpetting of bloud.

Doct. Proceede to your order of curing.

Cure. *Stud.* In this cure the Patient muſt vſe abſtinence, ſilence, light-breathing, vvine, and the ſports of *Venus* muſt be auoyded. Quietneſſe both of minde and body, for the recouery of this ſickneſſe is very neceſſary. If the defluxion be from the head, it is to be remedied vvith ſuch things as hath beene declared for the Catarrhe.

The Patients Diet muſt be ſuch as may both engroſſe and

and restraine, and cause both the bloud and the Fluxe to be lesse, and with-all to cure the vlcer it selfe, such as is *Cremor Ptisanæ*, to vvhich may be added *grana malorum punicorum*, or *hordiatum*, vvhich will be more effectuall if the barly be boyled in the Decoction of Lettice, Purslane, Plantayne, *Centinodium*, and their seedes, adding therevnto Suger of Roses. The Basilica veine must speedily be opened for reuulsion, because otherwise it is in vaine (if bloud doe alwayes flow to the part affected) to vse astringents, and things adglutinating, or any such like of that kinde.

Doct. How must we proceede?

Stud. After, we may giue this potion.

℞. *Rhabarb. Vstulati* ℈ i. *Potio adstringens.*
Mummiæ, terræ sigill. an. ℈. i.
Syrupi Cydon. ℥ i. *Cum Aq. Ros. et Plantaginis, fiat potio.* Which must be giuen euening and morning.

To that purpose also Iuleps may be framed, which may be giuen at the entrance into bed.

℞. *Syrupi Rosarum Siccarum.*
Syrup. de Papauere.
Syrup. Cydoniorum an. ℥ i.
Aquæ Plantaginis.
Portulacæ, centinod. an. ℥ iiij.
Pulueris cornu cerui vsti. Lapidis hæmatitis an. ℥ i.
Mastichis ℈ i.
Fiat Zulapium per iij. *dosibus.*

Or these Trochisks, when the Patient doth goe to sleepe, may be contayned in the mouth.

℞. *Gummi Tragacanth. et Arab. in aqua rosarum diss. soluti an.* ℥ i.
Amyli ℥ ij.
Bolis Armeni.
Terræ sigillat. an. ℈. iiij.
Mastichis ℥ i.

With the syrup of *Myrtils* and Plantaine water, or of the water of *Centinodium*, make *Trochisks* of the bignesse of Lupins.

Also there may be appointed for the same purpose, Opiats, Condits, and Pouders.

Doct. Giue mee an example of such as may serue for that purpose.

Stud. ℞. *Succi portulacæ.*
Succi plantaginis an. ℥ i.
Coralliorum rub. ʒ i.
Lapidis hæmatitis ʒ ß.

Let the Corall and the stone be made into fine pouder, and so mixed with the waters giue it to the Patient for one draught.

Another excellent remedie for spetting of bloud, is this, take a raw egge-shell, and cast away the inward skinne thereof, then drie it in such order, that it may be finely poudered, of which pouder take two drammes, with three ounces of Plantaine water, and mixe them, and giue it to the Patient: or if you will haue this remedie more effectuall, you shall giue it fiue dayes together in the morning, two drams of the same pouder dissolued in this syrup following.

℞. *Syrupi rosati de rosis siccis.*
Syrupi de portu laca.
Syrup. Myrtini an. ʒ i.
Misce.

In like manner it is a sure remedie as well in the cure, as the preseruation for the Patient to chew in his mouth euery morning fasting, a scruple of Rheubarbe torrefied.

Doct. What oyntment haue you in this disease?

Vnguentum. *Stud.* ℞. *Trochiscorum de Karabe* ʒ ij.
Olei Citoniorum.
Olei Rosati Ompha. an. ℥ ß.
Misce, et cum puluere ducantur quousq; fiat forma vnguenti.

But this must be vsed after reuulsion and diriuation, and when

when the bloudy spetting is suppreſt, and the body fitly and orderly purged.

Moreouer, if there be much eruption of bloud without cough, and in the Sommer time the Patient ſtrong, and a full body, as *Ætius* doth counſell, there may be applied to the breaſt a ſponge dipt in vinegar. And ſo this may ſuffice at this preſent for the ſpetting of bloud.

Doct. The next is the Phtiſicke, what is that diſeaſe?

Of the Phtiſicke.

CONFERENCE. XVII.

Student.

THE Phtiſicke is an vlceration of the lungs, vvhich doth follow for the moſt part ſpetting of bloud or the cough, proceeding from ſome ſharpe defluxion. Sometimes alſo the lungs are exulcerated by reaſon of Apoſtumes of the breaſt, vvhen the matter of the one being broken forth into the ſpaces of the breaſt, and cannot in time be purged and auoyded, but doth there lie and putrifie.

Doct. What Symtoms hath this diſeaſe?

Stud. There doth follow this diſeaſe, vveakeneſſe, and a pyning away of the vvhole body, the nayles grow curued and crooked, the eyes are ſunke into the head, the face is deadly and wanne, the haires fall away, and there followeth a fluxe of the vvombe, and finally death.

Doct. Let me know your method of curing?

Stud, This diſeaſe hath alwayes beene accounted vncurable, and eſpecially by the auncient Phiſitians, for although we may cure the vlcers of the lungs, yet becauſe there is left behinde a certaine Callos and fiſtulas reliques, they doe very eaſily in a ſhort time breake out againe. But

as

as concerning the cure, the Medicines following are approued to be very good for cleanſing the vlcer *hydromel* alone and *Mulſa*, remembring alwayes when we will deterge and cleanſe the vlcer, wee muſt giue the honey crude, but to glutinate and ioyne vp, the honey muſt be boyled: But if you will haue a Medicine that ſhall both deterge and conſolidate.

℞. *Lohoch de pul. vulpis* ℥ i.
Syr. Roſ. Siccar. vel
Syr. de glyzer. aut de Hyſſopo ℥ ſ8. *Miſceantur.*

And let the Patient take thereof with a ſticke of Liquorice.

Alſo ſometimes a fume of Colts-foote is very profitable, and for the ſame purpoſe:

℞. *Carnis teſtudinis nemoralis lib.* ij. *Coquantur in aqua vngulæ caballinæ demùm optime contundantur, et diſſoluantur cum Iure pulli cui adde lactis amigdalarum dulcium, emulctionis. Seminum. Meloxum emulctionis ſiſticorum ana* ℥ ij. *Farinæ amyli* ℥ ſ8.
Omnia apud ignem agitentur quouſq; perfectè cocta erunt. And let the Patient vſe the ſame for his Diet both at Dinner and Supper.

In like manner:

℞. *Limacum nemoralium mundatorum optimè a ſuis Muccillaginibus lib.* i. *Herbæ vngulæ Caballinæ, bene triturata* ℥ ij. *Lactis vaccini a quo non ſit extractum butirum lib.* ij. Let it boyle together vnto the perfect Decoction of the Snayles, then mixe Suger with it, and let the Patient take it as the former.

In like manner this pouder following, is found by experience to be exceeding good in the Phtiſicke.

℞. *Seminis papaueris albi* ℥ vi.
Seminum Endiuiæ.
Seminum Acetoſæ an. ℥ i. ſ8.
Seminum Citoniorum mundat. ℥ ij.
Seminum melonum,
Cucurbitæ, Citruli, Cucumeris an. ℥ i. ſ8.

Gummi

Gummi Arabici,
Tragacanthæ,
Amyli, an. ʒ i.
Succi glycyrrhizæ, ʒ ij.
Pulmonis Vulpis, ʒ i. ſ8.
Penidiarum adpondus omnium.

Miſce, & torreſiant leni torrefactione omnia, deinde ſubt. pulueriz entur.

Then take of the ſame pouder two dragmes, *Syrupi de Iuiub.* ʒ i. ſ8. *aquæ deſtillationis Limacum.* ʒ iij. *miſce*, and let it be giuen to the Patient in the morning luke-warme.

Or elſe we may take of the afore-ſaid pouder two dragmes, Syrup of *Popy*, ſyrup of *Iuiubis*, of eyther one ounce, *Colts-foote* water iij. ounces, mixe it, and giue it to the Patient luke-warme at the Euening, at his entrance into the bed.

And this may be obſerued that Aſſes milke is commended aboue all things in the Phtiſicke, if the patient doe take it in the morning, and ſleepe vpon it, and ſo at the entrance to the bed in the euening.

℞. *Lactis Aſinini recenter mulcti,* ʒ vi.
Sacchari albiſſimi, ʒ ſ8. *Miſce.*

Which let the patient take as before-ſaid: in the Spring let him continue it for a whole Moneth, and at the Fall for twentie dayes together.

Doct. This is ſufficient as concerning the *Phtiſicke*: let vs proceede to the *Panting* and beating of the heart. Let me heare what you can ſpeake of that Infirmitie.

Palpitatio Cordis, Panting or beating of the heart.

CONFERENCE. XVIII.

Student.

Palpitatio cordis. *Palpitatio Cordis*, is an immoderate eleuation and depreſſion of the heart againſt nature, and is cauſed from the Excreticke faculty, which doth endeuour to exclude that which is hurtfull. And this diſeaſe commeth through diſtemperature of ſome euill humour which doth reſt in the cels and ventricles of the heart: or elſe from flatuous, fumous, and vaporous ſpirits in the *Pericardion*: ſometimes ſome tumour or ſwelling againſt nature may be the cauſe. Oftentimes alſo it may ſpring from anger, from venery, drunkenneſſe, windy meates, and violent exerciſes.

Doct. Is not this diſeaſe alſo called *Cardiaca?*

Stud. This Diſeaſe doth differ very much from your *Cardiaca paſſio*; for that is an affect of the mouth of the ſtomacke it ſelfe, and not of the heart, as we will declare elſewhere.

Doct. Goe then to the Cure.

Stud. In this diſeaſe the cure muſt not be delayed, becauſe that oftentimes it bringeth Syncop or ſounding; yea, and ſometimes alſo ſodaine death: therefore at the firſt we muſt beginne with bloud-letting, but in a ſmall quantitie, and the *Baſilica* of the left arme muſt be opened, if there be not a *Plethoria*, or full body, for then we muſt open the right arme, but otherwiſe the readier helpe will come from the left.

Alſo the ſerous or phlegmaticke humour, which for the moſt part, is the cauſe of this diſeaſe, muſt be purged.

℞. *Rad.*

℞. *Rad. gram & Petroſ. an.* ʒ ij.
Flor. Cardiac. an. P. i.
Semin. Card. Benedict.
Aniſi & fæniculi an. ʒ ſ8.
Fiat decoctio in Colatura, pro doſi infunde
Agarici recen. trochiſ. ϑ iiij.
Rhei elect. ʒ i.
Cinamomi, ϑ i.
In expreſſ. diſſolue ſyrup. lax.
Roſar. Pallidarum, ʒ i.
Fiat Potio.

After (the body being purged) we may prepare the humour with Iuleps framed of the ſyrups of Hyſſop, of Mayden-hayre, of Bugloſſe, giuen in the waters of *Melliſſophyllũ*, of Betony, of *Cardus Bened.* and ſuch like. And before and after the taking of the Iulep, it is profitable to giue a Lozenge of *Aromaticum roſatum*, or of ſome other ſuch like, as for example.

℞. *Elect. Lætif. Galeni.*
Dianiſi an. ʒ i. ſ8.
Raſuræ Eboris,
Cornu Cerui,
Oſſis de cord. Cerui. an. ʒ ſ8.
Santali vtriuſq; an. ϑ i.
Sacchar. in aqua Melliſſophyl.
Diſſolut q. ſ. and make Lozenges of the waight of two dragmes.

Againe, the former purgation is to be iterated, or theſe Pils may be giuen before meales euery other day.

℞. *Aloes elect.* ʒ ij.
Myrrhæ, Agarici trochiſ.
Rhubarb. Elect. an. ϑ ij.
Cum ſyrupo de Hyſſopo.
Fiat Maſſa.

Of which you ſhall take halfe a dragme, and frame two or three pils, and giue them two houres before meales. In

the meane time, there must not be omitted Cordiall Potions, Opiates, and Condicts.

Also a Sacculus may be outwardly applyed to the region of the heart, as for example:

℞. *Florum Bugloſſæ, Meliſſophillis,*
Roſmarinæ, an. ʒ ij.
Ligni Aloes-Maceris, an. ʒ i.
Cinamoni, Nucis Muſcat. an. ʒ ſß.
Santal. vtriuſq; an. ℈ i.
Fiat Puluis, excipiatur Goſſipio
Moſchato, fiatq; Sacculus panno ſerico interſertus,
and let it be applyed to the region of the heart.

Epithema. Also an *Epithema* may be framed in this manner:

℞. *Aquarum acetoſæ, Maioranæ,*
Roſarum, Boraginis, Bugloſſæ,
Meliſſæ, an. ℥ iiij.
Vini generoſi, ℥ iij.
Specierum electuarij de gemmis.
Diamuſci dulcis, Diambræ, an. ʒ i. ſß.
Sandalorum, ʒ i.
Ligni Aloes, Maceris,
Doronici, Croci, an. ℈ ſß.
Muſci gran. ij. *aceti gut. aliquot.*
Fiat Epithema, Wherewith wee may refreſh the heart euening and morning, applying the ſame warme.

After which Epitheme wee may vſe this Vnguent.

℞. *Olei nardini, Liliacei.*
Balſami, an. ℥ ſß
Olei roſacei, ℥ iij.
Seminis acetoſæ,
Nucis Muſcatæ, Gariophyllorum,
Doronici, Zdoariæ macis, an. ʒ i. ſß.
Crocigran. iij.
ceræ q. ſ.
and make an Oyntment.

Doct.

Doct. But what if the beating of the heart doe proceed from an hot cause?

Stud. Then must we vse things that are contrary, as well outwardly, as inwardly, such things as haue a cooling propertie, which both *Fernelius* and *Helerius* haue set downe at large.

Doct. But sometime it hapneth that children are trouled with this disease by reason of wormes: tell me what course must then be taken.

Stud. Then,

℞. *Aloes Hepaticæ* ℥ß.
Croci, ℈ i.
Succi Citri, ʒ ij.
Vini albi odoriferi, ʒ i.

Let all be well mixed together, and be spread vpon a piece of linnen, and so applyed to the region of the heart.

Or, ℞. *Farinæ Lupinorum amarorum*,
Aloes Hepaticæ, *an.* ʒ iij.
Succi absinthij, ʒ ij.

Let all be well mixed together, and be spread vpon a piece of linnen or leather, and so applyed vpon the nauell.

Doct. It is sufficient: proceede to the next, which is syncope or souning: tell me what is that disease.

Of Syncope or Souning.

CONFERENCE. XIX.

Student.

Syncope or souning, is a sodaine and swift failing of the strength, and is a terrible Symptom because it is the Image of death, for there both naturall, animall, and the vitall faculties chiefely, doe faile: from hence it hapneth that there is

almoſt no pulſe, nor reſpiration, ſenſe and motion is aboliſhed, the face is wan and pale, the extreame parts are chill and moiſt, with a faint ſweate.

Doct. Shew the cauſe of the Syncope.

Stud. The cauſe of Souning may come by immoderate watchings, anger, ſorrow, great cares, ſodaine feares, intollerable paine, acute Feauers and of long continuance, immoderate emptineſſe, by famine, ſweats, labours, vomitings, exceeding fluxe, loſſe of bloude, a ſodaine emptying of water in the Dropſie; for there-hence hapneth an immoderate loſſe of ſpirits, and reſolutions, by which it cannot otherwiſe be, but that there muſt be a great euerſion, and ouerthrowing of the heart. Oftentimes alſo it proceedeth from an abundance of groſſe, crude, rotten, ſharpe and byting humours, which doe daily checke, and as it were fill the mouth of the ſtomacke, in ſuch ſort, that the paſſages of the ſpirits are obſtructed, that their motion is intercepted, euen as it is when reſpiration is let and hindred, as it is when abundance of humours are concluded in the paſſages of the Lungs, the ſicke cannot draw-in ayre, to ſerue for the cooling of the heart.

Doct. Well, proceede now to the cure.

Stud. When the Phyſitian ſhall be called to a Patient affected with ſouning; at the firſt, all his endeuours muſt be referred to the Symptom and that the Patient may be deliuered from the preſent acceſſe.

Secondly, the cauſe being knowne, hee muſt ordaine a remedie that is contrarie to the ſame. *Galen* in euery ſouning doth commend Wine, which otherwiſe in burning Feauers, inflamations, and alienation of the minde, is very dangerous. Neuertheleſſe it may be vſed in the times of intermiſſion ſparingly, and ſo that it be diluted with the decoction of Bugloſſe, Borrage, and ſuch like. Odours and ſweete ſmels applyed to the noſe, doth comfort very much, for ſuch things doe preſently recreate and refreſh the ſpirits.

There is vſed in a light cauſe, to offer the patient bread, or a toſte made moiſt in wine to ſucke on.

Doct.

Doct. But sometimes it hapneth that the chocking of the mother, is the cause of souning, how must the patient be then handled?

Stud. Then we cause sweete things to be put vnderneath, and to the nostrils we apply things that be fœtid and stincking, such as *Castoreum*, *Assa fœtida*, and burnt haire: besides we cast vp into the nostrils things to procure neesing, which if the patient cannot doe, it is a most manifest signe of death,

Doct. But sometimes this Souning doth proceede from venim taken, how then?

Stud. Then if we know what the venim was, we minister some *Elexipharmacon* that is proper to the same, but if we know not the venim, then wee administer some common *Alexiterion*, as Treacle or Mithridate.

Doct. But what if *Cardialgia* and *Stomachica* doe follow the Syncope?

Stud. Then we take a toste of bread moistened in wine, and sprinckle it with the pouder of Nutmegs and Cloues, and so apply it to the stomacke, but not vpon the heart: and this is to be obserued, that nothing doth so soone repaire the spirits as wine, because it is vaporous, and the vapours of wine haue a great affinitie with the spirits.

Doct. But why doe they sprinckle cold water vpon the face of the patient that is in a Soune?

Stud. Because that the heate and the spirits flying outwards, may be driuen and returned backe from the Circumferences vnto their Center: yet we must not vse cold water in the Syncope, where it hapneth through a long fluxe of the wombe, for thereby the fluxe will be increased, but we must rather vse new Treacle, for *Galen* affirmeth that it stayeth all superpurgations and fluxes.

Doct. But I suppose it hapneth through immoderate sweat.

Stud. Then we sprinckle the face with Rose-water camphurated, and rubs the body with cold linnen, and withall doe annoint it with oyle of Roses.

Doct.

Doct. But what if it come of inanition or emptineſſe, of immoderate watching, or much venery and famine, or too violent motion and exerciſe?

Stud. Then we adminiſter ſome reſtoratiue diſtillation or gellie, or ſome other cordiall liquour, or Electuarie: as for example,

℞. *Specierum lætificantis Galeni,*
Electuarij de Gemmis, an. ℈ i. ſ8.
Aromatici roſati,
Cinamomi,
Nucis Muſcatæ, an. ℈ i.
Corticis Citri, ℈ i. ſ8.
Caryophilorum gran. xij.
Fiat Puluis.

Which the Patient may take in ſome nouriſhing broaths.

Wee may giue the patient a draught of this drinke following.

Vinum cordial.

℞. *Corticum Mali citri,* ʒ i.
Nucis Muſcatæ, ʒ i. ſ8.
Caryophyllorum,
Cinamomi, an. ʒ i.

Let all infuſe for the ſpace of foure and twentie houres, in a pint of Malmeſie, and then ſtraine it, and adde to the ſtraining as much fine ſugar as ſhall ſuffice, of which let the patient drinke at dinner and ſupper: or,

Electuar.

℞. *Corticum Citri, Cinamomi.*
Nucis Muſcatæ, an. ʒ i.
Maſtichis, Caryophillorum, an. ʒ ſ8.
Mithridati optimi, ℈ i. ſ8
Electuarij de Gemmis, ℈ ij.
Conſeruæ Bugloſſæ, ℥ i.
Conſeruæ Anthos, ʒ ſ8.
Syrupi de pomis dulcibus, q. ſ.
Fiat Electuarium molle.

And this may ſatisfie for the Syncope, onely this muſt be remembred, that at the time of the fit wee wring the fingers

fingers of the patient, and that wee caſt cold water, with which may be mingled a little wine, or we may caſt Roſe-water vpon the face, for thereby ſhall we excite and ſtirre vp the vitall ſpirits to the exterior parts: onely in the paſſion of the mother, let the woman not lye vpright, but forward and vpon her belly, obſeruing the order aforeſaid.

Doct. The next is the Singult or Hicket: let me heare your definition thereof.

Of the Singult, or Hicket.

Conference. XX.

Student.

Ingultus, which is yelking or Hicket, is a motion, as it were a crampe, raiſed through the expulſiue facultie of the ſtomacke, which goeth about to expell hurtfull and euill matter. It is cauſed for the moſt part, of fulneſſe or emptineſſe, as *Hippocrates* doth affirme. Alſo ſometimes it is cauſed through the byting and gnawing of ſharpe humours: alſo coldneſſe of the ſtomacke, and ſometimes hot Feauers, when eyther the ſtomacke, or ſome other bowell is inflamed.

Doct. What prognoſtickes hath this diſeaſe?

Stud. If Neeſing follow vpon the Hicket, the patient is deliuered, ſo that it proceedeth of fulneſſe.

The Hicket comming in the Iliac paſſion is euill. The Singult comming with ſouning, or with diſtention of the nerues, or with Delirium, is a deadly ſigne.

Alſo the Hicket comming vpon the inflamation of the Lyuer, of the wombe, of the braine, or vpon ſome notable wound, is very dangerous and oftentimes deadly.

In acute Diſeaſes, and burning Feauers, and the Peſtilence, if it commeth, it is for the moſt part deadly. Alſo if it hapneth through too much emptineſſe, it is alwayes euill. It is alſo euill if it come with vomiting, for it threatneth danger of inflamation of the ſtomacke or the braine.

Doct. Now let me heare your remedies.

Stud. As concerning the cure, wee muſt conſider the cauſe, whether it proceedeth of emptineſſe and innanition, or of repletion. If it proceede of emptineſſe it is the more dangerous, and therefore muſt be cured by giuing of fit and conuenient nouriſhment, that thereby that which is defectiue may be ſupplyed. If a fluxe of bloud, or an exceeding fluxe of the wombe, doe cauſe this infirmitie, wee may giue oyle of ſweet Almonds, eyther by it ſelfe, or in warme water. Likewiſe the creame of Ptiſan, with the fleſh of a chickin bruiſed is very good. The ſicke alſo is to be nouriſhed with cordiall diſtillations, Colaces, broaths, and with the expreſſions of fleſh bruiſed, as Iellies, & ſuch meats as are nouriſhing and humecting. There are ſome that doe cure this Hicket by drinking of milke, and other things, that doe refreſh. *Amilum* giuen with milke is very good, the broath of an henne, the yolkes of egges, the fleſh of Hens, Capons and chickins boyled: his drinke muſt be white wine diluted with water. The backe and ſtomacke muſt be annointed with oyle of Violets, of ſweet Almonds, and with *Hydrælæon*. Alſo a Cerot framed of oyle of Violets and Almonds, with waxe, may be applyed to the bellie and to the backe. If ſharpe medicines haue ſtirred vp the Hicket, wee muſt giue ſuch things as are ſweet and fat, as the fat broath of an henne or cocke, or two ſpoonefuls of clarified honey, or Pennidic, or Pine-kernels with Sugar: alſo the ſharp humour muſt be purged, ſo that it be prepared before by drinking of *aqua mulſa*.

Cure of Hicket from emptines.

Oyle & water.

Cure if by ſharp medicines.

If the Hicket proceedeth from heate, and through a byting ſharpneſſe, we muſt giue a vomit: and if the excrements be corrupt and gnawing, wee giue ſuch things as doe contemperate

Hicket from heate and byting humours.

temperate and abſterge, for which purpoſe we vſe Ptiſan and bread imbrued in the ſame. The ſharpnes is alſo amended by the iuyce of Cicchory being drunke, and alſo Cucumor-ſeedes, being cleanſed and bruiſed and ſo drunke: and in that ſame manner the ſeede of Lettuce is very profitable. Alſo the iuyce of Purſlane, and new milke, eyther of Aſſes, or the Goate: for this purpoſe alſo is giuen the ſyrup of Violets, of *Nymphæa*, of *Popy*, and the infuſion of Roſes. When the Hicket is moſt ſtrong, we giue new Treacle.

When the matter is groſſe and viſcous, it muſt be prepared with *Melicrato Hyſſopi*, or *Oxymelite ſimplici*, then it muſt be purged eyther by vomit, or by the ſtoole, with *hiera picra* diſſuſed in *decocto cicerum ruborum*: alſo *acetum Scylliticum*, and Oxymel with Cinamon aromatized. *Melicratum* made of Hyſſop, Thyme, Pulegium, Satureia, and ſuch like: alſo Galengal is much commended: or In a cold cauſe.

℞. *Vini albi tenuis odoriferi*, ℥ iij.
in quo leuiter ferueat Galangæ, ℥ i.
Cynamomi, ſem. Anethi, an. ℥ ß.

Alſo two ſcruples of *Caſtoreum* in ſweet wine is very good, but becauſe it hath an euill ſmell, wee may adde Cinamon and *Semen Apij*: Alſo your *Enula* and Ginger condict is very good, ſo is *Diatrion Piperum*, *Diacumini*, *Diagalanga*, and *Theriaca vetus*, but outwardly the ſtomacke may be annointed with oyle of Lillyes and of ſweet Almonds.

Alſo a Cerot may be prepared after this manner:

℞. *Olei nardini*, ℥ i.
Aloes, *Maſtichis*, *an.* ℥ i.
Succi abſinthij, ℥ ij.
Ceræ q. ſ.
And ſo make a Plaiſter.

Doct. But how if the Hicket proceede from ſome venimous matter lurking in the ſtomacke, what ſhall wee giue in that caſe?

Stud. Then we giue theſe or the like Lozenges, that haue a propertie to reſiſt venime.

℞. *Sem. Anethi Cardui Benedicti.*
Sem. Citri, an. ℈ i.
Melissæ, Corticum citri, an. ℥ß.
Coralli rubri, Galangæ.
Macis, Cinamomi, an. ℈ ß.
Margaritarum,
Fragmentorum Smaragdi an. gr. viij.
Cornu Cerui & Unicornis, an. gr. iiij.
Cum saccharo borraginati, & vino albo tenui odorifero, make Lozenges.

And this may suffice, for the *Singult* or Hicket.

Doct. The next shall be the paine of the Stomacke: let me heare how you will discourse of that.

Of paine of the Stomacke.

Conference. XXI.

Student.

PAine of the Stomacke, called *Cardialgia*, proceedeth from certaine gnawing and biting humours retained in the Stomacke: this infirmitie hath a certaine affinitie with *Cardiaca passio*, which proceedeth from noughtie and virulent humous affecting the mouth of the stomacke, being there gathered together, from whence there followeth a great weakenes & feeblenesse of the whole body, so that at the last the patient doth fall into the Syncope or Souning. Indeed *Cardiaca passio* doth differ from this *Cardialgia*, because this infirmitie proceedeth from gnawing and eroding humours, and the other rather from virulent and venemous humours.

Doct. Proceede to your cure.

Stud. Succus anethi, being boyled in water, and drunke to the quantitie of two or three measures doth ease the paine of

of the ſtomacke very much, if there hapneth with the ſame eyther vomit or hicket. Alſo in an hot cauſe we may giue Corrall to drinke in fountaine water.

Alſo the ſeede of *Naſturtium* drunke in Goates milke doth take away the paine of the ſtomacke.

Pſony ſeedes doe remoue and take away the paine of the ſtomacke: we vſe to giue fifteene of the blacke ſeedes, or as much of the roote as a Filberd.

Doct. But it hapneth that ſometimes the paine proceedeth by reaſon of ſome ſtroke or fall, what muſt be giuen in that caſe?

Stud. Then,

℞. *Mumiæ gran.* i.
Boli armeni gran. xvi.
Crocigran. vij.
And let it be giuen to the Patient.

Doct. But giue me ſome medicines that you giue in an hot cauſe?

Stud. In an hot cauſe whoſe ſignes are inflamation of the Stomack a ſharpe and pricking paine, bitterneſſe of the mouth, and vomitting of choler, may be giuen this medicine to purge the Patient. Hot cauſe.

℞. *Rhubarb. elect.* ʒ ij.
Spicæ gran. x.
Diacatholici, ʒ vi.
Electuarij roſati meſue, ʒ iij
Miſce, & fiat Potus, cum decoctione communi florum & fructuum.

Let it be giuen to the Patient in the morning, or we giue to the Patient euery morning and euening the quantitie of an Acorne of this:

℞. *Diacitoniten ſine ſpeciebus cum ſaccharo,* ℥ij.
Sacchari roſati,
Conſeruæ acetoſitatis citri, an. ℥ i.
Miſce cum ſyrupo de abſinthio,
& fiat Electuarium molle.

Doct. But what if the paine be so intollerable that the patient cannot endure it, how shall we succour him?

Stud. Then we may giue this medicine.

℞. *Syrupi rosati,*
Syrupi de Absinthio, an. ℥ i. ſß.
Opij gran. i.

Mixe them, and boyle it very lightly with one boyling, then let it be mixt with three ounces of the broath of a chicken, and giue it to the Patient.

Doct. These are remedies in an hot cause, how will you proceede in a cold cause, and proceeding through winde?

Stud. Then first of all I doe administer this Clyster.

In a cold cause.

℞. *Mercurialis, foliorum Maluæ,*
Florum Camomeli, Absinthij, Menthæ, an. M. i.
Furfuris grossi, ligati in petia, M. ij.
bulliant in sufficiente quantitate aquæ, ad consumptionem medietatis, & de Colatura accipe lib. i.
Benedictæ, ℥ i. ſß.
vitellum ouj, N. i. *Misce,*
& injiciatur Clystere stomacho ieiuno.

The next day we giue this or the like purging medicine.

℞. *Agarici electi,* ℥ ij.
Ligetur in petia, & bulliat in vi. ℥. *aquæ claræ, ad consumptionem medietatis.*

Then let there be a strong expression made and strayned then adde vnto the straining, *Diasenæ lenitiui* ℥ vi. *floris Cassiæ nouiter tractæ,* ℥ ſß. *& fiat Potus,* which must be giuen to the patient at foure of the clocke in the morning.

The next day we may proceed to digest the matter for sixe dayes together, with this syrup following.

℞. *Syrupi de absinthio,*
Sirupi de Mentha.
Mellis rosati colati, an. ℥ ſß.
Aquarum Fœniculi,
Absinthij, Cichoreæ, an. ℥ i.
Misce.

The

The ſeauenth day following let him take theſe pils.

℞. *Pilularum Aliphanginarum,*
Maſticinarum conſiliatoris,
Agarici trochiſcati, an. ℈ i.
Mixe them, and with the ſyrup of Mints make it into fiue Pils, and let them be taken an houre before day.

In like manner if the patient take of this Electuarie two houres before meate, morning and euening, the quantitie of halfe an ounce at a time.

℞. *Diagalangæ, Diacymini, an.* ℥ i.
Mithridati optimi, ℥ i.
Miſce, & fiat Electuarium.

In like manner for paine proceeding of winde.

℞. *Extremitatum Abſinthij partem* i.
Seſeleos, ſpicæ Celticæ ad partem ſ8
terantur & coquantur in aqua,
& propinentur in potu.

Or ℞. *Diagalangæ* ℥ iij.
Diacymini, Theriacæ veteris, mithridat. opt. an. ℥ i.
Syrupi menthæ q. ſ.
fiat Electuarium molle.

Doct. Let me know your outward applications that you haue to ceaſe paine.

Stud. You ſhall: and firſt, an oyntment.

℞. *Olei Nardini, Maſtichini, an.* ℥ ij. *Unguentum.*
Olei Macis, Camomelini,
Anethini, an. ℥ iij.
Olei Rutacei,
Auxungiæ humanæ, an. ℥ iij. ſ8.
Nucis muſcatæ, ℥ ſ8.
Fiat Unguentum.

℞. *Radicum Ariſtolochiæ longæ,* ℥ ſ8. *Fomentatio.*
Florum Camomillæ,
Meliloti, an. M. i. ſ8.
Roſarum Rubrarum. M. ſ8.

Semin.

Semin. Cumini, Aniſi,
Fœniculi, an. ℥ i. ſ8.
Seminum Fœnugræci, lini, an. ℥ i.
Foliorum Abſinthij, M. i.

Let all be boyled in fountaine water, vntill the third part be conſumed, and then ſtraine it, and with the ſtraining foment the ſtomacke three or foure times in the day, with the liquour being hot. Or,

℞. *Panis mediocriter toſti q.ſ.*
Vino maluatico, ſuccoq; Menthæ,
& Abſinthij q.ſ.
Maſcerate the toſte therein, then adde ij. ℥. of the pouder of Nutmegs, and apply it to the ſtomack, it eaſeth the paine, and ſtayeth vomit and Hicket.

Scutum ſtomachale.

Or, ℞. *Emplaſtri ſtomachi Galeni,* ℥ i.
Caryophillorum, Macis, Maſtichis,
Roſarum Rubrarum, ſeminum Aniſi,
Fœniculi, an. ℥ i.
Galangæ Menthæ ſiccæ, an. ℥ ſ8.
Ladani, ℈ ij. ſ8.
Olei Nardini, Maſtichini, an. q.ſ.
& fiat Scutum ſtomachale.

Sacculus.

Or there may be prepared this Bagge for the ſtomacke.

℞. *Florum roſarum rubrarum,*
Menthæ ſiccæ, Abſinthij, an. ℥ ij. ſ8.
Galangæ, Cinamomi, Cariophilorum,
Maceris Ladani, an. ℥ i. ſ8.
Comminuantur, pannoq; rubeo ſerico
inſinuantur, fiat Sacculus pro ſtomacho.

And this may ſuffice as concerning remedies for paine of the Stomacke.

Doct. Wee had almoſt forgotten the Cough, proceede forwards with that Infirmitie.

Of

Of the Cough.

Conference XXII.

Student.

THE Cough is a vehement endeuour of the parts of the lungs and breast, to expell such things as are hurtfull to them. Therefore it is *Symptoma mali motus*, which happeneth from matter stirred vp from the cause working the disease, which is an inequall distemperature, or a solution of the continuity of the parts of the breast, vvith auoyding of matter, or without. When it happeneth with auoyding of matter, it proceedeth from some other place, as chiefly from the head, as is knowne by the signes of the Catarrhe. It is also causèd by vvormes, or by a sharpe humour troubling the stomacke, but for the most part by defluxion from the braine, sometimes hot and sometimes colde; also an humour ingendred in the lungs, either thinne or grosse growing visced and tough, sometimes the *Asperitir* of the Artier doth cause onely a dry cough, and therefore if we will rightly cure the cough, we must first seeke out the cause thereof. Cough.

Doct. Let me heare your cure for the cough?

Stud. The cough proceeding from a colde distempe- From colde.
rature, which happeneth for the most part in the Winter season, may be remedied with hot things: as to keepe his Chamber very warme, his necke, and his feete, with the application of hot cloathes to his stomacke, his drinkes must be warme and made sweet, his breast may be annoynted with hot and comfortable oyles, as oyle of Macis, of Dill, of Lillies, and such like.

Doct. But giue me a Receipt of some fit and conuenient vnguent.

Stud. I will.

℞. *Butiri antiqui ſine ſale.*
Olei Amigdalarum dulcium.
Olei Liliorum alborum an. ℥ i.
Muſcilagnus ſeminis altheæ.
Muſcilag. ſem. Malueæ an. ℥ ſſ.
Croci ℈. ſſ.
Mixe them, and with a little vvaxe make an oyntment, vvith vvhich very warme annoynt all the breaſt ouer.

Doct. This remedy is for the cough proceeding from a colde cauſe, how ſhall wee proceede vvhen it ariſeth from thinne and ſharpe humors?

Stud. Then we engroſſe the matter with ſyrup of Violets, of Iuiubes, *De tuſſi laginibus*, and *pillulis albis*. Alſo we ſtay and engroſſe the matter with *Diacodij.* ℥ i. or *Philonij* ℥ i. or with the Pils *de Cynogloſſo* ℈ i. made into two Pils.

Doct. But how ſhall wee lenifie and ſmooth the aſperity of the Artier?

Stud. That may be remedied with the vſe of *ſirupus Liquiritiæ, Penidiſe*, & with Lozenges of *Diatragacanthi frigidi.* And if children cough by reaſon of the vvormes, we muſt giue water of the infuſion of Rhubarbe, or elſe ſome fit pouder againſt the wormes.

Doct. Let me haue ſome particular remedies ſet downe for a ſupply.

Stud. I will ſet downe remedies ſufficient.

In an hot cauſe.

℞. *Iuiubarum, Sebeſten an. Num. x.*
Glycyrrhizæ, Paſſularum Enucleatarum an. ℥ ſſ.
Bulliant in ſufficienti quantitate aquæ, et cum Colatura diſſolue floris Caſſiæ nouiter tractæ ℥ i.
Electuarij roſati Meſue ʒ ij.
Miſce, et fiat potus; et Detur tuſſienti in diluculo. Or

Pils.

℞. *Pilularum aurearum Nicholai* ℈ ij.
Pil. aſſaieret ℈. i.
Miſce cum ſyrupo Violato et fiant pilulæ Num. v. Or

℞ *Aqua*

℞. *Aquæ hordij* ℥v.
Diacodij cum Saccharo ℥ ß.
Miſce et apud ignem Calefiant, et Tuſſienti exhibeto. Or

℞. *Succi hordij extracti, ex hordij recenti, et mundo* ℥ ij.
Pulueris Diatragacan. frigidi ʒ ij.
Miſce et diſſoluantur cum aqua Decoctionis Glycyrrhizæ Iuiubarum, et paſſularum enucleat. q.ſ. Or

℞. *Diatragacanthi frigidi, Diacodij, cum Saccharo, Diapenidij ſine ſpecieb⁹ an.* ℥ i. Loche.
Boli armeni ſubt. pul. ʒ i.
Miſce et cum Iulepo Violato fiat ad modum Loch.

Let the Patient licke of this Medicine oftentimes in the day, this is good as well for hoarceneſſe as the cough. Or

℞. *Sacchari candi* ℥ iij. Paſte.
Gummi arabici tragacanthæ, amyli an. ʒ ij.
Succi Glycyrrhizæ ℥ i.
Sarinæ hordei ʒ iij.

Let all be finely poudered, and vvith ſuger diſſolued in *aqua Violata q.ſ.* make a Paſte.

Or vvee may frame Pils for the Patient to holde in his mouth at his entrance into bed, after this manner.

℞. *Diacodij, pulueris Diatragacanthi frigidi, Penidiarum an.* ℥ ij.
Boli armeni ʒ ß.
Pulueriz entur omnia Subtiliſſime, et cum ſyrupo Myrtino fiant Pilulæ ad modum lupinorum. Of which let the Patient take one at a time.

And theſe remedies may ſerue in an hot cauſe, and where there is a thinne Rhume. In the cough proceeding from colde, we vſe theſe Medicines.

℞. *Syrupi de Hyſſopo, ſyrupi de Glycirrh. Mellis Roſati Colati an.* ℥ ß. In cauſa frigida.
Aquarum capillorum veneris, vngulæ Caballinæ, Betonicæ an. ℥ i.
Miſce pro vna vice.

This syrup must be continued for seauen dayes together.

In the eight day let the Patient take this purging Potion.

Purgatio. Rx. *Electuarij de cassia* ℥ i.
Penidiarum ℥ ß.
Agarici præ. ʒ i.
Misce, et dissoluantur cum aqua decoctionis Liquiritiæ et Iuinbarum q.s.

Electuary. Rx. *Pinearum mundatarum, amigdalarum dulc. mundat. an.* ℥ iij.
Penidiarum ℥ vi.
Olei amigdalarum dulc. recentis ℥ij.
Sacchari q.s. et fiat in forma electuarij.

Of this Medicine the Patient must take an ounce two houres before dinner, and another at the entrance into his bed. Or,

Electuary. Rx. *Diapenidij sine Speciebus, Loch. sani et experti an.* ℥i.
Penidiarum ℥ ij.
Syrupi de Hyssopo q.s. ad incorporandum, and make an Electuarie: and let the Patient take of this, and holde it in his mouth, and let it melt downe by degrees. Or,

Iulep. Rx. *Olei amigdalarum dulc.* ℥ vi.
Sacchari optimi dissoluti in aqua vugũlæ Caballinæ q.s. et fiat Iulep. Of which let the Patient take a spoonfull oftentimes in the day. Or,

Rx. *Butiri recentis sine sale lib.* i. *Vitell. ouorum recentium Num.* iij. *Farinæ amyli* ℥ ij.
Sacchari dissoluti in aqua Violata ℥ i.
Mixe them, and let them be well wrought together, vntill it be a Condiment of a pleasant taste: this will serue both for meate and medicine.

And this may suffice for the Cough, proceeding from a colde, therefore let the discreete Studient make his choise as it shall like him.

Doct.

Doct. Let vs now returne in order, where we left, that is, to the ſtomacke, I meane the weakeneſſe thereof, let me ſee your helpes that you haue for that infirmitie?

Of Imbecilitie and weakeneſſe of the ſtomacke.

Conference. XXIII.

Student.

RAwneſſe, or vveakeneſſe of the ſtomacke, is a diſpoſition of the alteratiue faculty of the ſame, wherein the meate is nothing at all altered, or if it be, it is but very little digeſted or concocted, this proceedeth either from a colde and moyſt diſtemperature, or of ſome humor lurking, or pinned vp in the coates or filmes of the ſtomacke. Sometimes it happeneth from choler, and then there is felt an eroſion or knawing in the ſtomacke, and eſpecially vvhen it is empty, alſo there is caſt forth by vomit a bitter humour, and the mouth is thereby infected, and in the end it turneth into *Cardialgiam*, and cauſeth an intollerable paine.

Doct. What are the ſignes to diſtinguiſh the cauſe of this diſeaſe?

Stud. The ſignes to know this diſeaſe, & the cauſes thereof are theſe in a colde cauſe, there is a dull and difficult concoction, the taſte of the nouriſhment is felt long after, there is ſharpe belchings, and little or no thirſt. But contrariwiſe in an hot cauſe there is exceeding thirſtineſſe, abhorring of meate, and bitter belchings, and this is certaine, that if the cauſe be hot, then the Patient is eaſed by adminiſtring of colde things, if the cauſe be colde, in like manner, he is eaſed by giuing hot things.

Doct. Now let me know your order of curing.

Stud. As concerning the cure of a cold cauſe, the Patient

muſt vſe euery other day: Pils of *Hiera*, or *Elephanginis*, *Myrobalans condite*, *Lozenges* of *Aromaticum roſatum*, the ryne of the Citrine condite, or Nutmegs condite, Ginger condite, or you may vſe ſyrups of Mints, of Wormwood, or *ſyrupus conſeruationis citri*, of either ℥i. and mixe them: whereof the Patient may take in the morning a ſpoonefull. Alſo *vinum maluaticum* aromatized, or Wormwood-wine, which is made *ex centum libris Muſti*, and one of Wormewood, or take halfe a pinte of *Aquæ vitæ*, a dragme of *pulvis ducis* (your *pulvis ducis* is vſed to be made of one pound of ſuger, and one ounce of Cinamon) let them be tempered with the *Aquæ vitæ*, three pintes of Roſe water, and ſo let it runne twice or thrice through an Hippocrice bagge, and thereof take oftentimns in the vveeke a ſpoonefull in the morning faſting, eſpecially in the Winter-time. The common ſort are wont to vſe *pulueris Ducis cum vino*, or a Toaſt intincted with vvine ſprinkled with this pouder: or vvee may prepare it in an opiat, after this manner.

A Cordiall Opiate.

℞. *Conſeruæ acori. Corticis Citri Conditi. Myrobalanorum emblicorum. Conditorum an.* ℥ ſß.
Pulueris aromatici roſ. ʒ ij.
Nucis muſcatæ Condit.
Theriacæ vel Mithridat. ʒ i.
Cum ſyrupo Conſeruationis Citri, fiat opiata.

Before meales the Patient may take a Lozenge of *Arom. Roſatum*, eſpecially when he doth not vſe Pils of *Hiera* or *Elephangina*, or hee may vſe this pouder that doth helpe concoction betweene meales.

A pouder helping concoction.

℞. *Garyophilorum.*
Nucis Muſcatæ.
Cinamomi an. ʒ ij.
Specier. aromatici Roſ. ℈ iiij.
Cum quadruplo Saccharo.
Fiat puluis.

Of which let the Patient take euery day, an houre before meate a ſpoonefull, and drinking after it a draught of vvine,

vvine, for that will prepare the ſtomacke to the next concoction.

Doct. This is the cure in a cold cauſe, let me now heare your cure in an hot cauſe?

Stud. In an hot cauſe we purge with *Caſſia cum Rheo* ℥i. and withall open a veine: Wee alſo appoint Lozenges of *Diarhodon Ab. triaſandali, ſyrupium granatorum limonum Cydoniorum*, and ſuch like. We make him Broathes of cooling hearbs, and Apozems that coole alſo. Sallets of Lettice, and Cichorie, and Purſlaine, or ſuch like, Cherries alſo and Damſons are very good. Cure of an hot cauſe.

Doct. What be your outward applications in a colde cauſe?

Stud. In a colde cauſe vvee apply outwardly oyle of Wormewood, of Maſtich, of Nutmegs, or if you liſt, you may frame a ſtomatical vnguent of thoſe oyles, with a little of *Ceratum ſtomachale Galeni*, in ſtead of waxe, and ſo make an vnguent, vvhere with the ſtomacke may be appointed. Or

℞. *Cerati ſtomachalis Galeni* ℥ iiij.
Olei abſinthij Chimici, *Olei nucum muſcat. Chim.* } *an. gut.* vi.
Miſce, et fiat Ceratum ſtomachali in ſarima ſcuti.

Ceratum ſtomachale.

Or if you liſt, you may ſpread vpon a piece of bread, honey, and caſt thereupon the pouders of Nutmegges, of Cloues, and Cinamon, and ſo apply it all ouer the ſtomack: or we may prepare after this manner.

℞. *Pulueris roſ. rubrarum. Abſinthij, Menthæ, Maioran. Siccæ an.* ℥ ij.
Ligni Aloes, ſpicæ nardi, Culami aromatici, Schenanthi an. ℈. ij.
Fiat puluis, qui excipiatur, Cotone inuoluatur duplici linteo, aut.

A comfortable pouder for the ſtomacke.

Or for the richer ſort it may be quilted in red Sarſenet, and ſo make a *ſcutium ſtomachale*, with ſtrings to be tyed faſt vpon the breaſt and ſtomacke. And this muſt be remembred,

remembred that oyntments, emplaiſters, and Cataplaſmes, muſt not onely be applied before, but behinde, alſo about the thirteenth vertebre.

Doct. What be your outward applications in an hot cauſe?

In an hot cauſe.

Stud. We apply *oleum roſaceum*, *oleum Cydoniorum*, of which with a little *Ceratum ſandalinum*, in ſtead of waxe, we frame a liniment. We muſt take great heede that we apply not things that coole too much, as *oleum papaueris*, or ſuch like, for ſo we may bring a worſe diſtemperature, and thoſe cooling things muſt be applied below the ſtomacke, about the nauell, or at the very bottome of the ſtomacke. For we may not touch the *ſeptum tranſuerſum* with things that coole too much, according to *Auicen*: for as *Galen* writeth, *Octauo Methodi, frigida præcordijs admota lædunt reſpirationem propter Diaphragma.* If choler doe abound, wee may procure vomit, eſpecially to thoſe that are accuſtomed to the ſame.

Doct. Set me downe ſome ſupply of comfortable Medicines, that doe concerne the ſtomacke in a colde cauſe.

Cordiall Lozenges.

Stud. ℞. *Specierum Aromatici roſati* ʒ ß.
Diagalangæ, Zinziberis condit. an. ϑ ij.
Maſtichis, Cinnamomi an. ϑ. i. ß.
Gariophyllorum, nucis Muſcat. an. ϑ i.
Saccharo albiſſ. Diſſoluti in aqua abſinthij et Menthæ q.ſ. Fiat Electuarum in tabulis. Whereof let the Patient take one an houre before meales, and let him drinke afterwards a draught of red wine. Or

Electuarium.

℞. *Diamargariti* ʒ ij.
Aromat. roſ. Mithridati an. ʒ i.
Diacydonites cum ſpeciebus ʒ i.
Syrupi menthæ q.ſ. Fiat Electuarium molle. Or,

Electuarium.

℞. *Aromatici roſati* ʒ ij.
Diagalangæ ʒ i.
Zinziberis condit. ʒ i. ß.
Zedoariæ, Nucis Muſcat. an. ϑ ij.

Syrupi

Syrupi de corticibus citri q. ſ.
Fiat Electuarium molle.

℞. *Cerati ſtomatici Galeni* ℥i. ſ8. Emplaiſter.
Radicum Cyperi ℈. i. *Croci* ℈. ſ8.
Cinamomi ℈ ij. *Maſtiches* ℥ ſ8.
Olei abſinthij q. ſ. Fiat emplaſtrum.

And this may ſuffice as concerning the vveakeneſſe of the ſtomacke.

Of immoderate, or Dogge-like deſire of meate.

Conference. XXIIII.

Doctour.

LEt vs now goe forwards with diſeaſes of the ſtomacke, the next is, *appetitus Caninus*, an immoderate, or dog-like deſire of meat. Let me heare how you will define that diſeaſe?

Stud. This diſeaſe is called of the Greeks, Κυνοδὴς ὄρεξις, vvhich is *Canina appetentia*, a dogge like appetite, becauſe in this affect, the ſicke is caried vvith a vehement appetite, after a deuouring or rauening manner of a dogge, which after the ſwallowing, doth forth-with vomit it vp againe, and preſently doth returne vnto meat and fill himſelfe. In this affect the Patient doth vomit phlegme and receiuing meat, cannot retaine it, and caſting it vp, doth preſently deſire more.

Doct. What is the part affected in this diſeaſe?

Stud. The part affected in this diſeaſe is the mouth of the ſtomacke, which in like manner in an naturall appetite is ſtirred vp, for which cauſe there is brought thither a moſt worthy payre of ſinewes, from the ſixt conjugation of the braine: from whence and by which meanes, that part is poſſeſſed with exceeding and exquiſite ſenſe.

Doct. Now shew me the cause of this disease?

Stud. The cause thereof is a perpetuall gnawing or biting of the mouth of the stomacke, naturall, like vnto a sucking, but this gnawing or biting, is stirred vp from many & diuers causes: for sometimes it may happen through a colde distemperature of the mouth of the stomacke, sometimes through colde, sharpe, and vitious humours, which the mouth of the stomacke doth swallow, and bringing thither erosion and gnawing, vvhich doth answere by proportion, a kinde of sucking, exciting an appetite, and desire of meates, no otherwise then if it were naturally affected. These humors or iuyces, are either phlegmaticke or melancholicke, which coacting and astricting the coates of the stomacke, doth bring in emptinesse euen as it were in a naturall hunger. Sometimes this disease doth proceede through certaine kindes of wormes which doe deuoure the meate that is taken into the stomacke, as fast as it is receiued: also from some exceeding fluxe of the wombe, or of the monethly courses. Sometimes through drinking of colde water, cooling the mouth of the stomacke, and when the licke doth feede vpon such things as are of small nourishment, as hearbs, or by a long vse of meates that haue a deterging and scouring property, as Figges, sauce that they call *Barum*, vvhich doe cleanse and scoure away the phlegme of the stomacke, &c. In this affect some are troubled, as I haue already said, with a continuall and accustomed vomiting, with the Cholicke, or *Dysenteria*, or vvith the Dropsie, and the reason is, that before the concoction of the first meate, others being taken in, it is impossible to
Atroph. auoyde crudity. This disease also doth oftentimes bring a sleepe, and a leuity of the intestines with consumption, and at the last death.

Doct. Now let vs heare your order of curing?

Diet. *Stud.* First as concerning his Diet, if the euill proceede from a colde distemperature, or from colde humours, the Patient must liue in an ayre, that is, declining to hot and drie,

drie, he must auoyde immoderate watchings: and sleepe is to be prouoked as much as may be, his exercise must be moderate, before the vvhich, the body must be auoyded from its excrements. Amongst affections of the minde, there is none more hurtfull then feare and sorrow. As for his meate and drinke in this disease, the best remedy is wine, and little meate; his wine must be either Canarie or Muscadell, or such, that is, without astriction: for such vvines doe mightily heate, and quickly nourish, and therefore it doth easily remoue hunger. And that is the reason that those that begin their Dinner or Supper with drinke, doe eate very little or nothing. And therefore we prescribe before meales the Patient to drinke more then ordinary, so that it be somewhat warme: although for those that are in health, it were better to drinke in the midst of meales, and at the latter end rather then in the beginning. And the reason is, that the mouth of the stomacke, in which this euill resteth, may be the more warmer, & the more stronger by the same. All sharpe and astringent meates and drinkes are hurtfull; but such meates as are fat and oylie are very good, and those are fat Broathes either of Beefe or Mutton, or a dish of Brues framed of the same. Also Porke in this disease is very good, for these things doe quickly fill and dull the appetite: so that they shall not feed very much afterwards on other meates. Egges also either rosted hard or fryed, may be vsed. In his wine that hee drinketh, may be put Anni-seeds, Commin-seeds, Fennel-seeds, and Parsly-seeds, and Pepper, that hath a property to warme the mouth of the stomacke. If these things doe not good, wee may mixe with his meates those things that cut asunder and attenuate, as Garlick, Leekes, Tyme, Hyssop, Origanum, Penniriol, and such like. But for because that sometimes it happeneth through the custome of vomiting, that nothing is retained in the stomacke, and by that meanes the body pineth and consumeth away, the Patient must take but a small quantity of meate at a time, which if he cannot retaine, wee

may fixe Cupping-glasses to the belly, nigh the nauell: and at the end of his meales may be giuen such things as are astringent, as some digestiue pouder, Marmelad of Quinces, and the like.

Doct. But vvhat if this order of Diet be not sufficient, what shall we doe then?

Stud. If these things before said will not serue, we must then vse such Medicines as may prepare, and auoyde, the grosse and cold humor, such as is *Oximel simplex* and *squillitícum*: he may be purged with *Hiera*, to which may be added *Agarick* trochiscated, & therewith Pils may be framed.

To strengthen the stomacke.

To strengthen the stomacke may be vsed Ginger condite, the Citren rinde condite, Nutmegs, & *aromaticum rosatum*, of which may be prepared Opiats, with syrup of Mints, or Wormewood. In like manner for that *fotus*, linaments, vnguents, Emplaisters, and *scuta*, may be applied to the stomacke, if it doe proceede through vvormes, the cure for wormes must be vsed: if it proceede from immoderate dissipation, let him abstaine from such things as are hot, from drinking of wine, and such like, but he must vse quietnesse, and meane sleepe: but he must beware of too much watchfulnesse, and of all the affections of the minde, let him take heede of anger. And thus much concerning an immoderate or dogge-like appetite.

Of a depraued, or corrupt Appetite.

CONFERENCE. XXV.

Doctour.

WHat is a depraued, or appetite corrupted?

Stud. This disease is called *Pica*, and *Malacia*, which is, a languishing of the stomacke, vvith a prouoking or desire of vomiting, or casting

casting vp of meate receiued, and sometimes vomiting of choler and phlegme: or it is a certaine desire of vicious and vnwholesome meates; for they desire strange things, & such as indeed are not to be eaten: in the beginning they desire sharpe and sower things, sometimes raw flesh, shels, coales, chalke, lyme, salt, vinegar, olde rags, rotten leather, tarre, candles, and such like things, that Nature doth abhorre, and which a sound stomacke doth neuer desire, nor can abide to haue it come neere the mouth.

Doct. What is the part affected in this disease?

Stud. The part affected is the mouth of the stomacke, as may be perceiued by the appetite, which is euill and faultie, which properly doth proceede there-hence. And according to *Piso*, it is a Symptom, or an hurtfull action of the animall facultie, which doth erre, and not desire meate, & good nourishment, but that which is of euill qualitie and hurtfull to the body. This disease for the most part hapneth to young women, being repleat and full of noughty humours, and chiefely when they are with childe. Note.

Doct. But may not this affect of lusting happen to none but to those women that are with childe?

Stud. Yes, it may happen to maides, and girles, and such as are troubled with *Cachexia*, through the retention of the menses, or of seede: or through corrupt humours retained it the stomacke, as hapneth to those that are troubled with melancholy, or with other such like diseases, or with diuers humours corrupted: for it hapneth for the most part that the stomacke doth desire such like things as are answerable to the humours that it doth containe. As suppose there be blacke choler shed in the stomacke, and burnt, they desire such things as are acide and sharp, as hapneth to those women that are with childe. Note.

Doct. But what if there be contained in the stomacke burnt choler?

Stud. Then they desire coales, ashes, and other such things as are dry, with the which they are much delighted.

Thoſe that haue ſalt humours, they deſire things that are ſalt: but thoſe that are with childe being full of humours, and thoſe who haue a ſuppreſſion of the menſtrues, and ſome children from their infancie by a cuſtome haue vſed to eate earth. Somtimes you may find old men to be affected with this diſeaſe. Some haue written otherwhiles, that as a ſound ſtomacke doth deſire like things, ſo that which is affected beſides nature, doth deſire things contrary: and ſo likewiſe it is to be imagined, that noughtie humours being contained in the mouth of the ſtomacke, doe moue the ſame to deſire that which is contrary, and which cannot but ſomwhat amend or profit the corruption thereof. But ſome doe confirme the former opinion, which haue ſaid, that the coates of the mouth of the ſtomacke haue beene imbrued and defiled with an humour or excrement, which by the long continuance aud cuſtome thereof, they doe deſire the like: ſome haue referred the cauſe of this effect to cruditie and corruption in the whole body, which being communicated to the mouth of the ſtomacke, they will haue it to be affected by conſent.

Signe. In the like affects there doe appeare daily ſpettings, gnawing of the mouth of the Stomacke, heauineſſe, and according to the varietie of the vicious humours, the patient doth deſire the fore-ſaid diuers and ſtrange meates. Wherefore we ſhall not neede any other ſigne for the knowledge of the ſame.

This diſeaſe for the moſt part doth happen to women that are with childe, about the fourtieth day from conception, and doe continue oftentimes vntill the fourth Moneth.

Doct. How doth it goe away afterwards?

Stud. It ceaſeth in the fourth moneth, partly becauſe thoſe vitious humours are auoided by vomit, and partly becauſe they are concocted, by reaſon that about thoſe times the woman receiueth but little nouriſhment through a lothſomneſſe; partly alſo becauſe the multitude is diminiſhed

niſhed by euacuation, becauſe in the firſt two moneths the childe draweth to it ſelfe but little bloud, being as yet but of ſmall growth, but now when it beginneth to encreaſe, it doth require much more nouriſhment, and then doth not draw that onely which is good, from the veynes, but alſo becauſe it doth require a greater ſtore of nouriſhment, it draweth withall ſomething that is vicious, and ſo it happeneth that the whole body becommeth more emptie from that vicious qualitie, and to be leſſe offended with thoſe noughtie humours.

Doct. Let vs now ſee your remedies?

Stud. Firſt, we muſt appoint a dyet according to the humour that ſhall offend; for which purpoſe the Patient muſt vſe ſuch meates as doe not eaſily corrupt in the ſtomacke: his bread may be macerated *in ſucco Citonierum*, or *in ſucco malorum punicorum*, alſo *Cicchorie* is very good in this caſe: his meate may be Chicken, or Partridge, or of a Henne with parſley. Fat things, and ſuch as are ſweet muſt be auoided. *Ætius* ſaith, that the feete and inwards of hogs are very good, but there muſt be a moderation in the quantitie, and if the Patient ſhall loath meate, he may vſe ſome other fiſh and fruits that doe delight him. And if they doe greedily deſire any thing, they muſt not be denyed it, although it be not conuenient. To thoſe which deſire to eate earth there is nothing ſo profitable as new ſtarch. And generally it is good to giue before meate pickled Oliues, with pure white bread, or ſeauen bitter Almonds. After meate may be giuen halfe a dozen Reyſins of the Sunne, or ſome of a Pomegranate, or a Peare. The patient muſt drinke little, leaſt the nouriſhment ſwimme in the ſtomack, and his wine may be Malmeſie or Muſcadine, or ſuch like, or in the place of wine, he may vſe a decoction of Cinamon, or of Aniſe-ſeedes or Fenell. Alſo exerciſe is very profitable if they vſe as much as they can endure. The humour from whence this diſeaſe ſpringeth is rather wheyiſh and thinne, then groſſe and thicke, and therefore things that

Cure.

that doe deterge & scoure, are more conuenient then strong purging medicines. Often vomitings betweene meales is very profitable, therefore if the stomacke be gnawne with some sharpe, sower, or some salt humour, the patient may drinke hot water, and so it may be the more easily cast vp by vomit; and if he be hard to vomit, there may be added vinegar or syrup of vinegar. If through the viscositie and grossenesse of the humour it can hardly be auoided, we may giue *Mulsum*, and the decoction of Radish together: for we must with all our endeuour procure the humour, that doth offend, to be auoided by vomit and especially in those that are with childe. Notwithstanding we take heede of giuing medicines in the first moneths, when the disease beginneth, for those women are not to be forced with strong vomits, because it may bring danger of abortion.

Doct. But what if with all this order of diet, the Patient finde no remedie within foure moneths, what must we doe afterwards?

Stud. Then we must prepare the humour, as wee haue said before, and purge it gently with *Cassia, Tamarinds, Whey, Sena*, and such like. *Elaterium*, and such like strong medicines, must be auoided for otherwise it may endanger the childe. If this disease take hold in men, which is but seldome seene, they must be purged with vomit; if they cannot vomit, then the humour must be prepared with *Oximel simplex*, or *Oximel squilliticum*, and purged with *Hiera*, or with *Rhubarb* alone, or with *Agarike*, as the humour shall abound. After purging there may be giuen of the pouder of *Comin-seede, Ammeos, Maris, Carpsiorum*, of euery one a dragme: of which may be giuen halfe a dragme in white wine, that is a little austere or sharpe. In the cure of this affect, they must be diligently admonished in the beginning, and must be constrained from the vse of such vnwholesome feeding, those of reason must hearken to perswasion, and children must be made to forbeare with the rod.

Doct.

Doct. Set downe a remedie that may be vsed in this disease.

Stud. I will: and first, if the humor be tough and thick, and not apt to be auoided, we may vse this digestiue.

℞. *Oximellis simplicis,*
Mellis rosati colati an. ℥ vi.
Aquarum Fœniculi,
Melissæ, Betonicæ, an. ℥ i. ℈.
Misce.

Afterwards it may be purged with *Hiera picra,* ℥℈. Also for this purpose, pils *de tribus Fernelij, Alœphanginæ, pid. Stomachichæ Electuarium Elescoph. Mesui.* In like manner, *Aqua Melissæ,* and *aqua thermarum,* whether it be of Alom, or of Sulphur, so it be saltish.

Of loathing of meate, and of the losse of Appetite.

Conference XXVI.

Doctor.

WHat is losse of appetite, or loathing of meate?

Stud. This disease hath many names, in Greeke, it is called Ανορεξια, ἀσιτία, and ἀποσιτία, and ἀποσροφὴ σιτίων, and signifieth nothing else but loathing of meate, and losse of appetite, a disease altogether contrary to that which is called a Dog-like appetite.

Doct. What is the part affected in this disease?

Stud. The part affected in this disease is chiefely the mouth of the stomacke, as doth appeare by the proper action that is hurt: for the action is not onely hurt and diminished, but altogether lost and abolished. At the beginning the stomacke is affected with this *Anorexia,* or loathing of meate, and is caused through an abundance of

a crude and raw humour lurking in the stomacke, or being oppressed through nourishment corrupted, or through meat there remaining vndecocted. Sometimes the stomacke is offended by consent, as from a defluxion from the braine, or abundance of raw humours heaped vp in the veynes, from whence a thinne wheyish matter is sent vnto the stomacke; or from the Lyuer strongly affected, for it hapneth oftentimes that vpon the recouery of some acute and sharpe disease, that there is left behinde a weakenesse of the stomacke, that the patient cannot abide the sight of meate, nor take any nourishment: or if hee doe receiue any, he cannot digest it: which sheweth the cause to be the reliques of the former disease, which doth as yet remaine. This disease doth happen very often through the obstruction of the Mezeraickes and the Lyuer: Also a cholericke humour pressing the mouth of the stomacke may cause this euill. This may also happen in Feauers, and especially in *Synochus*, not putrified, vvhere through the redoundance of bloud, there is no attraction or drawing.

Doct. Goe now to the cure of this disease.

Hot cause. *Stud.* First, as concerning his dyet, if the affect doe proceede from an hot distemperature of the stomacke, a cold dyet must be prescribed: the patient must liue in a colde ayre, for that is very good to excite an appetite, moderate sleepe and quietnesse must be vsed: his body must not be ouer-much bound; anger, heauinesse, cares, and other immoderate perturbations of the minde must be auoyded. Meates that haue a colde propertie must be giuen, and such as may be prepared with vinegar, as Lettuce and Cichory, new laid egges being potched are very good; so are the stones of Lambes and Cockes, all birds of the mountaines may be vsed, because they giue good nourishment. If the stomacke be puffed with cholericke humours, they may be cast forth by a vomit framed of hot water with vinegar, and *Mulsum*, or with syrup of vinegar,

and

and prouoking it to be cast vp, eyther with the finger, or with a feather dipt in oyle, but before the receiuing, there must be giuen things that doe humect and moysten, such as is creame of Ptisan, or the yolkes of egges crude, and then after a small time, to prouoke Vomit.

Doct. But how if the patient cannot vomit?

Stud. Then it must be auoided by stoole giuing such medicines as may not offend the stomacke, or increase the hot distemperature of the stomacke.

Doct. What medicines must those be?

Stud. Such as is *Cassia, Rhubarbe, Hiera picra, Pilula de Hiera, simplici*, when as the humours doe ad-heare to the fibers of the stomacke.

Doct. But how must we proceede, if the distemperature proceede from a cold cause?

Stud. Then wee administer such things as may amend that colde distemperature: as for his meate, the broath of Pigions is much commended, and Reysins of the Sunne, which are very acceptable, to the stomacke, vvhich vvill not corrupt but nourish the same. If phlegme be the cause, it is good to giue him sharpe things, and withall such as may deterge and scoure, as Salt, and Garum, and Capers condited with Sea-Fenell in pickle. Saltfish not fat, with Vinegar and Mustard, may be giuen: Garlicke may also be giuen as well for meate as medicine. His meate may be prepared with Cloues, Cinamon, Pepper, Sugar and Vinegar, which doth prouoke appetite: hee may drinke olde wine and strong, and such as doe warme the stomacke. Colde cause.

As for medicines wee may giue *Diatrion Pipereon*, or *Diacalamenthum*, vvhich must be vsed daily. Also it is profitable to giue *Diaspolitieon* and Treacle, vvhich are not onely profitable to the stomacke, but also doe very much contemperate the malignitie. Wormewood wine, or Syrup of Wormewood, or of Mints, are very profitable to

strenghthen the stomacke, it may be annointed with *Oleum Absinthij, oleum de Mentha*, or *Nardino*. Also a *Sacculus* for to warme the stomacke, may be framed of *Mints*, of the Citren rinde dryed, *lignum Aloes, Cinamon, Macis, Galengal*, and such like. *Sacculus.*

If the losse of stomacke doe not proceed from distemperature, but from some dull cold humours, and such as are grosse, they must be attenuated and made thinne, that they may be auoyded: wherefore the humours must be prepared with *Aceto, Mulso*, or with *Syrupo de quinq; radicibus, cum Aceto*: afterwards it must be purged with *Hiera picra*, which by its sharpnesse and heat, doth dissolue that which is grosse and viscous: and that is to be giuen for the space of seauen or tenne dayes, from ʒ i. ʃ8. to ʒ ij. or ʒ iij. he may be giuen also *Diatrion pipereon*, and such things as we haue remembred for that purpose.

Doct. Set me downe a vomit fit to be giuen against loathing of meate.

Stud. A vomit for that purpose may be giuen after this manner: *Vomit.*

℞. *Aquæ decoctionis raphani,*
Squillæ, seminis Attriplicis, ʒ iiij.
Oxymellitis squill. ʒ i.
Aceti ʒ ʃ8. *Pilorum Croci, Num.* iiij.
Olei communis, ʒ i.

Let this be giuen after dinner by the space of an houre, the stomacke being first filled with diuers kindes of meats.

Doct. Hitherto we haue dealt with the Symptoms of the the stomacke, which doth happen about the appetite of meates: let vs prosecute our discourse in like manner about the desire of drinke, or thirstinesse: tell me therefore, what is Thirstinesse?

of

Of immoderate Thirſtineſſe, or dryneſſe.

CONFERENCE. XXVII.

Student.

THirſtineſſe, which the Greekes call Δίψα, is nothing elſe but an appetite and deſire of cold moiſture: which appetite is thought to be twofold; Naturall, and Animall: the naturall, is that which doth require by naturall inclination a cold and moiſt ſubſtance, for to ſupply the place of the ſubſtance that was diſſipated, waſted and ſpent, euen as an appetite of meates doth deſire that which is hot and dry: But the animall appetite is, when the ſtomacke feeling it ſelfe to be emptie of moyſture, doth deſire drinke; for there is a painefull ſenſe of the qualitie adioyned, which is impreſſed in the mouth of the ſtomacke. The Symptoms which doe happen in this diſeaſe are diuers; for ſometimes there is a priuation of Thirſt, when through the exceſſe of an humour, and of coldneſſe, there is no appetite at all to drinke, or the ſtomacke doth not feele its affection. Sometimes Thirſt is leſſe then it ſhould be, but in this affect the Patient hath an immoderate deſire to drinke. Symptoms.

Doct. What is the part affected in this diſeaſe?

Stud. In this Symptom (for ſo it may be called) the mouth of the ſtomacke is perpetually affected, eyther by it ſelfe, or by conſent with the heart or Lyuer, and chiefely by the inferiour parts thereof, or with the lungs, or by the veynes of the *Meſenterium*, or the *Ieiunum* inflamed, for theſe parts are accompanied with an hot and dry diſtemperature, and chiefely the mouth of the ſtomacke, through the want of moyſture, and by the abundance of heate. This affect for the moſt part, doth happen in hot and

putrified Feauers, in the Hydropſie, and ſuch like.

Doct. Let vs know your cure.

Stud. Friſt, for his dyet: he muſt auoide all ſalt meates, and ſuch as are hot, alſo we muſt not vſe immoderate exerciſe: his wine muſt be diluted with water, his meate muſt be that which is of eaſie digeſture: hee may vſe Barlie-water, holding alwayes ſomething in his mouth that hath a moiſt propertie.

If it proceede of an hot or cholericke matter in the ſtomacke, vomit muſt be prouoked: and if it proceed of drunkenneſſe, or from drought, we giue *Aqua Hordij, conſerua roſ. rub. violarum, Diatr. gagant. frigid.*

If it proceede from the Lyuer, it ſhall be neceſſary to giue ſuch ſyrups as haue a colde propertie, with cooling waters: alſo bloud-letting, and digeſtion of the matter.

Doct. Set me downe ſome of your cooling Iuleps.

Iulepus. *Stud.* ℞. *Seminum Endiuiæ, acetoſæ,*
Plantaginis, an. ℥ ij.
Sem. Citoniorum, ℥ iij.
quat. ſem. com. frigid. an. ℥ i.

Let all boyle in a ſufficient quantitie of running water, vntill the one halfe be conſumed, then let it be lightly ſtrained, and adde to the ſtraining,

Vini Granatorum acetoſorum, ℥i. ſ8.
Succi acetoſitatis citri,
Sacchari candi, an. ℥i. ſ8.

Which muſt be boyled againe at a gentle fire, and made a Iulep: Or elſe,

Loch. ℞. *Succi Coſtarum Lactucæ,*
Succi ſemperuiuæ,
Succi Limonis, an. ℥ iij.
Muſci laginis, ſem. Citonior.
Sacchari candi, an. ℥ i.
& cum Succhar. albiſ.
Fiat Loch.

Of which let the Patient take oftentimes in the day.

Or, ℞.

Or, R. *Aquæ Endiuiæ, lib.* i. ʃ8. *Iulep.*
Vini granat. ℥ iij.
Succi arantiarum, ℥ ij.
Santali albi & rub.
Corral. rub. ſem. com. frigid.
Maior. an. ℥ ʃ8.

Let all boyle together, and in the end adde a little vinegar and Suger-candy, as much as ſhall be ſufficient to make a Iulep.

The Doſe is ℥ ij. with cleare running water, and to the draught muſt be added, *Muſcilaginis Pſyllij, Citoniorum, an.* ℥ i. and ſo let him drinke it.

Auicen ſaith, that from the paine of the ſtomacke wee may gather the ſignes: as if the ſtomacke be heauie and dull, it doth ſignifie repletion: if it be ſtretching or extenſiue, winde: if it doe bite or gnaw, it ſignifieth an acute, ſower, ſharpe, or byting humour. In like manner, where after meate there is felt a dulneſſe, or heauineſſe, inflamation, belching, noyſe, a ſharpe taſte, the Hicket, trembling and extenſion, all theſe doe ſignifie an vnperfect and bad digeſture.

Of Nauſea, *or Vomiting.*

CONFERENCE. XXVIII.

Doctor.

WHat is the cauſe of vomiting?

Stud. The cauſes for the moſt part are the ſame that doe cauſe the Singult, or Hicket, vvhich is the imbecilitie and weakeneſſe of the ſtomacke, that is, of the vertue contentiue: for *Auicen* affirmeth, *ſtomachus debilis quoties cibatur, accidit ei ſubuerſio, nauſea.* Againe, *Materia eſt aggregata, ſua qualitate aut quantitate lædit ſtomachum, & fit Vomitus.*

But

But if the matter be ſtopped, there hapneth *Nauſea* and ſubuerſion. Sometimes the cauſe lyeth hid and ſecret, and therefore we muſt obſerue, that euery vomit is not to be reſtrained, as that which doth happen from the menſes, or is Criticall, vnleſſe it be ſuperfluous.

Doct. Proceede to the cure.

Stud. The readyeſt and chiefeſt cure is ſleepe, if it may be prouoked. Or,

℞. *Oleorum Menthæ,* ʒ iij.
De Abſinth. De Spica, an. ʒ ij.
Oleorum Maſtichis,
Citoniorum, an. ʒ i. ſ8.
Caryophil. roſ. an. ϑ i.
Cum cera fiat Linamentum.

Some are of opinion that *Pentaphyllon* being bruiſed and bound to the hand-wreſts vpon the pulſation doth exceedingly ſtay vomiting. But the patient muſt forbeare meate the ſpace of three or foure houres after vomiting, if it be poſſible, and the face muſt be waſhed with vineger and water, which doth very much comfort the ſtomacke. He muſt eate but a little meate, and that muſt be of eaſie digeſtion, and withall it muſt be roaſted: it will be the more pleaſant, and more ſtrengthening to the ſtomacke, if it be ſeaſoned with Cloues, Mace, Cinamon, Corall, Roſes and Mynts. This remedie is exceeding good:

Pulmentum. ℞. *Vitellum oui.*
Vini Maluatici, lib. ſ8.
Sacchari, ʒ ij.
Amigdalarum excort. N. vi.
Fiat Pulmentum.

The Patient may eate diuers kindes of meates, to ſtirre vp his appetite, ſo that he take but a little at a time, and more oftner. There may be applyed to the ſtomacke a piece of bread, or toſte moyſtened in wine: whereupon may be ſprinckled and caſt red Roſes in pouder, Cloues, Mace, Galengall and Ginger. Coriander being dryed and infuſed in

in vinegar, in an hot cauſe doth reſtraine very much. Hee muſt drinke but little, leaſt his meate ſhould ſwimme about his ſtomacke. In a colde cauſe he may drinke *vinum aromaticum*. In an hot cauſe they may mixe with his wine *aqua ferrata*, or elſe *aqua decoctionis Maſtichis*. Quinces being ſliſed and diſtilled, and ℥ ij. thereof giuen, with ℥i. ſ&. of red wine, in the Morning, at Noone, and in the Euening, doth ſtay vomiting exceedingly. Alſo that water may be mingled with wine. In a materiall cauſe vomit muſt not be ſtayed, vnleſſe the ſtomacke be firſt purged.

Doct. How ſhall wee purge the ſtomacke?

Stud. If the cauſe proceede of Choler, we may purge with *Rhubarb*, with *Mirabolans citrin*. If blood be the cauſe, we may open the *Baſilica* in the left hand. Alſo ligatures, bindings, frications, and ventoſes vpon the ſtomacke are very much commended. Where there followeth Alleuiation, it muſt not be reſtrayned: and if there be conſtipation, we may giue Clyſters.

Doct. How ſhall wee deale with Children that are affected with vomiting?

Stud. Bread toaſted and infuſed as aforeſaid, may be applyed. They may be annointed with oyle of Maſticke, or *cum elio Nardino*.

If the Wormes be the cauſe of vomiting, wee may giue thoſe Pils, that are called *pilulæ communes*, or *peſtilentiales*. Wormes.

Alſo *Diacitoniton*, vſed both outwards and inwards, doth very much comfort the ſtomacke: in a cold cauſe it may be applyed with hot things; and in a hot cauſe with colde things.

Sometimes a vomit doth cure a vomiting: and in like manner to ſtrengthen the ſtomacke your pill *de hiera* and *ſtomachica*.

Syrup of Wormewood, and ſyrup of Mints is vſed for that purpoſe.

Vomiting, with a feuer in the beginning, is not to be reſtrayned, neither in the ſtate, vnleſſe it be ſuperfluous.

Doct. But how if the Patient doe vomit bloud?

Stud. Then we vse the remedies set downe in the spiting of bloud: or you may vse *Rhubarb* torrefied, or chaw in your mouth the hearbe Purslane; or drincke the water thereof: or you may vse this remedy:

To stay vomiting of bloud.

℞. *Terræ sigillat.*
Corallorum rub.
Santali rub. an. ʒ ij.
Cum aquæ portulacæ ʒ iij.
Fiat haustus mane et sero.

If the fault be in the Liuer, the *Basilica* of the right arme may be opened: if from the Head, the *Cephalica.* If from the Spleene, the *Basilica* of the left arme: if from the retention of the menstrues, the *Saphena.*

In the vomiting of children, and others that cannot retaine their meate, this remedy may be vsed:

Plaister against vomiting.

℞. *Mastichis, Menthæ, Spodij,*
Corallorum rub. Santali albi, & rubei an. ʒ ß.
Crustam panis assi et infusi in aceto
per horam pondere ʒ i.
Oleorum Mastichis, Citoniorum, an. ʒ ß.
Farinæ hordij ʒ vj.

Let the bread be bruised finely, and all the rest being in pouder, let it be mixed, and so make an emplaster without the fire, and let it be applyed warme.

Also you may infuse a piece of bread in Wine-vinegar, or Rose-vinegar, and bruise it in a morter, and then adde thereunto pouder of red Roses, of Cloues, of Mastick, and Galingal, of euery one ʒ i. ß.

Doct. But sometimes vomiting is cured by vomit: shew mee what vomit is fit to be giuen for that purpose.

Stud. I will set downe a vomit that doth euacuate phlegme, grosse and raw humours, and such as are heaped vp together by a long want of digesture.

Vomitiuum.

℞. *Rad. raphani acuti incisi* ʒ i.
Seminis Cep. Sinapis, anethi et Attriplicis ana ʒ ß.

Mediani

Mediani Corticis sambuci ℥ß.
Fiat Decoctio in tribus lib. aquæ ad consumptionem tertiæ partis. Coletur, et
℞. *Colaturæ lib.* j. *Oximel. Squillet.* ℥ iij. *Misce.*

Also if you will haue another remedy to stay vomite.

℞. *Succi Citoniorum lib.* ß.
Masticis, Macis,
Caryophillorum, Nucis muscat. an. ℥ ij.
Corallorum rubrorum,
Rosarum rubrarum an. ℥ j.

Let all boyle together vnto the consumption of the third part of the iuyce, then let them be strayned with a strong expression, and reserue it to your vse: of this you may giue the Patient Morning and Euening, the quantity of three spoonefuls at a time before meales. This is good in a cold cause to a stomacke much troubled with winde. Or you may make roles that serue for that purpose.

℞. *Specier. Diagalangæ*
Aromat. ros.
Aromat. Caryophillat. an. ℥ j.
Sacchari Dissolat. in aqua menthæ q.s. et
fiant Rotulæ ℥ ij. *pro qualibet vice.*

Of these roles the Patient must take one euery Morning before meate, and presently after, drinke a draught of *Malmesey*.

Of the Cholericke Passion.

CONFERENCE XXIX.

Doctor.

THat disease which is called the Cholericke passion, what is it?

Stud. When paine and pricking, or biting shall be felt about the stomacke, and withall,

vomiting and a fluxe of the belly: it is called *colerica passio*. Oftentimes colde sweates, a swift pulse, frequent, little, and short, with sowning or cyncope, doth follow, through resolution and losse of strength, and contraction of the muscles of the hands and feete, through the great euacuation that hapneth vpwards and downewards. Oftentimes it hapneth from cholar, and a sharpe humour, and through the malice and quantitie of humours, to expell that which is euill. Oftentimes also it hapneth by consent of the Liuer, of the Spleene, and of the braine, &c. becausé they transmit and send such matter to the stomacke and inteſtines, where the meate is corrupted: for this passion is not without the corruption of digestion. This diseasé doth very sodainely vexe the Patient, and as sodainely ouerthrow him if it be not lookt vnto. If Children be taken with this diseasé, sleepe shall profit them very much, but for the most part in old men it is deadly. The paine is exceeding great, through the sharpe humours which doe gnaw and bite the mouth of the stomacke. Notwithstanding wee must not dispaire in any sickneſſe, so long as there is strength of body, and a pulse, except in the Peſtilence. Reſt and quietnes is very good, but motion and exercise doth hurt both the minde and body. *Miua citoniorum*, and the syrup thereof and the water of the flesh thereof. *Rob. Granatorum*, syrup of Roses, and Myrtils, and such like, is good in an hot cause. His drinke betweene meales may be *vinum aromaticum*, mixed with cold water, or with the water of the decoction of Barberies or Coriander. *Syrupus de ribes, de Citonijs* also is good in an hot cause. If the matter be corrupt, vomit may be prouoked with hot water: if there be strength also we may vse this:

℞. *Zulapij rosarum* ℥ iij. *Succi granatorum* ℥i. ſ8.

Mixe them, and let the Patient take two or three spoonfuls euery other while.

Doct. These medicines serue in hot causes, how must we proceede in a cold cause?

Stud.

Stud. In a colde cauſe we may vſe the pouders of Spike, of Cinamon, of Nut-megs, and ſuch like, or the ſyrups of Mints, and Wormewood, of which he may now and then take a ſpoonefull without waters, for much drincke is not heere to be allowed. The antient Phiſitions doe commend this remedy which is framed *ex vini granatorum* ℥ij. *Succi Menthæ depurati*, ℥ ß. and vſe it with the ſpoone, as before.

In a cold cauſe, the beſt wine, thinne and odoriferous, is ſomtimes ſufficient. The Patient may alſo eate and ſuck the iuyce of a Pomegranate with Suger of Roſes, and ſomtimes hee may chew the graines thereof, and let the iuyce goe downe: his face may be ſprinckled with cold water, or with Roſe-water by it ſelfe, or if it be in the Winter, there may be added a little wine that is odoriferous, or a little Muske.

Doct. What outward remedies may be applyed?

Stud. In an hot cauſe we may apply this to the ſtomack.

℞. *Santalorum rubrorum*
Roſarum, an. ℥ ij.
Gallię muſcatæ, ℥ ß.
Caphuræ gr. vi.
Madeant in aqua roſ. ℥ iiij.
Aceti. ℥ i. ß.

Let linnen cloathes be moiſtned therein and wroung betweene the hands, and applyed cold vnto the ſtomacke.

The ſtomacke may alſo be annointed with oyle of roſes, *de Cydonijs, de Spica, de Abſinthio*, as the matter ſhall require. And if too much cooling be feared, there may be added to the fore-ſaid mixture, the iuyce of Mints, of Wormewood, and alſo ſome Cinamon, or ſome auſter odoriferous Wine. Some there are that doe diſſolue ij. or iij. ℥. of Maſticke with the white of an egge, and Oyle of Quinces, or ſuch like, and ſo ſpread vpon leather, applyed to the ſtomack, in the forme of a *Scutum*. Alſo thoſe things that are vſed for the cure of vomiting, and in *Lienteria*, may be vſed both inwardly and outwardly, for the recouering of this diſeaſe: And thus much as concerning the diſeaſes of the ſtomack.

Doct. This ſhall ſuffice at this time as concerning diſeaſes of the ſtomacke, but for as much as the ſtomacke and the Lyuer haue betweene themſelues a neere colligance and vicinitie, by reaſon of the Mezeraicks, and that the hurt of the ſtomacke muſt needes be the hurt of the Lyuer, we will therefore now proceede to the diſeaſes of the Lyuer, and firſt, wee will deale with the diſtemperatures of the ſame.

Of Diſtemperature, or weakneſſe of the Lyuer.

CONFERENCE. XXX.

Student.

DIſtemperature is the cauſe of weakneſſe of the Lyuer, for thereby the faculties attractiue, retentiue, alteratiue and expulſiue is made weake. If the attractiue facultie be weake, liquid, and watriſh excrements, are caſt forth by the belly, as in a weake alteratiue facultie of the ſtomacke, there is auoyded that which is crude and inconcocted. In a weake attractiue facultie it is not ſo crude, but that which hapneth is in the *Chylus*, for the Lyuer drawing and not altering the *Chylus*, there is ſent forth excrements like vnto waſhing of fleſh, or bloud mingled with water. And afterwards not any ſhewes of bloud is auoided, but excrements of worſe qualitie. The cauſe whereof is, the alteratiue facultie being weake, by reaſon of the Lyuer being cold, therefore it doth not make the bloud more rudie then it is receiued from the *Meſentirium*: from whence in time it is excerned or auoided, and doth repreſent the waſhings of fleſh, but when it ſtayeth, it groweth groſſe and thicke, and in time doth intercept and ſtoppe the anguſt and narrow paſſages of the Lyuer: when it doth perſpire and breath through, there followeth

followeth ſome kinde of Feauer: the humour being intercepted, doth putrifie, and is adured and burned, in vvhich time the bloud is not diluted or mingled with moyſture, but is become as it were, the feces, and dregges of bloud, and ſo it is excerned and auoyded, and the ſame excretion ſhineth, and is ſometimes turned into blacke choler.

Doct. How ſhall we know a cold diſtemperature of the Lyuer?

Stud. In a cold diſtemperature, the face is pale and wan coloured, ſlow pulſe, the vrine white and thinne, and ſometimes thicke, but not often: neyther is his deiection in aboundance, nor very ſmelling, but then when it is corrupted: ſometimes the appetite is corrupted, and ſometimes it is increaſed, but there is no thirſt.

Doct. How ſhall we know an hot diſtemperature from a colde?

Stud. In an hot diſtemperature, the colour of the face is yealow, the pulſe is ſwift, the vrine is of a Citrine and yealow colour, the appetite is loſt and ouerthrowne, a vehement thirſt, dryneſſe of the tongue, bitterneſſe of the mouth, a great loathſomeneſſe and agitation of the whole body, a mighty Feauer: the excrements of the wombe ſmell ſtrongly, yealow and cholericke, ſharpe and biting, alſo a violent vomiting of choler, &c.

Doct. Now let vs heare your remedies.

Stud. In all heate of the Lyuer, *Ceratum ſantalinum* doth very well: or elſe this Oyntment,

Vnguent againſt heate of the Lyuer.

℞. *Oleorum roſarum, Nenupharis,*
Violarum an. ʒ iij.
Camphoræ gran. iij.
Spodij, ʒ i.
Santali rubei, ℈ i.
Ceræ parum,
& fiat Linimentum.

Doct. Sometimes through exceeding heate of the Lyuer, the body doth grow into leanneſſe and thinneſſe, ſo that

that the patient is ready to fall into conſumption, what muſt we doe then?

Stud. Againſt leanneſſe and extenuation of the body, we giue this or the like medicine.

Reſtoratiue. ℞. *Teſtudinum ſiue limaciorum carnes,*
Lauentur in aqua Saluiæ, ℥ v.
Coquantur, adde Santali rub.
Spodij, roſarum an. ʒ. ſ8.
Sem. Fænicul. Garyophillorum,
Maceris, Cinamomi, an. ∂ i.
Dentur cum Syrupo de radicibus
Menſura vnius cochlearis mane, & ſero,
after the taking of which, the patient muſt drinke a draught of good wine.

His order of diet muſt tend to cooling, as is vſed in Feauers: hee muſt bleede in the Lyuer veyne of the right arme, ſo that there be not great ariditie and dryneſſe, with exceeding heate, for then wee muſt forbeare the loſſe of bloud, becauſe bloud is a bridle, and the temperatour of Choler: but wee muſt giue Syrups that be alteratiue and cooling, with waters for the Lyuer, euen as is vſed in Feauers: as for example, a Syrup to coole the exceeding heate of the Lyuer, may be thus prepared.

Syrup to coole the Liuer. ℞. *Endiuiæ* ℥ iiij.
Roſtri porci, Lactucæ, Portulacæ,
Acetoſæ, Epaticæ, Scariolæ,
ſummitatum papaueris, an. ℥ ij ſ8.
Florum Nenuphar. ℥ iſ8.
Roſarum rub. ℥ i.
quat. Sem. frigid. maior.
Santali albi, Berber.
Sumach. Spodij, an. ʒ ij.
Abſinthij, ʒ iij.
Rad. Cichor. ℥ i.
Vini malorum granat. aceti albi lib. i. ſ8.
Fiat Syrupus Clarificatus.

ſt

It may be giuen with Barley-water, or with the waters of Endiue, Hops, Cichorie, Sorrell, &c. or wee may prepare an Electuarie for that purpoſe.

Electuarie to coole the lyuer.

℞. *Santali alb. & rub. an.* ʒ ij. ſ8
Roſ. rub. ʒ iij.
Spodij, ʒ i.
Trochiſ. Diarhod.
Trochiſ. de Berber. an. ʒ i. ſ8.
Garyophil. Macis, an. ʒ ſ8.
Coral. rub & alb. an. ʒ ſ8.
Sem. Endiuiæ, Lactucæ,
Portulacæ, an. ʒ i.
Sem. com. frigid. mundat. ʒ ſ8.
Camphor. ℈ i.
Rhubarb. ʒ i.
Nucis Muſcat. Galliæ Muſcat.
Spicæ, an. ℈ i.
Sacchar. alb. diſſolut.
in aqua Portulacæ q. ſ.
& fiat Confectio ſolida vel Electuarium.

Alſo may be applyed for that purpoſe, this Plaiſter:

Emplaiſter to coole the lyuer.

℞. *Santali albi & rub. an.* ʒ ij.
Roſ. rub. ʒ i.
Farinæ Hordij, ʒ iij.
Aloes, ʒ ij. *Confice cum ſucco*
Abſinthij, ſolatri, & aceto.

And apply it vpon the region of the Lyuer.

His meates muſt be of eaſie digeſture, his wine, if hee drinke any, muſt be white: for this diſeaſe there is giuen *Brodium Cicerum, trochiſi de Abſinthio, de lacca:* where there is moiſture, if there be arefaction and heate, the remedyes muſt be as that of the Feauer Hectieke, of which wee ſhall ſhall diſcourſe afterwards.

Doct. What is the reaſon why all thoſe that are affected in the Lyuer haue euill colour?

Stud. The reaſon is, becauſe the bloud which is ablegated

or carryed to the Lyuer, is not cocted, but raw, crude, and of euill qualitie, from whence hapneth oftentimes the Iaundyes, becauſe the Lyuer doth not ſeperate the matter from the *Chylus*, or pappe: neyther is it ſeperated or ſtrained from its watriſhneſſe. But the weakneſſe of the Lyuer, for the moſt part, as *Auicen* doth witneſſe, doth happen through colde or moyſture.

Doct. Set downe ſome particular remedies, whereof we may make choiſe.

Epithema to coole the lyuer.

Stud. I will: and firſt, an Epithem.

℞. *Aquarum Endiuiæ,*
Cichor. acetoſ. ſolatri.
Nenupharis, an. ℥ ij.
Santali albi & rub. an. ℥ i.
Spodij, Roſarum, Raſuræ Eboris, an. ʒ ſß.
Camphoræ, ℈ i.
Spicæ ſquinanthi, an. ℈ ſß.
Coralliorum rubrorum, ℈ ſß.
Aceti, ℥ i. *Miſce.*

Potion for the Lyuer.

Or, ℞. *Endiuiæ, Cichor. Fumiterræ, Abſinthij,*
Betonicæ, Saluiæ, Pſillij, an. P. i.
Rad. Feniculi, Petroſelini, Aſari,
Acori ennulæ, an. ʒ ſß.
Sem. Aniſi, Fæniculi, an. ʒ i.
Vuarum Paſſapum, ʒ i.
Liquiritiæ, ʒ vi.
Zinziber. ʒ i. ſß.
Fiat potus artificialis cum aquæ fontis ad lib. i.
Dulcoretur cum ſacchar. pro quat. vicibus.

If you will make it a purging potion, you may adde eyther *Diaphœnicon, Diacatholicon, Electuarium lenitiuum, roſar. &c.* In a cold diſtemperature may be vſed theſe medicines following.

Iulep.

℞. *Syrupi de Abſinthio, de Eupatorio, an.* ʒ i. ſß.
Endiuiæ, Oxymellis compoſiti, an. ℥ ſß.
Aquarum Eupatorij,

Endiuiæ,

Endiuiæ, Centaurei minoris, an. ℥ iiij.
Miſce, & fiat Iulep.

Or, ℞. *Diagalangæ,* ʒ i. ſ8. *Lozeng.*
Trochiſcorum de Abſinthio, ʒ i.
Seminum Endiuiæ, ℈ i.
Sacchari albiſſimi in aqua
Endiuiæ diſſoluti q. ſ.
fiat Electuarium in tabulis.

Or, ℞. *Trochiſcorum de Rhabarbaro.* ℥ſ8. *Electuarium.*
De Abſinthio, ʒ ij.
Dialaccæ, ʒ i. ſ8.
Aureæ Alexandrinæ, ʒ i.
Radicum Aſari, Ariſtolochiæ rotund.
Hepatis Lupini, an. ℈ i.
Fiat Electuarium molle cum ſyrupo de Eupatorio q. ſ.

Or, ℞. *Aromatici roſati, Diagalangæ,* *Mixtura.*
Diarhod. abbatis, an. ʒ ij.
Glycyrrhizæ, ʒ i.
Vuarum paſſarum, ℥ i. ſ8.
Seminis Aniſi, ʒ i. ſ8.
Iecoris Lupini exiccati, ʒ ij. ſ8.
Conſeruæ florum Anthos. ℥ i. ſ8.
Corticum citri condi. ℥ſ8.
Syrup. de Eupatorio, q. ſ.
Fiat Mixtura.

℞. *Fol. Eupatorij, Abſinthij, an. M.* i. ſ8.
Spicæ nardi, florum Chamomeli, an. M. i. ſ8. *Fotus.*
Roriſmarini. M. i.
Cinamomi, ʒ i. ſ8.

In an equall portion of wine and water let all be boyled and make a *Fotus.*

Alſo an oyntment may be framed *de Oleo Abſinthio, Ma-* *Vnguentum.*
ſtichini, ſucco Eupatorij, aceti & ceræ parum, fiat vnguentum.

Of Opilation, or ſtopping of the Liuer.

Conference XXXI.

Doctor.

LEt vs finiſh our diſcourſe for this time with the opilation and ſtopping of the Lyuer: tell mee, what is the opilation of the Liuer?

Stud. The opilation of the Lyuer is no other thing then a conſtriction or coarction of the veynes, and thoſe *foramina*, or pores, which are in the Lyuer, and this euill amongſt all others, is very familiar to this part; neyther is it to be meruailed at, for the Lyuer is the true officine and ſhoppe of bloud, from whence all other parts of the body receiue and take their nouriſhment. But the groſſe humours, and thoſe alſo that are dull and ſlow, are ingendred togethet in the Lyuer with the purer bloud, chiefely from that iuyce which is leſſe pure. And the branches of *Vena cana*, are ſo obſcurely ioyned to the branches of *Vena porta*, that ſcarſly their coupling and continuation can be diſcerned: and whereas the nouriſhment of all the parts of the body, ought to be traduced and tranſported through the extremities of the *Vena porta*, and alſo of the *Vena cana*, which (as wee haue ſaid) are ſo ſmall, when they are terminated into the ſubſtance of the Lyuer, that it is not (as I haue ſaid) any meruaile, if through the exceeding narrowneſſe and ſtraitneſſe of the veynes and paſſages, there doe happen more often obſtructions, then in the other bowels.

And this euill is as it were, the ſemenarie of diuers kindes of diſeaſes. And here I will not ſpeake of obſtruction of the Lyuer, which hapneth by inflamation thereof, or through *Eryſipelas*, or any other vnnaturall tumour, but wee vvill ſpeake

ſpeake of that hurt which doth follow the obſtruction of the extremities of the veynes through ſome ſubſtance or matter there reſting, that is to ſay, eyther of a flatuous and thicke ſpirit, or of ſome humour.

Doct. By what ſignes ſhall we come to the knowledge of this diſeaſe?

Stud. The knowledge of this diſeaſe may be perceiued, when the Patient ſhall feele dulneſſe and diſtention in the right ſide, with an obtuſe and lumpiſh paine. This is no feauer nor tumour, vnleſſe it be through long continuance: for euery inueterate obſtruction doth worke and cauſe putrifaction; by which meanes, in time there may follow a Feauer. The Patient is very ſhort winded, and doth draw his breath very hard, eſpecially if he aſcend vp an hill: the colour of his face is changed, the skinne appeares fœtid and foule, and of a Citrin and paliſh colour, eſpecially, becauſe the diſtant parts are depriued of conuenient nouriſhment: the vrine is ſomewhat thinne and watriſh. If the obſtruction be in the hollow part of the Lyuer, for the moſt part, after dinner there is felt a greater paine and heauineſſe in the place of the Lyuer, by reaſon the humours and vapours being delated and carryed from the nouriſhments they cannot ſo freely paſſe to the ſubſtance of the Lyuer by the fit and conuenient paſſages, by reaſon of their ſtraitneſſe and narrowneſſe. In this euill, the belly is ſometimes looſe, and ſometimes bound.

Doct. What harme can this obſtruction bring to the Patient?

Stud. If this affect doe continue long, it muſt needes bring an extenuation and waſting to the whole body for want of nouriſhment. Through long obſtruction of the Lyuer, there are many and grieuous diſeaſes that muſt needes ariſe in the body, as an hard tumour without paine, inflamation, Feauer, putrifaction of humours, fluxe of the belly, Iliac paſſion, collicke, the Iaundies, Dropſie, and ſuch like: for when as cold humours are long contained in

the veſſels of the Lyuer, they doe at the length change the proper ſubſtance of the Lyuer into a cold, from whence very eaſily afterwards the dropſie doth follow. If this obſtruction doe happen through the ſmalneſſe of the paſſages from the natiuitie, it doth then admit no cure, but by a good order of dyet the patient may be preſerued from many diſeaſes.

Doct. Now proceede to the cure.

Stud. Firſt, as concerning his dyet: he muſt liue in an hot and cleare ayre: his meat muſt be of an hot propertie, and ſuch as may remoue obſtruction; ſuch as doe engender thicke and groſſe iuyce muſt be auoyded. In his broath muſt be boyled Parſley-rootes, Fenell-rootes, Smallage, Aſparagus, and their ſeedes; the Leaues of Cichorie, Penny-ryoll, Hyſſop, Endiue, Leekes, and ſuch like. Hee muſt not eate too much at a time, neyther muſt he be admitted nouriſhment before that be fully digeſted which was receiued before, and then alſo muſt he eate very ſparingly, and to ariſe from the table with an appetite and hungry ſtomacke. His drinke may be Ptiſan, or ſmall Beere; if hee drinke wine it muſt be thinne and olde, all ſweete wines, thicke and groſſe, and ſuch as are aſtringent, as Aligant and Red-wine, muſt be auoided.

Doct. Now giue mee ſome compoſitions againſt this diſeaſe.

Bolus. Rx. *Caſſiæ recenter et tractæ,* ℥ i.
Rhabarbari electi,
Agarici trochiſcat. an. ʒ i. ß.
Trochiſ. de Eupatorio, ʒ i.
Sacchari albiſſ. q. ſ. fiat Bolus.

Iulep. Rx. *Syrupi de cichoreo cum Rhubarbaro,*
Syrupi Byzantini, acetoſ. compoſ.
De Eupatorio, an. ℥ i.
Aquarum Cuſcutæ,
Vini albi odorif. an, ℥ vi.
Fiat Iulep.

Rx.

℞. *Oxymellis compositi,* ℥ ij. *Iulep.*
Oxymellis squillit. ℥ i.
Decocti Eupatorij,
Semenum Endiuiæ,
Radicum Fæniculi,
Asparagi,
Petrosilini, Dracunculi, ℥ x.
Fiat Iulep. cum sacchar. q. s.
℞. *Rad. Eringij cond.* ℥ ij.
Corticum Aurantiarum cond. ℥ i.
Galangæ cond. florum Sambuci cond. an. ℥ ß.
Diarhod. ab. trochis. Rhubarb. an. ℥ ij.
Syrupi de Eupatorio q. s. Fiat mixtura,
Dentur ante cibum, ℥ ij. *aut* ℥ iij.

Or wee may vse this distilled water which is good in all passions of the Lyuer.

℞. *Cichoreæ, Lactucæ, Acetosæ,*
Scariolæ, Epaticæ, Scolopendriæ,
Fumiterræ, Luporum, an. M. i.
Radicis Feniculi, Brusci, Asparagi,
Acori, Cichoreæ, an. ℥ ß.
Santali albi & rubei, an. ℥ i. ß.

Coquantur in aqua Cassiæ, post octo horas exprimantur, adde *Aqua distillata.*
Trochiscos de Rhabarb. de Lacca, de Spod. de Berber. an. ℥ ij.
Specierum triasant. Diarhod. abbat. an. ℥ ij. ß. *Aquæ acetosæ,*
℥ vi. *Vim Berberorum,* ℥ iij Let all be put into a Lembecke and distilled: this water may be drunke in all passions of the Lyuer: or this Syrup.

℞. *Florum violarum, Bugloss,* *Aporem.*
Melissæ, Fumiterræ, Luporum,
Eupatorij, Scolopendrij, Beton.
Cichor. Capilli Veneris, an. M. i.
Radicum Feniculi, Cichor.
Asparagi, Brusci, Liquiritiæ, an. ℥ ß.
Ficuum Num. vij.
Seminum Anisi, Feniculi, carni, an. ℥ i.

quæ.

quat. sem. frigid. maior. an. ℥ i. ʃ8.
Prunorum Num. x.
Myrobal. Citrin. Kebul. ind. an. ℥ i.
Sena, ℥ iij.
Polypodij, ℥ ij.
Agarici, ℥ ʃ8.
Thymi Epith. an. ℥ i. ʃ8

Fiat omnium Decoctio ad lib. i. ʃ8. *in fine ferueant Cinamomi, Santali rub. Macis, Ligni Aloes, an.* ℈ i. *Coletur, cui adde Syrupi aceto∫. compoſiti,* ℥ iij. *De Enduia, de Citonio. de Byzant. an.* ℥ ij. *Cum Saccharo fiat potus Clarificatus & dulcoratus.*

Of the affects of the Reines.

Doctour.

WHat are the affects of the Reines?

Stud. The reines haue diuers affects, as hot diſtemperature, cold, and dry, an obſtruction of ſlyme, ſand, the ſtone, and ſuch like. Sometimes they may be affected with phlegmon & inflamation, by reaſon of ſome wound, or fall. Sometimes there doth follow ſome hot diſtemperature, by reaſon of an immoderate heate drawing ouermuch bloud by the emulgents; then after Phlegmon there doth follow ſome abſceſſus, or Apoſtume, after an Apoſtume ſome Vlcer, which is ſometimes alſo procured from the ſtone, by the attraction of the reines, for ſome ſharpe humour. The diſtemperature of the reines doth for the moſt part follow the diſtemperature of the Liuer; for thoſe which haue a torrid, and dry liuer, haue alwayes ouerhot kidneyes: from whence ariſeth thirſtineſſe, often making water, by reaſon the vrine is ſharpe, and pricketh the bladder, and ſo thereby ſtirreth vp excretion and auoydance. *Hippocrates* ſpeaketh of a conſumption

consumption of the reines, which doth follow an hot and dry distemperature, or an vlcer.

The kidnies that are ouer hot, if they finde fit matter, as phelgme that is viscid, tough, and slimy, and the Meatus small and narrow, doe at the first ingender sand, which being mixed with phlegme, doth at the last procreate a stone. Also hot kidnies doe cause sharpnes of seede, from whence ariseth *Exonirogmon*, nocturnall polution and shedding of seede: therefore wee must labour diligently to temperate their heate.

Doct. How shall wee temperate the exceeding heate of the reines?

Stud. With the frequent and often vse of *Cassia*, by abstinence from wine, by cooling broaths, and emulctions, by Asses milke, syrup of violets, of Nenuphar in Ptisan, by colde baths, or Semicupium, by annoynting with vnguent refrigerans, *Galeni*, *Oxyrhodino*, *oleo Nenupharino*, with a little *Camphere*, thinne plates of lead perforated and applyed to the loynes, also to giue often clysters that haue a cooling faculty, the decoction may be prepared *ex bismalua*, *Violaria*, *Lactuca*, in which dissolue *Cassia*, *mellis violati an.* ℥i. *olei violar.* ℥ij. Vinegar and Rosewater.

Doct. How shall we remedy obstruction?

Stud. With those things that are *Diuretis*, of which sort some are hot, as the fine opening rootes, *Decoctum Ciccrum rubrorum & nigrorum*, *Syrupus Capilli veneris*, *de Bisantijs*, *de duabus*, *de quinque Radicibus*, and *syrupus de Raphano*, described by *Fernelius*. The colde *diuretick*s are the foure *semina frigida maiora*, *semen Alkekengi*, *radix graminis et acetosæ*: wee are to vse these colde when the disease is hot. Therefore *Valescus* telleth vs that there is nothing more excellent against the stone then *vinum alkekengi*, or the distilled water thereof, and to vse the wine in the winter season, and the water in the summer. The branches and fruit of Alkekengi being in equall parts mixed, and then brused, it may be put into wine, which must be vsed when the

affect doth proceede from a cold cauſe, and the reaſon is, that the hot Diuretikes, which are wont to be vſed againſt the ſtone, doe increaſe the hot diſtemperature, engendering the ſtone, therefore what good it doth one way, it doth hurt ſo much another: and the cold Diuretickes are not good onely for the preſent euill, but doth alſo reſiſt the efficient cauſe, and doth ſtay the generation of ſand, and of the ſtone.

Doct. Let me know what remedies you haue againſt the ſtone.

Of Preſeruation, or cure of the ſtone of the Kidnyes and Bladder.

Student.

VVHoſoeuer is ſubiect to haue the ſtone, or haue a diſpoſition therunto, eyther contracted from the Parents, or by the hot diſtemperature of the reynes, which may be perceiued by the colour of the ſand in the bottome of the Vrinall, or by the other vſuall ſignes, of which vvee will ſpeake hereafter; muſt firſt know how, and of what matter the ſtone is engendered, and afterwards to receiue remedies both for preſeruation and cure. Wherefore, let him know, that the matter of the ſtone is a clammy and ſlymie phlegme engendered of cruditie and repletion, which vvith the immoderate heate of the Kidnyes is turned into ſand, and ſuch like ſtuffe, or ſlymie excrement ſtopping the *Meatus* and Vrinarie paſſages: and euen as the Bricke becommeth hard in the Kyll by exceſſiue heate, euen ſo is the ſtone by the exceſſiue heate of the Kidnyes.

Wherefore to preuent the ſtone, fulneſſe of Dyet muſt be auoyded, and a ſober and temperate muſt be vſed. Alſo

all

all things that doe engender groſſe and obſtructiue iuyce, ſuch as wee call *Laticinia*, vnleauened and light bread, groſe new Ale and Beere, with new and vnſetled wines, all theſe muſt be auoyded.

Sometimes we muſt prouoke vomit, that the ſtomacke may be cleanſed from phelgme, and there may be vſed pils which are called *ante cibum*, that ſo alſo phlegme may be auoyded by the ſtoole, and that the ſtomacke may be ſtrengthened. All ſuch things that doe very much heate and inflame the liuer and the kidnies muſt be auoyded, as Pepper, and all ſuch meates wherein Pepper is: groſe, thick, new and vnſetled wines muſt not be vſed, but thinne wine being diluted may be vſed: the water of *gramen* or *couch*, with a little pure thinne wine is a ſingular medicine. The patient muſt not ſleepe in a ſoft bed, neither ſtand with his backe againſt the fire, and in the ſummer ſeaſon the garments againſt the kidnies muſt be left open to coole them. Hee may eate ſallets *ex Chriſta marina*: his meate muſt be ſuch as yeeldeth good nouriſhment, and is of eaſie concoction, as Veale, Pullets, Chickins, Partriges, Doues, Larkes, &c.

Alſo he may vſe *Candæ tremulæ*, for the beſt Phiſitions are of opinion that they hinder the generation of the ſtone. So doth hedge Sparrowes, if wee may credit ſome writers. In the decreaſe of the Moone it is good to take x. ℥. of *Caſſia* newly drawne, which muſt be receiued with ſyrup of Violets, Althea, Mayden-hayre, or Limons: next for certaine dayes together to vſe the broath of Althea, with the roote and ſeede of *Saxifrag*, with other opening rootes, as of Parſly, Fenell, Cicers red or blacke, in which ſhall be diſſolued a quantitie of new Butter, or halfe a ſpoonefull of Oyle of Turpentine, after this manner:

℞. *Terebinth. Venet.* ℥ij ß.

Let it be waſhed in *Saxifrag* water, and make thereof ſmall pils, taken with obellijs, and ſome of the ſyrups afore mentioned.

Wine of Alkekengi is a good preseruatiue, or the fruit thereof condict with sugar. *Aetius* doth commend the the milke of an Asse, because it doth temperate the heate of the kidnyes, and by its wheyishnesse doth scoure and cleanse them. Sometimes may be vsed the syrup of *Althea*, with the water of Saxifrage, as for example:

℞. *Syr. de Althea*, ℥ ij.

Dissolue in aqua Parietariæ & Ononidis, ℥ iij.

And make a Iulep for 2. *Dos.*

And this may suffice for the preseruation from the stone.

Against the Stone already engendred in the Kidnyes.

THese are the signes of the stone in the Kidnyes, according to *Hippocr. Sexto Epid.* intollerable and pricking paine about the Kidnyes, especially when the stomacke is replenished with meate, because then the reynes are pressed: and vpon taking a Clyster the paine departeth, because the matter oppressing the kidnyes is auoyded. But some man will say that the paine is sometimes exceeding sharpe and pricking. I answere that to happen accidentally, becausse the stone seeking auoydance doth presse the heads of the Vriters, which are of exquisite sense, otherwise the sense of the kidnyes is obtuse and dull, therefore the paine is dull and heauie.

Besides, the thigh which is of that side that is affected, is astonished, and the Testicles are retracted through the consent they haue with the reynes by the veynes and artyers which descend from the backe, therefore beware wee be not too busie to wake a sleeping dogge, or disturbe the stone which resteth in the cauitie and hollownesse of the kidney without paine, as many vse to doe, by vomit, and by

by giuing Saxifrage, and things that breake the ſtone, leaſt thereby we induce the patient to be nephreticke, and bring him to greater torment; for many thereby, being without paine before, haue beene brought to end their dayes. Wherfore this counſell I giue: In the beginning when thou ſhalt vndertake to deale about the buſineſſe, to preſcribe to the Patient of *Benedictæ Laxatiuæ* at the moſt ℥ ß. *pul. Hermodactyli* ʒ i. and make a *Bolus*: afterwards there may be giuen *Sixifraga*, and ſuch things as haue a propertie to breake the ſtone, amongſt which number, is *oſſis Meſpilorum*, ʒ i. *ex vino albo*, or of the kirnels of Chirries, or ſo much of the gumme of the Pine-tree. *Galen* giueth with wine *Corticis radicis Lauri*, ʒ ij. Alſo the roote of the water Plantane, by the experiments of *Galen* is very good. Alſo *Hydromel* wherein is boyled the roote of *Eryngus*, is very much praiſed by *Ætius*: Alſo the bloud of the Goate, eyther male or female, being prepared, is giuen from ʒ i. to ʒ ij. if it be giuen by it ſelfe, with white wine diluted with ſome *Saxifraga* water, as *Ononidis*. *Serapion*, out of the experiments of *Philagrius*, doth affirme that the bloud of a goat doth not onely breake the ſtone of the kidnyes, but alſo in the bladder, if the places be annointed therewith. And the very ſame doth *Mathiolus* affirme of the bloud of a Foxe, ſo that the loynes be annointed about the kidnyes, and for the bladder about *pubes* and *perimeum*. Medlers.

The aſhes of Scorpions, of Graſhoppers, of earth-worms, Millepedum, of an Hare burned in an Ouen with his skin and all, are all very much commended, of which is framed that ſame Electuary of *Auicen*, *de cineribus Lapis Iudaicus*, doth doe very well. *Serapion* doth commend very much the ſtone which is wont to be found in ſponges: alſo there is found a ſtone in the gaule of an Oxe, the pouder whereof doth alſo breake the ſtone in the bladder, if wee may beleeue *Valeſcus*, which *Mathiolus* doth affirme himſelfe to haue proued very often.

Our anceſters had in great vſe two Electuaries: one

which they called from the effect, *Liton tribon*, that is, *Saxifragum*: another, which they called, *Iustinum*, or *Electuarium ducis*, and they gaue of eyther, ʒ ij. with *decocto Ciceru rubrorum*, and *radicum aperientium*, as of Parsley and Fenel: adde if you please, *Oxymel diureticum*, or *Scilliticum*, ʒ ß. But we haue in vse this pouder:

A pouder against the stone.

℞. *Pulueris ossium Dactilorum,*
Cerasorum & Mespillorum, an. ℈ ij.
Lapidis Iudaici, Lapidis spongiæ,
Lapidis infelle Bouis reperti, an. ℈ iiij.
Corticis radicis Lauri,
& seminis Altheæ, an. ʒ ij.
Cineris Scorpionum & Cicadarum, an. ℈ iiij.

Make it into fine pouder, the Dose whereof is from a ℥. to ʒ ij. there may be also mixed therewith some conserues, as of Betonie: for Betonie doth as well respect the reynes as the head: the pouder may be taken with the decoction of Cicers, in which, if you please, may be boyled the roote of water Plantane, called also *Damasonium*, if you take it in the forme of a Bole, it may be taken with syrup of Maiden-haire out of a spoone: but remember that the broath, the water of Saxifrage, or White-wine, wherein you giue the pouder, must be of good quantitie, euen to halfe a pinte, and must be giuen luke-warme, that it may not onely bring the Bole or the pouder to the kidnyes, but to the bladder also, that if it be possible it might worke the excluding of the stone.

Remedies against the Stone of the Kidnyes, in the time of the fit.

IN the fit of the stone, it is requisite to apply *Anodinis*, Clysters, Bathes, Vnction, Cassia, Turpentine, and whatsoeuer may disturbe the stone sticking in the passages towards

wards the bladder, and that haue a propertie to lenifie and make ſlipper the wayes, as oyle of ſweete Almonds, or a Clyſter prepared after this manner:

℞. *Altheæ cum radice, Parietariæ,*
Violariæ, Camomeli,
Berulæ, an. M. i.
Sem. Aniſi, & Fæniculi, an. ʒ ij.
Fiat decoctio in colatura, lib. i. ſ8.
Diſſoluæ loch. de Caſſia,
& mellis violati, an. ʒ i.
Terebinth. venetæ,
& olei de Scorpionibus, an. ʒ ſ8.
Olei Camomeli, ʒ ij.
& fiat Clyſter.

Clyſter againſt the ſtone.

To make the Paſſage ſlippery there may be giuen ʒ ij. of oyle of ſweete Almonds, extracted without fire, with White-wine, and if you pleaſe, it may be diluted with *Aqua Ononidis*: for the ſame purpoſe we may giue ſo many ounces of *Syrupus de Althea*, with the ſame water. And if the paine be intollerable, let him enter into a bath, the matter whereof ſhall be prepared, as that of the Clyſter, increaſing the quantitie then let him take a Bole of *Caſſia* out of a ſpoone, and let the part that is grieued be annoynted with the oiles of Camomell, Scorpions the fat of a Coney, with *Vnguen-de Bdellio*: or with the remainder of the fore-ſaid Clyſter, with the oyle of Camomel and Scorpions, frame a Cataplaſme. There may be applyed Cupping-glaſſes below the place where the paine is, that thereby the ſtone ſticking in the paſſage, may be drawne into the Bladder. If there be any feare of inflamation the *Baſilica* Veyne of that ſide that the paine is may be opened to diminiſh the plenitude: and after, the *Vena poplitis*, or *Saphena*.

If the paine doe ſtill increaſe, vvee muſt vſe a more ſtrange purge, ſuch as is framed of *Benedicta Laxatiua*, ʒ ſ8 and *Pulueris Hermodact.* ʒ i. It may be taken in the forme of a Bole, or rather diſſolued in the vvaters

of

of *Parietario, Ononidis,* or with the decoction *Cicerum rubrorum*: Laſtly, with Clyſters and Nephretick potions, with which ſhall be admixed a ʒ. of *Phylonium.*

But this is to be noted, that if the ſtone in the kidney be now great and old, it ſhall be in vaine to aſſay the diſſolution of him with the force of the remembred *Saxifragis.* For it hath beene often obſerued in children, that the ſtones haue beene ſo hard, that they could be neyther diſſolued nor diminiſhed by any Art; neyther ſcarſly be broken with the hammer: and beſides, if the ſtone ſhould be ſeparated into many pieces and fragments, there would follow a greater inconuenience then the firſt, exceeding torment, ſuppreſſion altogether of vrine, and laſtly, death. Wherefore all the remedies before ſpoken of, are good againſt ſand and ſmall ſtone, but not to ſtones that are inueterate and growne hard, eſpecially reſting in the bladder.

Of Inflamation of the Kidnyes, called Nephritis.

THoſe which eyther by nature, or ſome other accident haue their kidnyes ouer-hot, doe eaſily fall into the Nephirticke paſſion, and ſo it alſo hapneth to ſome by a wound or fall, when ſome veyne is broken, and ſo bloud is effuſed and ſhed through the ſubſtance of the kidney.

Signes of *Nephritis.* This is perceiued by the heate of the part, by pulſatiue and beating paine, by continuall Feauer, and by vomiting of choler.

Remedies. The remedies are Clyſters of a cooling propertie, and often taken, opening of a veyne; firſt, of the *Baſilica,* which is of that ſide of the inflamation: and after of the *Saphena*; the firſt doth reſpect the antecedent cauſe, and the latter the coniunct. Here we muſt be carefull as in euery other inflamation of the inward parts, that wee vſe in our medicines

medicine, no Scamonie or Diagridium, neyther hot diuretickes, or which may draw to the affected part, and increase the distemperature, except it be in the declination, as when the abscessus being rupted and broken, the *pus* and matter may be auoided by vrines.

Other things are necessary in the beginning, as things taken inwards, and applyed outwards, to temperate the hot distemperature of the part, as *Cassia* taken alone with the syrup of Violets: outwardly may be vsed *Oxyrhodinum* and *Semecupium*, but not at the first, because it doth increase the fluxe, it afterwards it is Anodyne when the fluxe is past.

Valescus a good Authour, doth affirme, that the application of Cupping-glasses vpon the haunches, doe asswage the paines of the kidnyes, because the veynes doe there end, and as it is in the Aphorisme, *Hemorroidas superuenire nephritidi bonum est.* Fasting doth much hurt in this affect, because it causeth the vrine to be the more sharper, and therefore in the stead of wine wee must vse Ptizand. Further, when the Abscessus is come to suppuration, and the same broken, there lyeth much matter in the bottome of the Vrinall, then the endeuour of nature must be holpe with Diuretickes, as with the water of the decoction of the rootes of Gramen, Sorrell, or the broath of Cicers and Hydromes, wherein are boyled the rootes of Parsley and Fenell.

Of the vlcer of the Kidnyes.

TO an Inflamation suppurated there doth succeede a great and hollow vlcer, which is seldome or neuer cured, for the continuall passage of the vrine doth hinder the consolidation of the vlcer, the cure whereof doth consist onely in exication and drying: for this matter must be vsed continually barley-water, or honey with sugar of Roses, or

Hydromel, Clysters, and purging with Cassia and Rhubarbe. A veyne in the beginning must be opened in the arme, afterwards in the foote, the often vse also of Lozenges of *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Hordeatum*, *Amygdalatum*, which must be prepared with the sugar of Roses in the stead of common sugar. In the beginning, to scoure the vlcer, we may vse Asses milke; next, Goates milke, to replenish and incarnate the vlcer; and at the last, the milke of an Ewe to consolidate. Also an emulction prepared of Almonds, being blanched and bruised after this manner:

℞. *Amygdalar. dulcium mundat.* ℥ i.
Sem. quat. frigid. maior. an. ʒ ij
Let all be bruised in a stone morter, and pouring thereon by little and little a pinte of Barley-water, and so you haue an Emulction.

Also to vlcers of any continuance, vulnerarie Potions are very profitable: also this Opiate may be vsed.

Opiat for the vlcer in the kidnyes.

℞. *Conserua ros. veteris & liquidæ*, ℥ i.
Conserua consolid. maioris
(siue Symphyti) ʒ vi.
Bolι armen. sanguinis Draconis,
Tragacanthi; *terræ sigillatæ*, *an.* ℈ ij.
Cum syrup. Rosarum sicchar. make an Opiate, which may be vsed at all times.

For outward applycations may be vsed this Emplaister, which is both astringent and drying.

℞. *Pul. Rosar. rub. Boli armen.*
Sanguinis Draconis, *an.* ʒ ij.
Mastichis & carnis Cidonior. an. ℥i.

With oyle of Roses or Myrtles make an Emplaister to be applyed to the region of the kidnyes that are vlcerated.

But here it may be demaunded, whether all that doe auoide by vrine purrulent matter, or bloud, haue their kidnyes or bladder vlcerated. I answere, it is not alwayes true, because that inthe in flamation ofthe Gibbus part of the Lyuer, the Apostume that doth succeede is auoyded by vrines,

vrines, and it hath beene also obserued that the suppurated Pleurisie hath beene terminated by purrulent vrines, but this must be vnderstood, if onely in the other parts there haue beene felt no paine before, but in the reynes or in the bladder, for *Vbi dolor, ibi morbus.*

But some will say, how shall I distinguish, whether the *pus* and matter doth proceede from the kidnyes or the bladder? I answere, that first it is to be distinguished by the seate of the paine precedent: secondly, that from the bladder the *pus* and matter doth come forth most foule, and not so from the kidney, except it doth putrefie: thirdly, that if the bladder be vlcerated, there doth flow forth a little sanies, and a little bloud, because the veynes thereof are very small, and those of the kidney more larger: fourthly, the vlcer waxeth worse and worse, and when the vlcers of the kidnyes are deepe, there are seene in the bottome of the vrinall, things as it were red shauings, as that of the caruncles; for so saith *Hippocrates*, *Si cum vrina veluti Caruncula subsident, renes esse vlceratos, non est dubitandum*: fiftly, that there is alwayes conioyned *Dysuria*, or difficultie of making of water in the vlcers of the bladder, and not of the reynes: sixtly, that in the vlcers of the kidnyes there is *pus* or sanies permixed with the vrine, and not so with the vlcers of the bladder, but after a while it sinketh to the bottome of the vrinall. The hollow vlcer is knowne, if there come forth with the bloud *pus*, and matter rotten and stincking.

Signes to know whether the kidnyes or bladder be vlcerated.

Of diseases of the Vriters.

SOmetimes the Vriters are obstructed with the stone, or else are vlcerated through the sharpnesse of the vrine, the seate of the paine doth shew the part affected, for the Vriter doth consist betweene the Kidnyes and the

Bladder, if the vriter be vlcerated, there doth swimme in the vrine certaine filaments or threads, without any great difficultie of making vrin; which is contrary to the vlcer of the bladder. To the obstruction of the vriter those things are conuenient, which haue beene already shewed for the pricking of the stone, or Nephritick torment, and for the vlcer, those things which haue beene prescribed for the vlcers of the Kidnyes, and shall be hereafter set downe for the vlcer of the Bladder.

Of the diseases of the Bladder, and first, of the stone.

THe Bladder is subiect to obstruction, vlceration, and inflamation: it is obstructed with the stone, sand, or the Caruncle. If the stone cause the obstruction, it is shewed by the crude vrin and watrish, in which is perceiued white sand: in the yard there is felt a continuall iching and extension and stretching of the same, except in children, who doe pisse by drop-meale, and painefully. The vrin is also suppresst, when the stone doth descend into the neck of the bladder: for more certaintie of the stone, tryall may be made by the Catheter, or by putting of the finger into the fundament of the childe: the Catheter doth sometimes deceiue the most expert Chirurgians, because the stones are inwrapped in a coate, or incrustate with some vistid and clammy phlegme, so that it doth yeeld no sound by the touch of the mettle.

Paulus doth affirme that the greater the stone is, the lesse painfull, because saith hee, *agri iam assueuerunt inflamationi, & vlcerationi*: but why are children subiect more to engender the stone in the bladder then in the kidnyes, and old men rather in the kidnyes then in the bladder? the reason is, because the passages and wayes are more large

large in children then in old men, and by reason of their much feeding they gather together much grosse and viscide matter, which doth descend very easily with the vrin into the bladder, but in old men the passages are more narrow and strait, and doe not let passe so easily, and therefore the matter of the stone doth subsist and remaine in the Kidnyes.

But for remedy I this perswade, that as soone as possibly it may, to commit the patient to the learned, skilfull, and expert Chirurgian, to draw away the stone by section, and not to striue so long with *Saxifraga* that the strength and spirits be wasted with the long paine, and so in the end the patient be not able to endure the cure. Remedies.

But perhaps this dangerous and fearefull remedy may be refused, which if it be, they must assay those remedies that haue beene already remembred, as the pouder of the stone that is found in the gaule of an Oxe, and to annoint the *Perineum* and those parts with Goates bloud, or else the bloud of a Foxe.

Alexander Trallianus is of opinion, that if a sponge be moistened in the bloud of a Goate, and so bound strongly to those parts, to be very good, so that it be vsed oftentimes.

Rhasis doth affirme that the vse of this following Pill, and the iniection of oyle of Scorpions, to breake the stone of the bladder in the space of fiftie dayes. The description of the Pill is after this manner:

℞. *Carpobalsami, seminis Raphani, sem Dauci, sem. Petrosel. Rad. Cappar. Amigdal. amar. Scœnanthi, Cyperi, spicæ Celticæ, Cassiæ ligneæ, Seminis Cicutæ, Gentian. Aristol. rotund. Asari, Amomi, Sagapeni, Bdellij, Piperis & Acori, an.* ʒ iij. *Oppoponacis,* ʒß. A Pill against the stone.

Dissolue the gummes in White-wine, and therewith incorporate the other things, and make a masse, of which take euery day ʒ i. drinking after it, of the decoction of red

Cicers, and of the opening rootes: and this muſt be continued for the ſpace of fiftie dayes, there may be admixed to euery Doſe, halfe a ſcruple of the aſhes of the Scorpion. To make oyle of Scorpions you ſhall doe it after this manner: take *Ariſtoloch. rotund.* and the rinde of the roote of Cappars *an.* ℥ i. infuſe it in a pinte of oyle of bitter Almonds, and ſo let it ſtand for a time in the Sunne, afterwards macerate in the ſame oyle, tenne Scorpions, eyther liuing or dead, and ſo let it reſt againe in the Sunne for the ſpace of two weekes, then ſtraine the oyle, and reſerue it to your vſe.

Of the Caruncle.

THe Caruncle according to the opinion of moſt men, doth ſucceede a *Gomorrhæa*, not well cured, and many remedies for the ſame are ſet downe by *Alphonſius Ferrius*, and of late there is ſet downe the true cure thereof in a lit booke called, *Margarita Chirurgica*, and therefore I will forbeare to write any more of that affect.

Of ſtopping the paſſage of the vrine, by fragments of the ſtone.

THis affect is knowne by things antecedent, as by piſſing of bloud, alſo from the adiuncts, as ſouning, a ſmall pulſe, coldneſſe of the extreame parts, paleneſſe of the face, inſomuch that it is thought ſtrange, that ſo great effects ſhould ariſe from ſo ſmall a cauſe. As concerning the cure, a Clyſter being iniected, and a veyne opened, there may be giuen afterwards, *Ariſtolochiæ*, *Mumiæ*, *Carabes*, or *Coaguli leporis* ℥ i. *Oxymelitis Diuretici*, or *Scyllitici*, ℥ i. vvith the

the water of *Raphanus*, or *Arthemesia*: for outward applications may be vsed *Parietaria* bruised with oyle of Scorpions: or an Emplaister, *ex Bdellio*, or *Ammoniacum*, dissolued in wine, adding thereunto, a little *Aristolochia*.

Aetius giueth counsell, that if those small stones cannot be auoided by inward meanes, nor by outward applications, nor by iniecting with a syring, the iuyce of Limonds, that then incision be made vpon the *Perineum*, but first declaring the danger thereof: for *Galen*, *sexto de locis affectis*, *Capite tertio*, saith, that he saw but one onely man to escape, and therefore the remedie must not be delayed ouer-long, for feare of danger.

Of the Inflamation of the Bladder.

FOr Phlegmon or inflamation of the bladder, there must be administred a Clyster, then a veyne must be opened, in the arme, and afterwards in the foote: the parts vvhich are called *Pubes* and the *Perineum* must be annnoynted with *Oxyrhodinum*: but there is little hope to cure this affect, becaus it is for the most part deadly: for so saith *Hippocrates*, *Si vesica sit dura, & dolore vexetur, Funestum, eoq; magis si accedat Febris continua.*

To asswage paine, there may be iniected vvith a syringe, the *Trochisks albi Rasis cum Opio* ℥ i. with milke. The Patient must auoid Wine, sharpe things, and spices. The vlcer of the Bladder is neuer cured, except it be in the neeke thereof, for that is fleshie: if there be paine about the *Pubes*, it sheweth the vlcer to be in the bladder it selfe: if there be paine in *Perineum*, then in the necke of the bladder: if in the yard, the vlcer is in the Vreter.

Wee also coniecture that the bladder is vlcerated when *pus* is not exquisitely permixed with the vrine, as when the

he Kidney is vlcerated, and much ſlimie matter doth ſubſide and reſt in the bottome: the Vriter or Colum, when *pus* commeth out before the vrine. There may be iniected *Serum lactis*, boyled with Suger, or *mel roſarum*, to cleanſe or diſſolue in Barley-water *Syrupus Roſarum ſiccarum*, or elſe *de Abſinthio*: there may alſo be infuſed in the ſame water, *Tragacanthum, Thus, Bolus armenus*, or *ſanguis Draconis*, and being ſtrained it may be iniected. *Diapalma* being malaxed with oyle of Roſes may be outwardly applyed: and there may be taken inwardly ſuch things as haue beene ſet downe againſt the vlcer of the Kidnyes: as firſt, Aſſes milke, afterwards Goates milke, or of a ſheepe, vulnerarie Potions, and ſuch like.

Of Iſcouria, *or ſuppreßion of Vrine.*

VVHen there is a ſuppreſſion of vrine, we muſt conſider by the touching, whether the bladder be full or emptie: wee ſhall perceiue if it be full by the circumſcript tumour, if it be emptie, by ſubſidence. Suppoſe the Bladder be full, then the cauſe of ſuppreſſion muſt be ſought for in the Bladder it ſelfe, and no further. If the ſuppreſſion proceede from the weakeneſſe of the excreticke facultie, *tacitamente cogitabis.*

Galen writeth, that ſometimes the ſenſe of the Bladder is ſo obtuſe and dull, that it doth not feele it ſelfe to be any thing prouoked, as when there is applyed outwardly things that are ouer colde, or inwardly iniected, which opinion (as my Authour ſaith) doth not pleaſe him: for ſaith he, the bladder is rather reſolued with too much colde, and ſo the vrin is auoyded againſt the will.

Sometimes after burning Feauers and drinking ouer much colde water, the vrin is ſuppreſt perhaps that ſo being ouer-full it cannot compreſſe it ſelfe, for this is chiefely required

required to excretion. Wherfore the bladder is to be compressed with the hand, that the vrine may be auoided. Suppose a man should sit long in some Senate-house, or should haue occasion to speake a long time before some Prince, & so to retaine his vrine ouer-long, that may be an occasion, that when afterwards he would auoid it, hee hath no abilitie becaufe the bladder being ouer-full, is so much extended, that it cannot compresse it selfe, therefore this defect must be supplyed by the hand. The cause of obstructions is to be sought for by the Catheter, and also to be remoued, but alwayes remembring, that it is in vaine to vse the Catheter if the bladder shall be emptie, becaufe that the cause of the vrine suppresst, is in the kidnyes, or in the passages of the vrine: also it is to no end, if it be suppresst through inflamation, for thereby the inflamation is increased, and an intollerable paine is procured to no end.

Therefore the remedyes must be answerable to the cause: the cause of obstruction is to be remoued with the Catheter: also sharpe Clysters, wherein there is much Iuie of Parietarie, and Mercury doth mightily stir vp excretion of vrine. Parietarie fryed in oyle of Camomell and Scorpions, and applyed to the *Pubes*, is exceeding good. There may also be giuen Cassia or Turpentine, also an *Incessus* may be prepared with the foure remollients, with *Camomel, Nasturtium, Maioram, Penniryall* and *Organum*. There may be giuen with great profit a dragme of Treacle, with the decoction of Cicers, so that the cause of suppression be aboue the bladder, here is no place for bloud-letting, except there be a suspisition of inflamation present or likely. The worme that is called *Cimex*, being put into the passage of the yard, doth very much prouoke vrine. There may also be giuen those *diureticae* which are vsed in the dropsie Ascites. Some doe burne the head of the Pye, & giue a dragme of the pouder thereof with White-wine: Some doe yeeld an exceeding force of procuring vrine to the Hedge-hogge, the flesh being burnt in an Ouen, the powder whereof is

giuen with the water of Radish, Parietarie, or of red or blacke Cicers: some doe burne the bowels onely of them: others doe giue onely the pouder of three earth-wormes with Hydromell: others the vrine of a little hogge, and others of a little Boy.

Of the Strangurie, or pissing by drop-meale.

THe Strangurie may be from two causes, primarie and secondary: that is primarie, which doth happen by some affect of the reyne, or the bladder: and that is secondary, which doth succeede some inflamation or vlcer of the wombe, or of the *rectum intestinum*, because the tumour of eyther doth presse the bladder, and so constraineth to to auoide vrine very sodainely.

It hapneth very often to young men through the Acrimonie of the vrine, which proceedeth from the heate of the reynes, or the lyuer, and too much heate and feruour of the bloud, especially when they feed vpon meats that are ouer-hot, as drinking strong wines, vsing spice, & ouer-sharp things. It may also happen through the stone in the bladder as also by an vlcer in the kidnies or the bladder, because the sanies that proceed there-hence, doth continually prick, and the bladder being vlcerated cannot long containe the water.

Somtimes it hapneth to old men, because a salt pituitous matter is permixed with the vrine, and doth procure in them the strangury. Therefore the cause being knowne, as in an old man the phlegme must be purged with *Senna* and *Agaricke*, or they may take Turpentine washed in plantane water. In young men their kidnyes, lyuer and bloud must be tempered with *Cassia* and bloud-letting, they must abstaine wine, they must vse cooling broathes, emulsions, barley-waters, wherein may be put the syrup of Violets, or of

Nenuphar

Nenuphar with *Ptisan.* There may be iniected the *Musci-lage* of the seede of *Psillium*, with Barley-water, or *Oleum ex semine Cucurbitæ*, which may be made as the oyle of sweet Almonds. Also a bath of warme water will doe very well. But if the disease doe proceede from some vlcer, inflamation, or the stone, they haue their proper remedies: in a cause vnknowne, Clysters must be iniected, and the milke of Asses, or of the Goate must be giuen, to asswage paine, and great heede must be taken, least by too much vsing of Diuretickes the disease be increased.

Of inuoluntary Pissing, by reason of the Palsie of the bladder.

THe *Sphincter* being resolued, or the nerues that doe spring from *os sacrum*, being ill affected, the vrine goeth away against the will: wherefore at the first a purgation must be giuen *ex decocto neruali*, wherein shall be boyled *Senna* and *Agaricke*. Also some Opiate or Electuary must be prescribed *ex conseruis Nerualibus*, and a Fotion of the like things boyled in wine: a bagge may be prepared of *Primula veris, Iua Arthretica, Saluia, Maiorana, ex floribus Anthos, stæchados* and *Camomel*, which shall be applyed to the *pubes, perineum*, and also to the loynes: presently after the Fotion, the parts afore-said must be annointed with vnguents, or *Oleis nerualibus de Castoreo, Costi, Cinamomi, Vulpis*: Clysters must be often iniected, which must consist of some neruall decoction, because the *rectum intestinum* is next and immediate to the bladder. There may be iniected into the bladder it selfe, oyles & waters of Sage, Prime-roses, Rue, and Stæchados, or let them be boyled in wine, and dissolue in the straining a little syrup of Stæchados, vvhich may be iniected with a syringe. Towards the end, to strengthen, mixe lightly astringents, as a little syrup of worme-

wood, but remember that in the beginning you make no promiſe of a ſhort cure, for thoſe cures doe proue long and difficult.

Of piſsing in the bed.

BEſides imagination, which doth chiefely worke in vs when wee are aſleepe, there hapneth alſo a laxeneſſe of the round muſckle, abundance of vrine, or the ſharpneſſe thereof which doth ſtimulate, and prouoke to auoid vrine. Wherefore in the beginning the patient muſt be cured with pils, *de quinque gener. Myrobolanorum*, or with the expreſſion of ʒ ij. of Rhubard, infuſed *in decocto neruali*, or in Betonie, or Sage-water. Alſo a Clyſter may be caſt in, *ex Nerualibus*, in which ſhall be diſſolued *Mel Anthoſatum*, and ſome *oleum neruale*: The *Pubes* and *Perineum* with oyle of *Caſtoreum*, alſo a ſcruple of the ſame may be giuen for certaine dayes with *Hydromel*. Thoſe things muſt alſo be giuen that haue a propertie to ſtrengthen the bladder, as *veſica Capræ, Ouis, Suis, Tauri*, which muſt be dryed in an ouen, and the pouder thereof giuen from a ʒ. to ʒ ij. with wine.

Galen doth giue the pouder of the ſheepes bladder with *Poſca*. *Ætius* doth perſwade that the lungs of a Goate being roaſted, and eaten for three dayes together faſting, without bread, to be very profitable. Alſo the braine and teſtickles of the Hare is very good. If you pleaſe, the teſtickles may be boyled in wine, and the wine may be drunke, and the ſtones eaten. The tongue alſo of a Gooſe, and the throat of a cocke, or an henne, burned, and the pouder thereof giuen in ſome thing luke-warme: and it is a common thing, and confirmed by *Galen*, to giue for that purpoſe *farcimen ex Muribus*.

FINIS.

THE

THE FLOVVERS OF *Celsus.*

Contayning many Aphorismes, excellent Sentences, witty Sayings, and generall Rules, *for the preseruation of health, and the* curing of Diseases.

(***)

Section I.

1 AS tillage and manuring of the ground doth promise food to the healthfull: so Phisicke doth promise health to the sicke.

2 Sloth and riot, first corrupted the bodies of men in learned Græcia: afterward tormented them, liuing in pleasant Italie, euen so many of vs haue beene poisoned with their deadly venome, liuing at ease in this happy and flourishing Island of great Brittaine.

3 A sound and healthfull person which hath free libertie to please his owne humour, must not tye himselfe to any strict lawes of precise diet: neither to vse the Phi-

sition, when hee hath no neede, or the Chirurgion when hee hath no hurt. The course of his must be exercised with change and varietie: sometime hee must make his abode in the Countrey; sometime in the Citie; he must be often abroad in the field, hee must sometime saile, sometime hunt, and sometime take his ease and doe nothing: but more often to frequent lawfull exercises, limited within the bounds of moderation: for idlenesse dulleth and weakeneth, labour and exercise animateth the forces, and strengtheneth the body: the former maketh vs quickly old, when we are yet but young; the latter causeth vs long to continue young when we are old.

4 They say that that Physitian will cure well, and they appproue his medicine, that aymeth rightly at the cause, which is the roote and beginning of the disease.

5 Others thinke it concerneth not, what may breede, but what may remoue the disease.

6 Not eloquence nor glorious words, but wholesome remedies doe cure diseases.

7 For neyther the Husbandman can proue skilfull, nor the Pilot cunning, which onely discourse often, and practise but seldome.

8 Wee can neuer performe any sound cure, nor make any faire worke, when we presume to aduenture vpon meere coniecture, and haue no good warrant from certaine knowledge. It is true, that concerning the manner and method of healing, nothing is more auailable then approued experience.

9 Neyther ought the Physitian to be ignorant touching the complexion and nature of his Patient, whether his body be more moist, or more dry, whether his sinewes be strong, or whether they be feeble; whether the sickenesse doe often or seldome inuade him: And when it hath surprised him, whether his assaults be vehement or gentle: whether it maketh haste to be gone, or be loath to leaue him.

10 It

10 It behoooueth to know whether tedious labour, thirst, colde, heate, watching, or hunger haue caused the disease; or whether superfluitie of meate, or abundance of wine, or intemperate lustfull pleasure, haue beene the efficient causes of the paine.

11 It is better to take thy friend to be thy Physitian then a stranger, when their skill is all one, and their experience alike.

12 A man may rather make two then one meale in one day: and alwayes eate meate plentifully, if hee can digest it perfectly.

13 Vse of *Venus* in the act of generation is not ouermuch to be desired, nor ouer-much to be feared: to vse her seldome reuiueth, but to vse her often, weakeneth the body. But when the measure consisteth not in number, but nature of the agent, in the consideration of the state of his age, and condition of his body: wee may know, that shee hath proued kinde, and wee haue had no harme, when shee hath not weakened our strength, nor diseased our body.

14 Wee must take heede, that vvee waste not out that prodigally in pleasant health, which should succour vs in painefull sickenesse.

15 A set dyet is necessary to those which haue a weake stomacke: in which number are a great part of those, which liue in the Citie, and almost all, which for desire of learning addict themselues to serious meditation: so that by good regard the body may haue that restored, which eyther qualitie of the place hath detracted, or the manner of profession diminished. Amongst them, he which hath concocted well, shall rise earely in a morning, and neuer doe himselfe any ill; but hee which hath made small concoction must take his rest somewhat longer, and if necessitie driue him out of his bed to rise earely, he must afterward returne to sleepe, vntill Nature haue ended her worke: but hee which hath had no concoction, must

abstaine

abstaine from rising, neyther must hee put his body to any exercise or labour, or molest himselfe with any businesse.

16 Vrine euery morning white, and afterward yealow, is a token of a sound and healthfull body: the first signifieth the action; the latter, the perfection of good concoction.

17 If wee will study or labour by night, wee must not doe it when meate is newly receiued, but when it is well concocted.

18 When the belly is full (and the senses dull) vvee must not entend our mindes to meditation, or our bodies to motion.

19 Hee which hath beene toyled in the day with domesticall matters at home, or with ciuill affaires abroad, must reserue sometime for his recreation: first, it is to be performed in exercising the body with moderation, which is healthfull, and meete to be performed alwayes before our meate. When we beginne to sweate, or at fartheſt grow to be faint, we must leaue, obseruing a measure before we be tired.

20 Ouer much sacietie is neuer without hurt, and ouermuch abstinence is oftentimes bad: excesse in drinking is more dangerous then intemperance in eating.

21 A sound meale doth a good stomacke no hurt: in a weake stomacke, it quickly corrupteth.

22 If any one haue surcharged his stomacke with meate, hee shall more easily digest it, if hee enclose that which hee hath receiued, with drinking cold water, then he waketh a while, afterward hee sleepeth well.

23 If any one make an alteration, hee must accustome himselfe vnto it by little and little: (for sodaine changes are alwayes dangerous to the state of the body.)

24 Neyther can wee remoue out of a healthfull place into an vnwholesome; nor out of an vnwholesome into a healthfull, without some danger.

25 Neyther is too much sacietie conuenient after much hunger,

hunger, neyther much hunger after too much facietie.

26 Neyther is sodaine resting after too much labour, nor sodaine labour after too much leasure, without hurt or danger.

27 Hee is as much in danger which eateth meate once, as he which eateth meate twise intemperately against his ordinarie custome.

28 That meate which vvee take contrary to our custome, whether it be soft or hard, bringeth danger to our health.

29 A life that is giuen to too much idlenesse, cannot be profitable, becausе a necessitie of labour may happen vnto vs.

30 It behoooueth vs to know that the drinking of cold water or cold drinke is most dangerous to him that sweateth: neyther is it conuenient to them which are tyred with a tedious iourney, although they cease from sweating.

31 Vomiting is hurtfull to leane folke, and such as haue weake stomackes: but it is good for them that are in better plight, and to all Cholericke persons, whether they be distempered by too much repletion, or by want of good concoction: for if it be more then may be concocted, we must not put it in hazard to remaine in the stomacke, least it be corrupted; but if it be corrupted, nothing is more conuenient then to eiect it, by that way, by which it may soonest be expelled.

32 Moreouer, the excrements must be expelled by medicine, when the belly being hardened, voydeth but little: for then inflamations, dimnesse of sight, paines of the head, and many euils of the vpper part are engendred.

33 As purgations are sometime needfull, so being often vsed they are dangerous: for by often vsage thereof, the body wanteth nourishment, and so will be weake and feeble; and weaknesse is a bond-slaue to all diseases.

34 Wine allayed with water is best for children, & strong neate wine, is most agreable to the nature of old men.

35 In Winter we must eate more and drinke lesse, but although our drinke be little, it must not be weake. But in the Spring wee must a little diminish our meate, and increase our drinke. In Summer wee must feede often, and euery time eate but a little. In the Autumnall season, because of the varietie of the weather, our health is in greatest perill, wherfore we must not come abroad without warme cloaths on our backes, and good shooes on our feete. Now in this season we may vse more meate, so we take lesse drinke; yet now we may drinke wine without water.

36 In Winter, *Venus*, if thou vse her well, can doe thee no ill: in the Spring frequent her companie, and feare no danger, vnlesse you make too much of her; but in Summer and Autumne, shee is no fit companion for thee: yet in Autumne thou maist afford her a little loue, if she doe not reward thee with hate; but in Summer altogether, (vnlesse thou art bewitched to loue her) forsake her wanton companie and beginne to loath her.

Section II.

1 THe Spring is a most delightfull and healthfull season: next, the Winter, although it be not so delightfull, yet it is somwhat healthfull. In Summer our health is in more perill, and in Autumne in greatest danger. Of the the Seasons of the yeere, they excell most in goodnesse, which are best qualified aboue the rest, with a temperate equalitie, and are least obnoxious to wauering mutabilitie. And they are alwayes the worst, and bring to our health greatest discommoditie, which seldome stand at a stay, subiect to changing varietie. And Autumne being conditioned with this bad qualitie afflicteth our bodies with vnconstant diseases, which because of their varietie, cannot so easily be cured.

2 Cleere

2 Cleere Sunne-shining dayes are most wholesome: the rainie are more commendable then the cloudie. In Winter they are to be accounted best, which haue no blustering windes, but are calme and gentle. In Summer they are most healthfull, which breathing with a gentle West-winde, are also most delightfull. If any other windes doe breath in our Quarters, although North-windes doe nip vs with their coldnesse, yet they surpasse the East and South-windes in goodnesse.

3 Winde blowing from the firme land is wholesome: but blowing from the sea, it is vnhealthfull.

4 Middle age is least subiect to danger of diseases, which neyther like youth is parched with heate: nor like vnto old age, is pinched with cold.

5 Old age is subiect to long diseases: and young age to sharpe sicknesse.

6 That body is most aptly composed, which is perfect with all his complements: which is neyther puffed vp with fatnesse, nor pined away with leannesse. For as talnesse of stature in young age is comely, so in stooping old age it making vs vnseemely. A leane body is subiect to weaknesse, and a fat body to stupiditie and dulnesse.

7 Any one aduentureth those things with securitie, which he hath often tryed without danger.

8 If any man be adorned with better beautie, replenished with more fatnesse, or graced with a clearer colour, then hee hath beene by his wonted custome; let him not put confidence in such things which are of no perpetuitie, subiect euery moment to vnconstant varietie: which because they can neuer continue in one stay, neyther come to any better state, doe sodainely retire, and decay in a moment: yet it is a worse signe, and a more dangerous token, vvhen any one is sodainely wasted, and is enfeebled with leannes; when his comelinesse is sodainly deformed, and the flowre of his beautie dead and decayed: for in those things which abound with superfluitie, the disease may diminish somthing

vvithout any danger; but where the body is pined and strength decayed, the disease doth easily get the conquest.

9 It is a testimonie of a grieuous maladie to draw our breath from the braine with vehemencie.

10 Vomiting pure phlegme or choler is a signe of danger, but if the colour be greene or blacke, it signifieth greater perill. But that vrine is euill, whose Sediment is leadish or red coloured: and that worse, in which there are, as it were certaine small white filaments or threads: and as these two haue no goodnesse, so that which hath little clouds, as it were made of branne, exceedeth them both in badnesse. Vrine also thinne and white is faultie, but most especially in those which are troubled with the Phrensie. When the belly is hard bound, the body hath little ease: if the belly be subiect to loosenesse in Agues, it is dangerous; for it will not suffer the sicke man to rest in his bed: and likewise it is euill if the excrement voyded, be whitish, palish or frothie. Also ordure being little, is bad in respect of quantitie: if it be glowish, leadish, cholericke, or of worse smell then it was wont, it is vicious in regard of his qualitie. Also if it be not mixed with other humours, but be pure cholericke, it is to be discommended. Also vrine qualified with thinnesse, and coloured with rednesse, is an vsuall signe of cruditie and rawnesse: but of all bad, that is alwayes worst, and signifieth deadly danger, which is blacke, thicke, and of a sticking sauour. Also when the belly expelleth excrements variable and diuided, our state of health is much oppressed, and our life in very great danger: but when the excrements of the same are moyst and liquid, being also blacke, pale, or fattish, it is a certaine demonstration, that the sicke man hath but a while to liue, and is neare approaching to death, likewise if it haue a very strong and stincking sauour.

11 Euery medecine of the body, eyther taketh away somewhat from it, or addeth somewhat to it, extracteth or represseth

represseth, cooleth or heateth, hardeneth or softneth.

12 That bloud doth issue forth, the veyne being pierced or launced, is a thing not worthy of wonder: but that there is almost no disease, in which bloud may not haue passage, is a matter deseruing admiration.

13 In bloud-letting, the Physitian ought not so much to number the yeeres, as to estimate the strength of the Patient.

14 Thinne bodies abound with bloud, and full bodies with flesh.

15 It is better to hazard a doubtfull remedie, then to trye no remedie at all.

16 If the qualitie of the disease doth permit, the second or third day after the beginning of the sickneſſe, is the fitteſt time to take away bloud: but as it is sometime needfull to let out bloud on the first day; so it is neuer profitable to let it out after the fourth; because in that space, the matter is exhaust and soaked vp, and the body corrupted, so that bloud-letting may make the body weake, but it cannot make it whole and sound.

17 If a fiery and vehement Feauer doth assaile thy Patient, to let him bloud in the violence of the fit, is a way not to prolong life, but to hasten his death. Therefore thou must waite opportunitie, when the tempest of the fitte is somewhat calmed, and the vigour decreased: and that remedy for the most part, must not haue his full measure in one day, but in two dayes: for it is better first to ease, and afterward to purge throughly the diseased person, rather then all his strength being spent at once, to throw him head-long into danger.

18 When as bloud-letting should not goe before concoction; yet this precept is not perpetuall. For sometime the matter doth not attend vpon concoction: for if any fall from an high place, and if hee be bruised, if by some sodaine chance he vomit bloud, although hee hath taken meat but a little before, yet wee must without delay take

away the matter by letting out the bloud. And the same course is to be taken in other sodaine chances.

19 As it is a thing most expedient for him to be let bloud which hath neede; it is a thing most difficult and dangerous to be performed by one that is ignorant and vnskilfull: for the veyne is ioyned to Arteries, and sinewes to those, so that if the Launcet come to a sinew, there followeth a distension of the sinewes, which miserably tormenteth, and pittifully consumeth the patient. But an Arterie being cut, will neuer be closed together, or be healed againe: oftentimes also it causeth bloud to gush out vvith force and vehemencie.

20 When we open a veyne, wee must launce it to the middle: when the bloud streameth forth, we must view the colour and the habit; for if it be thicke and blacke, it is corrupted, and it may well passe without perill: if it be tincted with rednesse, and be pure with bright clearnesse, it is an argument of integritie and soundnesse: and such bloudletting doth not so much good, as it doth hurt, and vvee must presently turne backe the streame, and stay the course.

21 Also wee must leaue before strength faile, or the heart faint.

22 Extreame diseases are not cured without extreame remedies.

23 A medicine doth not alwayes profit the sicke, but it doth alwayes hurt those which are well and sound.

24 The beginnings of diseases require hunger and thirst: afterward the diseases themselues require moderation; that neyther no other meate, in respect of the qualitie; nor no more of it, concerning the quantitie, be receiued, then is expedient for the nature of the Patient, or condition of the malady. It is not conuenient that facietie should immediately follow hunger. Which if it be also vnprofitable, when necessitie causeth hunger to bodies which are sound, how much more hurtfull to bodies

vvhich

which are sicke: neyther is there any better remedie for the diseased, then to vse due and moderate abstinence.

25 There is more nourishment in flesh then in any other meate.

26 Coleworts halfe sod looseneth, twise sod bindeth the belly.

Section III.

1 THe medicine can doe small pleasure, which is resisted by Nature. But the Physitian is rather to be pardoned, which faileth in sharpe and short, then hee which committeth an errour in long diseases: for in sharp diseases, the time is short, in the which life is quickly extinguished, if the remedie preuaile not. In long and lingering diseases, time affordeth vs varietie of medicines, and more mature deliberation in our proceedings: so that very seldome if the Physitian come at the beginning, doth the Patient perish without his fault, if he be ruled by order, and obey his will.

2 We must know that the selfe-same medicines are not agreeable to all persons.

3 It behoooueth vs therefore, when any thing doth not answere to our expectation, not to account so highly of the authoritie of the Authour, as to regard the state of the sicke person, and to make tryall sometime of one thing, and sometime of another.

4 In sharpe diseases the patient must first vse a spare dyet, that the matter being taken away, the force and assault may be quailed: in long diseases hee may cherrish himselfe sooner, and vse a more liberall dyet, that hee may hold out the time that the malady shall assaile him.

5 There is great difference betweene one which beginneth his cure well, and one which beginneth it ill: becaufe

becauſe Phyſicke doth them ſmall pleaſure, in whom it hath beene often vſed to no profit.

6 Quietneſſe and abſtinence, of all others, are two of the beſt remedies, and abſtinence alone doth heale without any danger.

7 There is no doubt, but that ſcarce any ſhall be afflicted with ſickneſſe, which hath not diſſembled, but duely obſerued them, and ſpeedily ſought to preuent the occurrences of euils by the benefit of them.

8 *Aſclepiades* ſaith, it is the dutie of a Phyſitian, that hee cure ſafely, ſpeedily and pleaſantly: that thing is wiſhed and deſired, but oftentimes too much haſt and pleaſure are wont to be dangerous. But what moderation wee may vſe that theſe things may come to paſſe ſo farre forth as may be, it is demanded, after what manner the ſicke man is to be ordered in the firſt dayes of the diſeaſe. The Ancients did endeuour to prepare concoction of the humours, by ſome medicines exhibited to their Patients, becauſe they did moſt deteſt to purge, the humour being crude and not concocted. Afterward they ſubſtracted and drew away the matter which ſeemed to ſprout it ſelfe by often purging the belly. *Aſclepiades* tooke away thoſe preparatiues, hee did not ſo oftentimes, yet he did almoſt in euery diſeaſe purge the belly; yea, in the fit and force of a Feauer hee profeſſed to vſe this remedie: for he ſuppoſed that the forces of the Patient were to be weakened and abated by the light, by watching, by great thirſt: ſo that hee did not permit their mouth to be waſhed. Whereby they are the more deceiued which affirme his diſcipline to be delightfull and pleaſant: for afterward he pleaſed the humour, and yeelded to the longing of the diſeaſed perſon; but in the firſt dayes he played the part of a tormentor. But I graunt that medicinable Potions are not to be giuen, nor the belly to be purged but very ſeldome. And I doe not thinke that it ſhould be done to that entent that the forces of the patient ſhould be diſturbed and weakened, becauſe moſt great danger doth follow

follow weakneſſe. Therefore the ſuperfluous matter is onely to be diminiſhed, which is naturally digeſted, if no new thing be added. Therefore abſtinence from meate is to be vſed in the firſt dayes, the ſicke man muſt abide in the light, vnleſſe he be weake and feeble in the day time, and he ought to lye in a very large chamber. But concerning thirſt and ſleepe, we muſt ſo rule the matter, that he may awake in the day, and if it may be take his reſt in the night: neyther drinke much, nor be ouer-much tormented with thirſt. His mouth alſo may be waſhed and cleanſed when it is furred, and ſtinketh vnto him, although it is no fit time to take any drinke. And *Eraſiſtratus* ſaid well to the purpoſe, that the iawes and mouth doe require moiſture, when the lower parts oftentimes hath no need of it.

9 Meate giuen in due ſeaſon is the beſt medicine, but when it ſhould firſt be giuen is ſomewhat ambiguous, and is not throughly determined, ſome tarrying till the fift, and ſome others till thr ſixt day. *Aſclepiades*, after he had tyred the ſicke man by all meanes the ſpace of three dayes, the fourth day he gaue him plentie of meate. But *Themiſtion* did not giue meate at the beginning, but at the ceaſing of the Feauer, or certainely when it was ſlaked and diminiſhed, and tarryed and waited till the third day after that time: but nothing of theſe things is perpetuall; for meat may be giuen the firſt day, it may be giuen the ſecond, or the third; it may not be giuen, except on the fourth or fift day: it may be giuen after one fit, after two, and it may be giuen after many. It behoooueth to conſider the condition of the Diſeaſe, the diſpoſition of the body, qualitie of the ayre, ſtate of age, and ſeaſon of the yeere: and the precept concerning time cannot be perpetuall, in things among themſelues ſo different and variable.

10 That one thing is alwayes and euery where to be obſerued, that the Phyſitian ſitting by his Patient, doe often conſider the abilitie of his ſtrength and forces: and ſo long as they ſhall not be throwne downe and decayed, let him

with-stand the vigour of the disease by abstinence and fasting, but if he dread imbecillitie and weaknesse, let him aide and succour him by food and nourishment: for it is dutie that he neyther burthen the sicke with any superfluitie, nor suffer his weake state to be ouer-throwne by scarsitie.

11 *Pithagoras* his numbers very much obserued, deceiued the Ancient, when as here the Physitian ought not to number the dayes, but to consider the fits, and by them to coniecture when meate is to be giuen.

12 Many cannot be cured at once of one Physitian.

13 We must know, that it is the best time to giue meate, when the Feauer is ended.

14 Seeing it is conuenient, that sicke folke should alwayes be free from care, that they may onely be afflicted in body, and not also disquieted in minde, and then most especially, when they haue taken meate: if therefore any thing happen which may moue their patience, and molest their minde, it may better be concealed then reuealed vnto them during the time of tedious sicknesse.

15 It is the part of a skilfull Physitian, not forth-with to take the Patient by the arme with his hand, to feele his pulse, but first to sit downe by him with a chearfull countenance, and demaund of him how hee feeleth himselfe, and if hee be discouraged with feare, to reuiue his spirits with some probable speech which may breed some hope: then afterward to put forth his hand to his body.

16 The Physitian must neyther sit in the darke, neyther behinde the head of the sicke man; but in a lightsome place, right ouer-against him, that hee may perceiue all signes likewise which are to be noted in his countenance.

17 Diuers meates are to be set before the sicke man, as *Asclepiades* hath instructed vs; then at last when he is vrged with a loathing, and his strength faileth, that by tasting a little of euery one of them seuerally, he may auoid hunger. But if neyther strength nor desire to meate be wanting,

the

the sicke man is not to be inticed by varietie, least hee take more then he can digest. Neyther is it true, which is said of him, that diuerse meates are more easily concocted: indeed they are eaten more easily, but the kinde and measure of the matter doth pertaine to concoction.

18 Neyther in the extreamitie of paines, nor in the increase of the sickenesse, is it safe without danger, to afford much food to sicke persons, but after the brunt is past, and they be somewhat amended.

19 That also is to be regarded, which some haue onely commanded, whether the body be bound, or it be laxitiue: for if it be bound, the belly is to be looſed, the vrine to be moued, and sweat to be procured. Contrariwise, if it be soluble, sweating is to be restrained, resting and quietnesse to be vsed, hee may abide in the darke, and take his sleepe whensoeuer he will: his body is not to be moued but by gentle and easie riding on horse-back, or in an Horse-litter, and vve must order our remedies according to the qualitie of the maladie.

20 In a pestilent Feauer it is not conuenient to vse eyther hunger, or medicines, or to purge the belly. If strength doe permit, it is best to let bloud, and specially if the Feauer be with some soreneſse.

21 It is very conuenient, not quickly to let bloud, not quickely to purge the belly, not to torment by watching, fasting, or too much thirsting, and not to vse Wine in curing.

22 But when the disease is in his chiefest increase, like as not before the fourth day, great thirst going before, cold water is to be giuen to drinke abundantly, that the Patient may drinke more then sufficeth him, and when his stomacke and Midriffe are filled aboue measure, and sufficiently cooled, he must vomit. Some others do not require vomiting, but doe onely vse cold water for a medicine, giuen till there be a facietie of it. After any of these two things, which you will, be performed, the sick man is to be couered

with ſtore of cloathes, and to be laid as he may ſleepe, and moſt commonly after long thirſt and watching, after much ſacietie and fulneſſe, after the heate being appeaſed and quailed, a ſound ſleepe doth come vpon him, through which, great ſweating is poured forth, and that is a moſt preſent remedie: but it is to be practiſed in them, in whom there haue beene no paines beſides burnings, no ſwelling of the midriffe, nothing forbidding the ſame, neyther in the breaſt, nor in the lungs, nor in the iawes, no ſore, no faintneſſe, no caſting downe of the forces, no fluxe of the belly.

23 There is alſo a more neceſſary obſeruation which any one may vſe in time of the Plague, being yet healthfull and ſound, when neuertheleſſe hee cannot be ſecure from feare of the danger: Then he muſt trauaile abroad, ſaile on the ſea, ride on horſe-backe, or otherwiſe walke abroad in the ayre with an eaſie pace before the heate of the day, auoid weariſomneſſe, cruditie in digeſtion, cold, heate, and laſciuious luſt, and ſo much the rather to bridle himſelfe, if he feele any heauie diſpoſition in his body: for then hee muſt not riſe earely in the morning, neyther muſt he walke abroad with bare feete: he muſt not vomit nor purge the belly: neyther alſo if it be looſe of it ſelfe, muſt it be reſtrained: he muſt abſtaine and auoid bathing, ſweating, and after-noone ſleepe verily, if he haue eaten meate before, which meate may more conueniently be taken once a day, and alſo a little at once, leaſt it procure cruditie and rawneſſe of humours. Euery ſecond day by due courſe hee muſt drinke ſometime water, or ſmall drinke, and ſometime wine: which things being obſerued, he needeth not breake the cuſtome of his former dyet.

24 But when the ſame things doe not agree to all kindes of perſons, oftentime raſhneſſe and hap-hazard hath holpen thoſe whom due conſideration and good aduiſe hath not reſtored to health.

25 Oftentimes alſo obſtinancie and perſeuerance of him

that

that helpeth, doth ouercome the euill of the body.

26 A quartane Feauer killeth no man: an old quartane is seldome dissolued but in the Spring-time.

27 If a quartane Feauer haue ceased a long time, vvee must remember that day wherein it ceased, and in that, to shunne cold, heate, cruditie, and wearinesse, for it doth easily returne againe, vnlesse it be a good while after feared of him which is rid of it.

28 Some one shunning the cold shiuering fit in an ague, may profitably eate Garlicke, or drinke hot water with Peper before the inuasion of the fit: for those things being taken doe moue and stirre vp heate, which admitteth and suffereth no cold shiuering fit.

29 Of franticke persons some are merry, some are sterne and sad: some are easily kept in good order, and onely vtter forth fooliſh words: Others rise out of their bed, and doe some things violently with their hands: some also doe vse cunning deuises, and make a great shew, as if they were well and in health, in seeking occasions to act and performe greater matters, but by the issue and euent they are discouered and found out. Yet it is a vaine and friuolous thing to oppresse and restraine them with hard and straite bonds, which doe but vtter forth fooliſh words, or doe little hurt with the hands. But it is conuenient to binde and manacle them, which vse themselues violently, least they hurt others or themselues. Neyther must we beleeue him, if any one being bound, whilst hee desireth to be loosed of his bonds, doth faine himselfe to be in good sense, although he speake wisely and pittifully, because such dissembling and deceipt is proper to one that is affected vvith madnesse. It is necessary that men should behaue themselues towards the mindes of those which are mad in such sort, as the nature of euery one doth require.

30 *Asclepiades* said, that it were all one to let such bloud as if they should be murthered, induced to it by this consideration; namely, beeause there could be no madnesse,

but with a fierce and vehement Feauer, and that bloud might not well be taken away, but in the slaking and remitting of it.

31 To all which are so affected, sleepe is both hardly procured, and it is also most principally necessary: for by this, many doe recouer health.

32 Sleepe is to be procured by those medicines which doe cause sleepe, that moderation being had, which is necessary in this case, least we be not able to raise him vp afterward, whom we goe about to cast into a sleepe.

33 Wee must also know that the disease is not dangerous in them which are mad, vsing mirth and laughter, as in them which are furious with sternnesse and sadnesse.

34 There are three kindes of Dropsies, ouer much abundance of moisture is common vnto them: by reason of vvhich, vlcers in such sicke persons are hardly healed.

35 The Hydropsie is sooner taken away in seruants, then in those which are free, becausse when as the Disease doth require fasting, thirst, aud a thousand other molestations and long patience; they are sooner cured which are easily compelled, then they to whom their libertie is vnprofitable: but those truely which are vnder the gouernement of another, are not reduced to perfect health, if they doe not moderate themselues in all respects. And therefore a famous Physitian, the Scholler of *Chrisippus*, did deny to *Antigonus* the King, that a certaine friend of his, of a noted intemperance and misgouernment, being but meanely affected and troubled with that disease, might be cured or healed of the same. And when another Physitian, named *Epirotes Philippus*, did promise that he would cure him, he made answere, that *Epirotes* had regard to the disease, but as for himselfe, he had respect to the minde of the diseased: neyther did the matter fall out contrarie to his opinion; for this diseased intemperate person vvas not onely attended vpon with very great care and diligence

of

of the Physitian, but likewise of the King, neuertheleſſe, hee by greedily deuouring his mollifying plaisters, and swilling vp his owne vrine, did throw himselfe head-long into danger.

36 The curing of the Dropsie is not so extreame hard and difficult in the beginning, if rest, thirst and abstinence from food so farre forth as is conuenient, be prescibed and obserued of the Patient. But if the disease waxe old, it is not dissolued and dispersed without great trouble and molestation.

37 He must walke much, hee must runne sometime, the vpper parts most especially are to be rubbed, that he may hold his breath: sweate is to be procured to issue forth, not onely by exercise, but also in hot sand, in a hot house, by a stoue, and other such like things: Naturall and dry sweatings are most profitable, such as wee are wont to haue ouer the hot waters in the pleasant Citie Baiæ, in walkes planted with Mirtle trees.

37 A bath, and all moisture is wholesome.

38 No more drinke is to be giuen, then may sustaine life, and that drinke is best, which may moue vrine.

39 It is not absurd to measure the drinke of him that is diseased with the dropsie, and his vrine, for if more moysture be voided then is receiued, there is hope at length of prosperous health.

40 They which doubt of the consumption of the Lungs, whether it be it or no, doe vse for tryall, to cast into the fire, that which is spet out of the mouth, to marke if it haue a stinking sauour, which is a signe of the consumption named Phthysis.

41 Milke, which in paines of the head, and in sharpe Feauers is poyson; in the consumption of the lungs Phthysis, as in all long and difficult small Agues may well be giuen.

SECTION

Section IIII.

1 IF the belly be laxitiue one day, it is healthfull, and also more dayes if there be no Feauer, and that the looseneſſe be ſtayed within ſeauen dayes: for the body is purged, and that which would haue hurt within, is profitably voyded forth; but longer ſpace is dangerous: for ſometime it ſtirreth vp wringings in the guts and Feauers, and conſumeth the forces and ſtrength of the body; ſometime alſo it hapneth that it being neglected more dayes, is moſt hard to be cured.

2 It is ſuperfluous to vſe medicines, but in vehement euils.

3 It is not good for thoſe which are troubled vvith the gout to ride.

4 It behoooueth them to beware of a curious dyet, which haue the paine of the ioynts returning to them at certaine times and ſeaſons, leaſt the vnprofitable matter doe abound in the body.

5 *Aſclepiades* tooke away the vſe of medicines, for the moſt part not without cauſe, when all almoſt, doe hurt and offend the ſtomacke and are of bad iuyce: hee rather bended his whole care to the conſideration and order of dyet: but as that is profitable in many diſeaſes, ſo very many things haue accuſtomed to happen to our bodies which cannot be cured and brought to health vvithout medicines. It is conuenient to know that before all things that all parts of Phyſicke are ſo annexed and ioyned together, that they cannot be ſeparated from the whole, but they draw and take the name from that which they require moſt. Therefore as that Phyſicke which cureth by dyet doth ſometime vſe medicine; ſo that which doth eſpecially fight againſt the diſeaſe with medicines, ought alſo to vſe the rule

of

of dyet, which doth profit very much in all euils and diseases of the body.

6 It is hurtfull to vse medicines procuring sleepe, vnlesse very great necessitie doe constraine and vrge vs; for they are of that sort which are enemies to nature and very deadly.

7 It is the part of a wise Physitian not to meddle with him which may not be preserued, least he may be thought to haue killed him which dyeth by the decree of Nature. Againe, where there is great feare without vtter despaire, to declare then by necessary arguments how great danger the Patient is in, so that then, if Art be mastered and ouercome by the disease, the Physitian may not seeme to be ignorant or to haue beene deceiued: but as these things are meete and agreeable to a wise man, so on the other side, it is the propertie of a vaine boasting fellow, to make of a very small matter a great businesse, that thereby hee may be iudged to haue performed the greater Cure.

8 A doubtfull hope is better then vtter dispayre.

FINIS.

A Table of the chiefe points that are handled in this Booke.

The Table of the first Part.

	Fol.
OF *Physicke, and the Definition thereof.*	1
What man a Physitian must be.	2
Diuision of Physicke.	3
What an Element is.	eod.
Temperatures how many.	4
Definition of a temperate man.	5
Definition of an humour.	7
The nature of the foure Elements.	eod.
Generation of Humours.	8
The nature of the foure Humours.	9
What the radicall humour is.	10
Of the spirits, what they are.	eod.
Of the parts and principall member.	11
Of the officiall members.	eod.
Of Faculties and Powers.	12
Of the foure faculties resting in euery member.	13
Of hunger and thirst.	eod.

	Fol.
Of the Ayre.	15
Of meate and drinke.	16
Of sleepe and watchfulnesse.	17
Of exercise and rest.	19
Of the affections of the minde.	22
Of the Pathologicall Part.	23
Of acute and cronicall diseases.	24
Of the times of the Diseases.	eod.
Of the knowledge of the disease.	25
Of diseases by essence and consent.	eod.
How to apply remedies to cure diseases.	27
Custome, another nature.	eod.
Of purging Medicines.	28. & 29
Of Apozems.	30
Powders, Trocisks, Lozenges and Pils.	32
Of things taken in a meane forme.	34
Of Electuaries and Opiats.	33. 34. 35
Of Clysters and their administration.	35
How a Clyster ought to be administred.	38
A Generall remedie against diseases, proceeding of bloud, & by the example of a continuall Feauer.	41
Of diseases proceeding of Choler.	43
Of diseases proceeding of Phlegme.	48
Of a Feauer called a Semetertian.	53
Of diseases of Melancholy.	54
Of the Feuer Hectick.	58
Of the Pestilence.	60
Of the Poxe.	63
Of the Scorbut.	68

Definition

The Table.

	Fol.
Definition of Chirurgery.	75
A Chirurgians Instruments.	77
Emplaisters for a Chirurgion.	78
Definition of a wound.	80
Definition of an Vlcer.	81
Methode to cure Vlcers.	82
Definition of a Fistula.	eod.
Definition of tumours against Nature.	83
Phlegmon, how to cure it.	eod.
Methode to cure tumours.	14. 85
Of the Gangreene, and the cure.	87
Erisipilas, and the cure.	87. 88
Of Oedema, and the cure.	89. 90
Of Scirrhus, and the cure.	91. 92
Of the Puncture of a Nerue, and the cure.	93. 94
Wounds of the head, and their cure.	95. 96. 97. 98

The Table of the Second part.

	Fol.
OF *the Head-ach.*	1
Of Forgetfulnesse.	8
Of the Falling-Sickenesse.	9
Of the Apoplexy.	13
Of the Palsie.	18
Of Melancholy.	25
Of Vertigo.	32
Of the Phrensie.	35

	Fol.
Of the Lethargie.	38
Of Catalepsis.	42
Of the Crampe.	45
Of Catarrhe or Rhume.	49
Of the Squinancie.	56
Of shortnesse of winde, or Asthma.	60
Of the Pleurisie.	64
Of Peripneumonia.	67
Of spetting of bloud.	68
Of the Phtisicke.	71
Of the panting of the heart.	74
Of the Sincope or Sowning.	77
Of the Singult or Hicket.	81
Of the paine of the stomacke.	84
Of the Cough.	89
Of the weakenesse of the stomacke.	93
Of Dogge-like appetite.	97
Of corrupt Appetite.	100
Of the losse of Appetite.	105
Of immoderate thirst and dryenesse.	109
Of Vomiting.	111
Of the Cholericke Passion.	115
Of the weaknesse of the Lyuer.	118
Of the stopping of the Lyuer.	124
Of the affects of the Reynes.	128
Of preseruation from the stone of the Kidnyes and Bladder.	130
Against the stone engendred.	132
Against the fit of the stone.	134

The Table.

	Fol.
Of the Inflamation of the Kidnyes.	136
Of the vlcers of the Kidnyes.	137
Of the diſeaſes of the Vriters	139
Of the Diſeaſes of the Bladder.	140
Of the Caruncle.	146
Of the ſtopping of the vrine.	eod.
Of the Inflamation of the Bladder.	143
Of ſuppreſsion of Vrine, called Iſcouria.	144
Of the Strangurie, or piſsing by drop-meale.	146
Of inuoluntary Piſsing.	147
Of piſsing in the Bed.	148
Alſo the Flowers of Celſus, *containing many Aphoriſmes, excellent Sentences, witty Sayings, and generall Rules, for the preſeruation of health, and the curing of diſeaſes.*	149

FINIS.

The Table.

Of the Function of the Kidneys. Fol.
Of the Ureters. 134
Of the Bladder. 137
Of the Passage of the Urine. 139
Of the Difeases of the Bladder. 140
Of the Caruncle. 146
Of the Stopping of the Urine. 146
Of the Inflammation of the Bladder. 603
Of the Ulceration of the Bladder. 143
Of the Stone, called Calculus. 144
Of the Stranguary, or Pissing by drops. 146
Of involuntary Pissing. 147
Of Pissing in the Bed. 148
Of the Pleurisy of Cellus, containing many Apho-
risms, excellent Cautions, hurtful Things, and pro-
per Rules, for the preservation of health, and the
curing of diseases. 149

FINIS.